LATIN READER

Nepos and Caesar Selections

J. HENDERSON, M.A.
J. FLETCHER, M.A., LL.D.

TORONTO
THE COPP, CLARK CO. LIMITED

RB157,955



Presented to the
LIBRARY *of the*
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
by
Copp, Clark Pitman Ltd.

LATIN READER

CONTAINING

TABLES OF NOUNS AND VERBS, SYNTAX RULES

AND

THE NEPOS AND CAESAR SELECTIONS PRESCRIBED FOR MATRICULATION IN THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

BY

J. HENDERSON, M.A.,

Principal of St. Catharines Collegiate Institute

AND

J. FLETCHER, M.A., LL.D.,

Professor of Latin, University College, Toronto.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

1900.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

I.—FIRST DECLENSION.

Latin nouns end in nominative in -a. Nouns in -e, -as, -es are derived from Greek.

Gender Rule: Nouns in -a[1], -e are feminine; those in -as, -es are masculine.

Genitive ending regularly, -ae.

Mens a, F., *a table.*		Epitom e, F., *an abridgment.*
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR[3].
Nom. mens ă	mens ae	*Nom.* ĕpĭtŏm ē
Gen. mens ae	mens ārum	*Gen.* ĕpĭtŏm ēs
Dat. mens ae	mens īs[2]	*Dat.* ĕpĭtŏm ae
Acc. mens am	mens as	*Acc.* ĕpĭtŏm ēn
Voc. mens ă	mens ae	*Voc.* ĕpĭtŏm ē
Abl. mens ā	mens īs	*Abl.* ĕpĭtŏm ē

Leonid as, M., *Leonidas.*	Pers es, M., *a Persian.*
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Nom. Lĕōnĭd as	*Nom.* Pers es
Gen. Lĕōnĭd ae	*Gen.* Pers ae
Dat. Lĕōnĭd ae	*Dat.* Pers ae
Acc. Lĕōnĭd am (-an)	*Acc.* Pers en
Voc. Lĕōnĭd ā	*Voc.* Pers ē (-ă)
Abl. Lĕōnĭd ā	*Abl.* Pers ē (-ā)

---

[1] Nouns in -*a* denoting male beings are masculine; as, Nauta, *a sailor*; agricola, *a farmer*; poeta, *a poet*: also dama, *a deer*; talpa, *a mole*; Hadria, *the Adriatic Sea.*

[2] The following nouns have usually -ābus in the dative and ablative plural: Dea, *a goddess*; filia, *a daughter*; liberta, *a freedwoman*; mula, *a she-mule*; equa, *a mare*; asina, *a she-ass.*

[3] When nouns derived from the Greek have a plural, it is regular like the plural of mensa.

II.—SECOND DECLENSION.

Latin nouns end in -us, -er, -ir, -um. Nouns in -os, -on are derived from Greek.

Gender Rule: Nouns in -us[1], -er, -ir, -os are masculine; those in -um, -on are neuter.

Genitive ending, -ī.

Dŏmĭn us, M., *a lord, master.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dŏmĭn us	dŏmĭn ī
Gen.	dŏmĭn ī	dŏmĭn ōrum[3]
Dat.	dŏmĭn ō	dŏmĭn īs
Acc.	dŏmĭn um	dŏmĭn ōs
Voc.	dŏmĭn ĕ[2]	dŏmĭn ī
Abl.	dŏmĭn ō	dŏmĭn īs

Măgister, M., *a master, teacher.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	măgister	măgistr ī
Gen.	măgistr ī	măgistr ōrum
Dat.	măgistr ō	măgistr īs
Acc.	măgistr um	măgistr ōs
Voc.	măgister	măgistr ī
Abl.	măgistr ō	măgistr īs

Puer, M., *a boy.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	pŭer	pŭĕr ī
Gen.	pŭĕr ī	pŭĕr ōrum
Dat.	pŭĕr ō	pŭĕr īs
Acc.	pŭĕr um	pŭĕr ōs
Voc.	pŭer	pŭĕr ī
Abl.	pŭĕr ō	pŭĕr īs

Vir, M., *a man.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	vĭr	vĭr ī
Gen.	vĭr ī	vĭr ōrum
Dat.	vĭr ō	vĭr īs
Acc.	vĭr um	vĭr ōs
Voc.	vĭr	vĭr ī
Abl.	vĭr ō	vĭr īs

---

[1] *Exceptions to Gender* (2nd Decl.).—The following are feminine: (1) Names of cities and islands: as, Cŏrinthus, *Corinth;* Dēlos, *Delos.* (2) Names of trees: as, Fāgus, *a beech-tree;* pīrus, *a pear-tree.* (3) Words that are feminine in Greek: as, Methŏdus, *method.* (4) Alvus, *belly;* cŏlus, *distaff;* hŭmus, *ground;* vannus, *a wheat-fan;* carbăsus, *linen* (pl. carbăsa). The following are neuter: Pĕlăgus, *sea;* vīrus, *poison;* vulgus, *the rabble* (sometimes masculine).

[2] Nouns in -ius often contract the genitive singular -ĭī into -ī, and the vocative -ĭe into -ī: as, Mercŭrĭī, Mercurī; Mercŭrĭe, Mercŭrī.

[3] The following nouns have -um for -ōrum, in the genitive plural: Deus, *a god;* nummus, *money;* faber, *a workman;* vir, *a man;* sŏcĭus, *a companion, ally.*

Deus, *a god,* is declined: Sing. Nom., dĕus; Gen., dĕī; Dat., dĕō; Acc., dĕum; Voc., dĕus; Abl., dĕō. Plur. Nom., dĕī, dīī, dī; Gen., dĕōrum, dĕum; Dat., dĕīs, dīīs, dīs; Acc., dĕos; Voc., dĕī, dīī, dī; Abl., dĕīs, dīīs, dīs.

	Bell um, N., *war.*		Dēl os, F., *Delos.*	Ili on, N., *Ilium* or *Troy.*
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR[1].	SINGULAR.
Nom.	bell um	bell ă	*Nom.* Dēl os, ŭs	Ilĭ on, um
Gen.	bell ī	bell ōrum	*Gen.* Dēl ī	Ilĭ ī
Dat.	bell ō	bell īs	*Dat.* Dēl ō	Ilĭ ō
Acc.	bell um	bell ă	*Acc.* Dēl on, um	Ilĭ on, um
Voc.	bell um	bell ă	*Voc.* Dēl ĕ	Ilĭ on, um
Abl.	bell ō	bell īs	*Abl.* Dēl ō	Ilĭ ō

III.—THIRD DECLENSION.

Nominative, various endings.

Genitive ending, -is.

Masculine[2] endings: -er, -or, -os, -es (increasing in the genitive), and -o (except -do, -go, -io).

Feminine[3] endings: -do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es (not increasing in the genitive), -s impure, and -ūs in words of more than one syllable.

Neuter[4] endings: -c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ŭs, -ūs (in words of one syllable).

	Princeps, M., *chief.*		Trabs, F., *a beam.*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	princeps	princĭp ēs	trăb s	trăb ēs
Gen.	princĭp ĭs	princĭp um	trăb is	trăb um
Dat.	princĭp ī	princĭp ĭbus	trăb ī	trăb ĭbus
Acc.	princĭp em	princĭp ēs	trăb em	trăb ēs
Voc.	princep s	princĭp ēs	trab s	trăb ēs
Abl.	princĭp ĕ	princĭp ĭbus	trăb ĕ	trăb ĭbus

[1] Greek nouns in the plural are usually regular, those in -os being inflected like dominus in the plural, those in -on like bellum; but both classes may have -ōn instead of -ōrum in the genitive plural.

[2] *Exceptions to Gender* (of 3rd Decl.).—(1) -er: Cădāv-er, -ĕris N., *a dead body;* ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, N., *a road;* papāver, -ĕris, N., *a poppy;* tuber, -ĕris, N., *a swelling;* uber, -ĕris, N., *an udder;* ver, vēris, N., *spring;* verber, -ĕris, N., *a lash.*

(2) -or: Arb-or, -ŏris, F., *a tree;* aequ-or, -ŏris, N., *the sea;* marm-or, -ŏris, N., *marble;* cor, cordis, N., *the heart.*

(3) -es: Comp-es, -ĕdis, F., *fetter;* merc-es, -ēdis, F., *merchandise;* merg-es, -ĭtis, F., *a sheaf;* qui-es, -ētis, F.; rēquī-es, -ētis, F., *rest;* sĕg-es, -ĕtis, F., *a crop;* tĕg-es, -ĕtis, F., *a covering;* aes, aeris, N., *copper.*

(4) -os: Cos, cōtis, F., *a whetstone;* dos, dōtis, F., *dowry;* ŏs, ossis, N., *a bone;* ōs, ōris, N., *a mouth.*

(5) -o: Căro, carnis, F., *flesh;* echo, echūs, F., *echo.* (Over).

Hiems, F., *winter.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	hĭems	hĭĕm ēs
Gen.	hĭĕm ĭs	hĭĕm um
Dat.	hĭĕm ī	hĭĕm ĭbus
Acc.	hĭĕm em	hĭĕm ēs
Voc.	hĭem s	hĭĕm ēs
Abl.	hĭĕm ĕ	hĭĕm ĭbus

Miles, M., *a soldier.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	mīles	mīlĭt ēs
Gen.	mīlĭt ĭs	mīlĭt um
Dat.	mīlĭt ī	mīlĭt ĭbus
Acc.	mīlĭt em	mīlĭt ēs
Voc.	mīle s	mīlĭt ēs
Abl.	mīlĭt ĕ	mīlĭt ĭbus

Pes, M., *a foot.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	pes	pĕd es
Gen.	pĕd ĭs	pĕd um
Dat.	pĕd ī	pĕd ĭbus
Acc.	pĕd em	pĕd ēs
Voc.	pe s	pĕd ēs
Abl.	pĕd ĕ	pĕd ĭbus

Flos, N., *a flower.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	flōs	flōr ēs
Gen.	flōr ĭs	flōr um
Dat.	flōr ī	flōr ĭbus
Acc.	flōr em	flōr ēs
Voc.	flōs	flōr ēs
Abl.	flōr ĕ	flōr ĭbus

---

[3] (1) -o: Ord-o, -ĭnis, M., *arrangement;* card-o, -ĭnis, M., *hinge;* lĭg-o, -ōnis, M., *a mattock;* marg-o, -ĭnis, M., *margin* (of a river).

(2) -is: Amnis, -is, M., *a river;* collis, -is, M., *hill;* cĭn-is, -ĕris, M., *ashes;* crīn-is, -is, M., *hair;* ens-is, -is, M., *a sword;* fascis, -is, M., *bundle;* ĭnis, -is, M. and F., *end;* follis, -is, M., *bellows;* fun-is, -is, M., *a rope;* ign-is, -is, M., *fire;* lăp-is, -ĭdis, M., *a stone;* mens-is, -is, M., *a month;* orb-is, -is, M., *a circle;* pān-is, -is, M., *bread;* pisc-is, -is, M., *a fish;* post-is, -is, M., *a post;* pulv-is, -ĕris, M., *dust;* sangu-is, -ĭnis, M., *blood;* torr-is, -is, M., *fire-brand;* ungu-is, -is, M., *a nail;* vect-is, -is, M., *crowbar;* vermis, -is, M., *a worm.*

(3) -x: Calix, -ĭcis, M., *a cup;* codex, -ĭcis, M., *a book;* cortex, -ĭcis, M., *bark of a tree;* grex, grĕgis, M., *flock;* pollex, -ĭcis, M., *thumb;* silex, -ĭcis, M., *flint;* vertex, -ĭcis, M., *top.*

(4) -es: Acīnăces, -is, M., *a scimitar.*

(5) -s impure: Mons, montis, M., *a mountain;* dens, dentis, M., *tooth;* fons, fontis, M., *a fountain;* pons, pontis, M., *bridge;* bidens, bidentis, M., *a mattock;* rudens, rudentis, M., *a rope.*

(6) -as: As, assis, M., *a small coin;* elephas, elephantis, M., *an elephant;* vas, vasis, N. (in singular of 3rd; plural, vāsa, -ōrum, of the 2nd), *a vessel;* fas, indecl., N., *right;* nefas, indecl., N., *wrong.*

[4] (1) -l: Sal, sălis, M. *salt;* sol, sōlis, M., *sun.*

(2) -n: Lien, lĭēnis, M., *spleen;* ren, rēnis, M., *kidney;* splen, splēnis, M., *spleen;* pecten, pectĭnis, M., *comb.*

(3) -ur: Fūr, fūris, M., *thief;* furfur, ŭris, M., *bran;* turtur, ŭris, M., *a turtle-dove;* vultur, -ŭris, M., *a vulture.*

(4) -us: Pĕcus, -ŭdis, F., *a single head of cattle;* lĕpus, -ŏris, M., *a hare;* grus, grŭis, M., *a crane;* sus, sŭis, M., *a pig;* mus, mūris, M., *a mouse.*

Opŭs, N., *a work.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ŏpŭs	ŏpĕr ă
Gen.	ŏpĕr ĭs	ŏpĕr um
Dat.	ŏpĕr ī	ŏpĕr ĭbus
Acc.	ŏpŭs	ŏpĕr ă
Voc.	ŏpŭs	ŏpĕr ă
Abl.	ŏpĕr ĕ	ŏpĕr ĭbus

Corpŭs, N., *a body.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	corpŭs	corpŏr ă
Gen.	corpŏr is	corpŏr um
Dat.	corpŏr ī	corpŏr ĭbus
Acc.	corpŭs	corpŏr ă
Voc.	corpŭs	corpŏr ă
Abl.	corpŏr ĕ	corpŏr ĭbus

Rĕgĭo, F., *a district.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rĕgĭo	rĕgĭōn ēs
Gen.	rĕgĭōn ĭs	rĕgĭōn um
Dat.	rĕgĭōn ī	rĕgĭōn ĭbus
Acc.	rĕgĭōn em	rĕgĭōn ēs
Voc.	rĕgĭo	rĕgĭōn ēs
Abl.	rĕgĭōn ĕ	rĕgĭōn ĭbus

Virgo, F., *a maiden.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	virgo	virgĭn ēs
Gen.	virgĭn ĭs	virgĭn um
Dat.	virgĭn ī	virgĭn ĭbus
Acc.	virgĭn em	virgĭn ēs
Voc.	virgo	virgĭn ēs
Abl.	virgĭn ĕ	virgĭn ĭbus

Victor, M., *a conqueror.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	victor	victōr ēs
Gen.	victōr ĭs	victōr um
Dat.	victōr ī	victōr ĭbus
Acc.	victōr em	victōr ēs
Voc.	victor	victōr ēs
Abl.	victōr ĕ	victōr ĭbus

Sol, M., *the sun.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	sōl	sōl ēs
Gen.	sōl ĭs	sōl um
Dat.	sōl ī	sōl ĭbus
Acc.	sōl em	sōl ēs
Voc.	sōl	sōl ēs
Abl.	sōl ĕ	sōl ĭbus

Consul, M., *a consul.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	consŭl	consŭl ēs
Gen.	consŭl ĭs	consŭl um
Dat.	consŭl ī	consŭl ĭbus
Acc.	consŭl em	consŭl ēs
Voc.	consŭl	consŭl ēs
Abl.	consŭl ĕ	consŭl ĭbus

Passer, M., *a sparrow.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	passer	passĕr ēs
Gen.	passĕr ĭs	passĕr um
Dat.	passĕr ī	passĕr ĭbus
Acc.	passĕr em	passĕr ēs
Voc.	passer	passĕr ēs
Abl.	passĕr ĕ	passĕr ĭbus

Pater, M., *a father.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	păter	păt̆r ēs
Gen.	păt̆r ĭs	păt̆r um
Dat.	păt̆r ī	păt̆r ĭbus
Acc.	păt̆r em	păt̆r ēs
Voc.	păter	păt̆r ēs
Abl.	păt̆r ĕ	păt̆r ĭbus

Iudex, M., *a judge.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	iūdex	iūdĭc ēs
Gen.	iūdĭc ĭs	iūdĭc um
Dat.	iūdĭc ī	iūdĭc ĭbus
Acc.	iūdĭc em	iūdĭc ēs
Voc.	iūdex	iūdĭc ēs
Abl.	iūdĭc ĕ	iūdĭc ĭbus

Rex, M., *a king.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rex	rēg ēs
Gen.	rēg ĭs	rēg um
Dat.	rēg ī	rēg ĭbus
Acc.	rēg em	rēg ēs
Voc.	rex	rēg ēs
Abl.	rēg ĕ	rēg ĭbus

Radix, F., *a root.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rādix	rādīc ēs
Gen.	rādīc ĭs	rādīc um
Dat.	rādīc ī	rādīc ĭbus
Acc.	rādīc em	rādīc ēs
Voc.	rādix	rādīc ēs
Abl.	rādīc ĕ	rādīc ĭbus

Dux, M. or F., *a leader.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dux	dŭc ēs
Gen.	dŭc ĭs	dŭc um
Dat.	dŭc ī	dŭc ĭbus
Acc.	dŭc em	dŭc ēs
Voc.	dux	dŭc ēs
Abl.	dŭc ĕ	dŭc ĭbus

Lex, F., *a law.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	lex	lēg ēs
Gen.	lēg ĭs	lēg um
Dat.	lēg ī	lēg ĭbus
Acc.	lēg em	lēg ēs
Voc.	lex	lēg ēs
Abl.	lēg ĕ	lēg ĭbus

Hostis, M. or F., *an enemy.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	host ĭs	host ēs
Gen.	host ĭs	host ĭum
Dat.	host ī	host ĭbus
Acc.	host em	host ēs (-īs)
Voc.	host ĭs	host ēs
Abl.	host ĕ	host ĭbus

Nubes, F., *a cloud.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	nūbēs	nūb ēs
Gen.	nūb ĭs	nūb ĭum
Dat.	nūb ī	nūb ĭbus
Acc.	nūb ēm	nūb ēs
Voc.	nūb ēs	nub ēs
Abl.	nūb ĕ	nūb ĭbus

Turris, F., *a tower.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	turr ĭs	turr ēs
Gen.	turr ĭs	turr ĭum[3]
Dat.	turr ī	turr ĭbus
Acc.	turr em (-im)[1]	turr ēs
Voc.	turr ĭs	turr ēs
Abl.	turr ĕ (-ī)[2]	turr ĭbus

Ignis, M., *fire.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ign ĭs	ign ēs
Gen.	ign ĭs	ign ĭum
Dat.	ign ī	ign ĭbus
Acc.	ign em	ign ēs (-ĭs)
Voc.	ign ĭs	ign ēs
Abl.	ign ĕ (-ī)	ign ĭbus

Mare, N., *the sea.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	mărĕ	măr ĭă[4]
Gen.	măr ĭs	măr ĭum
Dat.	măr ī	măr ĭbus
Acc.	mărĕ	măr ĭă
Voc.	mărĕ	măr ĭă
Abl.	măr ī	măr ĭbus

Animal, N., *an animal.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ănĭmal	ănĭmāl ĭă
Gen.	ănĭmāl ĭs	ănĭmāl ĭum
Dat.	ănĭmāl ī	ănĭmāl ĭbus
Acc.	ănĭmal	ănĭmāl ĭă
Voc.	ănĭmal	ănĭmāl ĭă
Abl.	ănĭmāl ī	ănĭmāl ĭbus

Calcar, N., *a spur.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	calcar	calcār ĭă
Gen.	calcār ĭs	calcār ĭum
Dat.	calcār ī	calcār ĭbus
Acc.	calcar	calcār ĭă
Voc.	calcar	calcār ĭă
Abl.	calcār ī	calcār ĭbus

Urbs, F., *a city.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	urb s	urb ēs
Gen.	urb ĭs	urb ĭum
Dat.	urb ī	urb ĭbus
Acc.	urb em	urb ēs
Voc.	urb s	urb ēs
Abl.	urb ĕ	urb ĭbus

---

[1] The following nouns have the acc. sing. in *-im*: Amussis, *a carpenter's square;* tussis, *a cough;* sitis, *thirst;* ravis, *hoarseness;* vis, *force, strength;* these nouns and also neuters in *-e, -al, -ar* have abl. sing. in *-i.*

[2] The following nouns have the acc. sing. in *-im* or *-em*, and abl. sing. in *-i* or *-e:* Clavis, *a key;* febris, *fever;* messis, *harvest;* navis, *a ship;* puppis, *a stern* of a vessel; restis, *a rope;* secūris, *an axe;* sementis, *sowing;* strigĭlis, *strigil.*

[3] The following nouns have the genitive plural in *-ium:* (1) Neuters in *-e, -al, -ar;* (2) monosyllables in *-x* or *-s* impure; (3) nouns in *-es* or *-is,* not increasing in the genitive; (4) nouns ending in *-ns* or *-rs.*

[4] Neuters in *-e, -al, -ar* have *-ia* in pl. nom., acc., voc.

Nox, F., *night.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	nox	noct ēs
Gen.	noct īs	noct ĭum
Dat.	noct ī	noct ĭbus
Acc.	noct em	noct ēs
Voc.	nox	noct ēs
Abl.	noct ĕ	noct ĭbus

Amans, M. or F., *a lover.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ămans	ămant ēs
Gen.	ămant īs	ămant ĭum
Dat.	ămant ī	ămant ĭbus
Acc.	ămant em	ămant ēs
Voc.	ămans	ămant ēs
Abl.	ămant ĕ (-ī)	ămant ĭbus

Bos, M., *an ox.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	bōs	bŏv ēs
Gen.	bŏv īs	bŏv um, bŏ um
Dat.	bŏv ī	bō bus, bū bus
Acc.	bŏv em	bŏv ēs
Voc.	bōs	bŏv ēs
Abl.	bŏv ĕ	bo bus, bū bus

Vis, F., *strength.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	vīs	vīr ēs
Gen.	vīs[1]	vīr ĭum
Dat.	vī[1]	vīr ĭbus
Acc.	vim	vīr ēs
Voc.	vīs	vīr ēs
Abl.	vī	vīr ĭbus

Sus, M. or F., *swine.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	sūs	sŭ ēs
Gen.	sŭ īs	sŭ um
Dat.	sŭ ī	sŭ ĭbus, sŭ bus
Acc.	sŭ em	sŭ ēs
Voc.	sūs	sŭ ēs
Abl.	sŭ ĕ	sŭ ĭbus, sŭ bus

Nix, F., *snow.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	nix	nĭv ēs
Gen.	nĭv īs	nĭv ĭum
Dat.	nĭv ī	nĭv ĭbus
Acc.	nĭv em	nĭv ēs
Voc.	nix	nĭv ēs
Abl.	nĭv ĕ	nĭv ĭbus

[1] The genitive and dative singular of vis are rare.

Senex, M., *an old man.*		Iupiter, M., *Jupiter.*		Iter, N., *a journey.*	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. sĕnex	sĕn ēs	*Nom.* Iūpĭter		*Nom.* ĭter	ĭtĭnĕr ă
Gen. sĕn ĭs	sĕn um	*Gen.* Iŏv ĭs		*Gen.* ĭtĭnĕr ĭs	ĭtĭnĕr um
Dat. sĕn ī	sĕn ĭbus	*Dat.* Iŏv ī		*Dat.* ĭtĭnĕr ī	ĭtĭnĕr ĭbus
Acc. sĕn em	sĕn ēs	*Acc.* Iŏv em		*Acc.* ĭter	ĭtĭnĕr ă
Voc. sĕnex	sĕn ēs	*Voc.* Iūpĭter		*Voc.* ĭter	ĭtĭnĕr ă
Abl. sĕn ĕ	sĕn ĭbus	*Abl.* Iŏv ĕ		*Abl.* ĭtĭnĕr ĕ	ĭtĭnĕr ĭbus

GREEK PROPER NAMES.

Neocles, M., *Neocles.*		Themistocles, M., *Themistocles.*		Salamis, F., *Salamis.*	
SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
Nom. Nĕocl es		*Nom.* Thĕmistŏcl ēs		*Nom.* Sălăm ĭs	
Gen. Nĕocl ĭs (-ī)		*Gen.* Thĕmistŏcl ĭs		*Gen.* Sălămīn ĭs (-os)	
Dat. Nĕocli		*Dat.* Thĕmistŏcl ī		*Dat.* Sălămīn ī	
Acc. Nĕocl em		*Acc.* Thĕmistŏcl em -ēn		*Acc.* Sălămīn ă	
Voc. Nĕocl es		*Voc.* Thĕmistŏcl ēs		*Voc.* Sălăm ĭs	
Abl. Nĕocl ĕ		*Abl.* Thĕmistŏcl ĕ		*Abl.* Sălămīn ē	

IV.—FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nominative endings, -ŭs, -ū.

Genitive ending, -ūs.

Gender Rule: Nouns in -ŭs are masculine[1]; those in -ū are neuter.

Fructus, M., *fruit.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. fruct ŭs	fruct ūs	*Acc.* fruct um	fruct ūs
Gen. fruct ūs	fruct ŭum	*Voc.* fruct ŭs	fruct ūs
Dat. fruct ŭī	fruct ĭbus[2]	*Abl.* fruct ū	fruct ĭbus

[1] *Exceptions to Gender of Fourth Declension.*—The following are feminine: Acus, *a needle;* colus, *a distaff* (also of the 2nd); domus, *a house;* porticus, *a portico;* tribus, *a tribe;* Idūs (pl.), *the Ides of the month;* Quinquātrūs, *the feast of Minerva;* penus, *store* (when of this declension).

[2] The following have *-ŭbus* instead of *-ĭbus* in the dative and ablative plural: Artus, *a joint;* portus, *a harbor;* tribus, *a tribe;* veru, *a spit;* and all dissyllables in -cus: as, lăcus, *a lake.*

Domŭs, F., *a house.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dŏm ŭs	dŏm ūs
Gen.	dŏm ūs	dŏm ŭum (-ōrum)
Dat.	dŏm ŭī (-ō)	dŏm ĭbus
Acc.	dŏm um	dŏm ōs (-ūs)
Voc.	dŏm ŭs	dŏm ūs
Abl.	dŏm ō (-ū)	dŏm ĭbus

Cornu, N., *a horn.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	corn ū	corn ŭă
Gen.	corn ūs	corn ŭum
Dat.	corn ū	corn ĭbus
Acc.	corn ū	corn ŭă
Voc.	corn ū	corn ŭă
Abl.	corn ū	corn ĭbus

V.—FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nominative ending, **-ēs.**

Genitive ending, **-ēī.**

Gender Rule: Nouns are feminine.[1]

Rēs, F., *a thing.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	r ēs	r ēs
Gen.	r ēī	r ērum
Dat.	r ēī	r ēbus
Acc.	r em	r ēs
Voc.	r ēs	r ēs
Abl.	r ē	r ēbus

Dies, M. or F., *a day.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dĭ ēs	dĭ ēs
Gen.	dĭ ēī	dĭ ērum
Dat.	dĭ ēi	dĭ ēbus
Acc.	dĭ em	dĭ ēs
Voc.	dĭ ēs	dĭ ēs
Abl.	dĭ ē	dĭ ēbus

Respublica, F., *the state.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rēspublĭc ă	rēspublĭc ae
Gen.	rēīpublĭc ae	rērumpublĭc ārum
Dat.	rēīpublĭc ae	rēbuspublĭc īs
Acc.	rempublĭc am	rēspublĭc as
Voc.	rēspublĭc ă	rēspublĭc ae
Abl.	rēpublĭc ā	rēbuspublĭc īs

[1] *Exceptions to Gender of Fifth Declension.* — Dies, *a day*, is masc. or fem. in sing.; in the plural masc.: mĕrīdĭes, *mid-day*, only used in the singular, is masc.

VI.—IRREGULAR NOUNS.

INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter and are used only in the nominative and accusative and generally only in the singular. They are as follows :—**Fas**, *right;* **nĕfas**, *wrong;* **māne**, *morning;* **instar**, *a model;* **pondo**, *weight;* **sĕcus**, *sex;* **nīhil**, *nothing;* **ŏpus**, *need.*

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

1. The following nouns are used only in the *singular :—*

(1) Names of *persons and places :* as, **Roma**, *Rome;* **Cicero**, *Cicero.*

(2) *Abstract nouns :* as, **Fīdes**, *faith;* **iustitia**, *justice.*

(3) Names of *materials :* as, **Aurum**, *gold;* **ferrum**, *iron.*

(4) Single words : as, **Merīdies**, *mid-day;* **specimen**, *example;* **supell-ex** (-ectĭlis), *furniture;* **ver**, *spring;* **vesper**, *evening.*

2. The following nouns are used only in the *plural :—*

(1) Class words : as, **Māiōres**, *ancestors;* **gemīnī**, *twins;* **lībĕrī**, *children.*

(2) Many names of cities : as, **Ăthēnae**, *Athens;* **Thēbae**, *Thebes*, **Delphi**, *Delphi.*

(3) Many names of festivals : as, **Bacchanālia**, **Olympia.**

(4) Single words : as, **Arma**, *arms;* **dīvĭtĭae**, *riches;* **exsĕquĭae**, *funeral rites;* **exŭviae**, *spoils;* **Īdūs**, *Ides of the month;* **indūtiae**, *a truce;* **insidiae**, *ambuscade;* **mānes**, *shades of the dead;* **mĭnae**, *threats;* **moenia**, *walls;* **mūnĭa**, *duties;* **nuptĭae**, *a wedding;* **rĕlĭquĭae**, *remains.*

3. The following words have *one meaning in the singular and a different one in the plural :—*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
aedes (F.), Gen., **aedis**, *a temple.*	**aedes**, **aedium**, *a house.*
ăqua (F.), *water.*	**ăquae**, *a watering-place.*
auxilium (N.), *help.*	**auxilia**, *auxiliaries.*
bŏnum (N.), *a good thing.*	**bŏna**, *goods.*

Singular.	Plural.
carcer (M.), *a dungeon.*	carcĕres, *barriers of a race-course.*
castrum (N.), *a fort.*	castra, *a camp.*
codicillus (M.), *a bit of wood.*	codicilli, *tablets.*
comitium (N.), *a place of assembly.*	comitia, *a political assembly, elections.*
cōpĭa (F.), *plenty.*	cōpĭae, *troops.*
fīdes (F.), *a harp-string.*	fīdes, *lyre.*
fīnis (M. or F.), *an end.*	fīnes (M.), *boundaries* or *territories.*
fortūna (F.), *fortune.*	fortūnae, *possessions.*
grātĭa (F.), *favor.*	gratiae, *thanks.*
hortus (M.), *a garden.*	horti, *pleasure-grounds.*
impĕdīmentum (N.), *a hindrance.*	impĕdīmenta, *baggage of an army.*
littĕra (F.), *a letter of the alphabet.*	littĕrae, *an epistle.*
lŏcus (M.), *place;* pl., lŏca (N.).	lŏci (M.), *passages in books.*
lūdus (M.), *sport.*	lūdi, *public games.*
nātālis (M.), *birthday.*	nātāles, *descent, ancestry.*
ŏpĕra (F.), *a task.*	ŏpĕrae, *day laborers.*
ŏpis (F.), genitive, *help.*	ŏpes, *wealth, resources.*
pars (F.), *a part.*	partes, *a part in a play* or *a party in politics.*
plăga (F.), *region.*	plăgae, *snares.*
rostrum (N.), *a beak, prow of a vessel.*	rostra, *political platform* or *hustings.*
sal (M. or N.), *salt.*	săles (M.), *witticisms, wit.*
tabella (F.), *a tablet.*	tabellae, *documents.*

The following nouns are wanting in some of the cases :—

(1) Nom., Dat., Voc. Sing. : —, ŏpis, —, ŏpem, —, ŏpe, *help;* —, vĭcis, —, vĭcem, —, vĭce, *change.*

(2) Nom., Gen., Voc. Sing. : —, —, prĕcī, prĕcem, —, prĕcĕ, *prayer.*

(3) Nom. and Voc. Sing. : —, dăpis, dăpi, dăpem, —, dăpe, *food;* —, frūgis, frūgī, frūgem, —, frūge, *fruit.*

(4) Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plural : Most nouns of the fifth declension, except spēs, *hope*, and rēs, *a thing.* So also far, *corn;* mel, *honey;* fel, *bile;* pūs, *matter of a wound;* rus, *the country;* tus, *incense.*

(5) Genitive plural: many monosyllables: **Nex**, *murder;* **pax**, *peace;* **pix**, *pitch;* **cor**, *heart;* **cos**, *a whetstone;* **ros**, *dew;* **sal**, *salt;* **sol**, *the sun;* **lux**, *light.*

HETEROCLITIC NOUNS.

Some nouns have two or more forms of declension. Thus:

Cŏlus (F.), *a distaff*, and many names of plants and trees are of the second; but they may have those forms that end in **-us** of the fourth decl. also.

Iŭgĕrum (N.), *an acre*, is of the second declension in the singular, but of the third in the plural.

Vas (N.), *a vessel* (Gen., **vāsis**), is of the third declension in the singular and of the second in the plural.

Festivals in **-alia** (as **Bacchanālĭa**) are neuter plurals of the third declension, but have the genitive plural in **-ōrum**, not in **-ĭum**.

Ancīle (N.), *a shield*, is of the third (like **mărе**, *the sea*); but the genitive plural is **-ōrum**, instead of **-ĭum**.

Rĕquĭes (F.), Gen. **rĕquiētis**, *rest*, is of the third, but has **rĕqŭiem** and **rĕquiē** of the fifth.

Fămes (F.), Gen. **fămis**, is regularly of the third, but has **fămē** of the fifth, not **fămĕ** of the third.

For **dŏmus** (F.), *a house*, see p. 238.

Many words have two forms, one belonging to one declension and another to another. Thus:

Luxurĭa (F.), *luxury;* **mātĕrĭa** (F.), *matter, timber;* **saevĭtĭa** (F.), *cruelty*, are of the first; while **luxurĭes** (F.), **mātĕrĭes** (F.), **saevĭtĭes** (F.), are of the fifth. So also, **eventus** (M.), *an event;* **cōnātus** (M.), *an attempt*, are of the fourth; while **eventum** (N.), and **cōnātum** (N.), are of the second.

Iuventus (F.), Gen. **iuventūtis**, *the youth of a country;* **iŭventas** (F.), Gen. **iuventātis**, *goddess of youth;* **iŭventa** (F.), *time of youth.*

Sĕnectus (F.), Gen. **senectūtis**, *time of old age* has the poetical form **senecta** (F.); so **paupertas** (F.), Gen. **paupertatis**, *poverty* has the poetical **paupĕrĭes** (F.), Gen. **-ēi**.

HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

Some nouns have two different genders in the singular. Thus:

The following have one form in -us, masculine, and one form in -um, neuter: Baltĕus, or -um, *a belt;* iugŭlus, -um, *the throat;* clĭpĕus, -um, *a shield;* collus, -um, *neck;* bacŭlus, -um, *a staff;* cubĭtus, -um, *elbow.*

The following have a different gender in the singular and plural respectively:

Balnĕum (N. sing.), balneae (F. pl.), *bath;* caelum (N. sing.), caeli (M. pl.), *heavens;* carbăsus (F. sing.), carbăsa (N. pl.), *sail;* delĭcium (N. sing.), delĭciae (F. pl.), *delight;* rastrum (N. sing.), rastri (M. pl.), *harrows;* epŭlum (N. sing.), epŭlae (F. pl.), *banquet;* frēnum (N. sing.), *bit,* frēni (M.) or frēna (N.); lŏcus (M. sing.), lŏca (N. pl.), *places;* iŏcus (M. sing.), *jest;* iŏci (M. pl.), or iŏca (N. pl.).

VII.—ADJECTIVES.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Bonus, *good.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏn ŭs	bŏn ă	bŏn um
Gen.	bŏn ī	bŏn ae	bŏn ī
Dat.	bŏn ō	bŏn ae	bŏn ō
Acc.	bŏn um	bŏn am	bŏn um
Voc.	bŏn ĕ	bŏn ă	bŏn um
Abl.	bŏn ō	bŏn ā	bŏn ō

PLURAL.

Nom.	bŏn ī	bŏn ae	bŏn ă
Gen.	bŏn ōrum	bŏn ārum	bŏn ōrum
Dat.	bŏn īs	bŏn īs	bŏn īs
Acc.	bŏn ōs	bŏn ās	bŏn ă
Voc.	bŏn ī	bŏn ae	bŏn ă
Abl.	bŏn īs	bŏn īs	bŏn īs

Aeger, *sick.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	aeger	aegr ă	aegr um
Gen.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ī
Dat.	aegr ō	aegr ae	aegr ō
Acc.	aegr um	aegr am	aegr um
Voc.	aeger	aegr ă	aegr um
Abl.	aegr ō	aegr ā	aegr ō

PLURAL.

Nom.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ă
Gen.	aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
Dat.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs
Acc.	aegr ōs	aegr ās	aegr ă
Voc.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ă
Abl.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs

Tener, *tender.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	tĕner	tĕnĕr ă	tĕnĕr um
Gen.	tĕnĕr ī	tĕnĕr ae	tĕnĕr ī
Dat.	tĕnĕr ō	tĕnĕr ae	tĕnĕr ō
Acc.	tĕnĕr um	tĕnĕr am	tĕnĕr um
Voc.	tĕner	tĕnĕr ă	tĕnĕr um
Abl.	tĕnĕr ō	tĕnĕr ā	tĕnĕr ō

PLURAL.

Nom.	tĕnĕr ī	tĕnĕr ae	tĕnĕr ă
Gen.	tĕnĕr ōrum	tĕnĕr ārum	tĕnĕr ōrum
Dat.	tĕnĕr īs	tĕnĕr īs	tĕnĕr īs
Acc.	tĕnĕr ōs	tĕnĕr ās	tĕnĕr ă
Voc.	tĕnĕr ī	tĕnĕr ae	tĕnĕr ă
Abl.	tĕnĕr īs	tĕnĕr īs	tĕnĕr īs

IRREGULAR[1] ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Unus, *one.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūn ŭs	ūn ă	ūn um
Gen.	ūn īus	ūn īus	ūn īus
Dat.	ūn ī	ūn ī	ūn ī
Acc.	ūn um	ūn am	ūn um
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	ūn ō	ūn ā	ūn ō

Uter, *which of two?*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūter	ūtr ă	ūtr um
Gen.	ūtr īus	ūtr īus	ūtr īus
Dat.	ūtr ī	ūtr ī	ūtr ī
Acc.	ūtr um	ūtr am	ūtr um
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	ūtr ō	ūtr ā	ūtr ō

Alius, *other*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ălĭ us	ălĭ ă	ălĭ ud
Gen.	ălī us	ălī us	ălī us
Dat.	ălĭ ī	ălĭ ī	ălĭ ī
Acc.	ălĭ um	ălĭ am	ălĭ ud
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	ălĭ ō	ălĭ ā	ălĭ ō

[1] Nine adjectives are irregular: Alius, -a, -ud, *another;* nullus, -a, -um, *no one;* solus, *alone;* tōtus, *whole;* ullus, *any;* unus, *one;* alter, ĕra, -ĕrum, *the other;* uter, utra, utrum, *which* (of two); neuter, -tra, trum, *neither.* The genitive of alter is alterīus; otherwise it is declined like *uter.* In each the plural is regular.

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

(1) Of three terminations :—

Acer, *sharp.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ācĕr	ācr ĭs	ācr ĕ
Gen.	ācr ĭs	ācr ĭs	ācr ĭs
Dat.	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī
Acc.	ācr em	ācr em	ācr ĕ
Voc.	ācĕr	ācr ĭs	ācr ĕ
Abl.	ācr ī[1]	ācr ī	ācr ī

PLURAL.

Nom.	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ĭă
Gen.	ācr ĭum	ācr ĭum	ācr ĭum
Dat.	ācr ībus	ācr ībus	ācr ībus
Acc.	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ĭă
Voc.	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ĭă
Abl.	ācr ībus	ācr ībus	ācr ībus

(2) Of two terminations :—

Mitis, *mild.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom. mīt ĭs	mīt ĕ	*Nom.* mīt ēs	mīt ĭă
Gen. mīt ĭs	mīt ĭs	*Gen.* mīt ĭum	mīt ĭum
Dat. mīt ī	mīt ī	*Dat.* mīt ībus	mīt ībus
Acc. mīt em	mīt ĕ	*Acc.* mīt ēs	mīt ĭă
Voc. mīt ĭs	mīt ĕ	*Voc.* mīt ēs	mīt ĭă
Abl. mīt ī	mīt ī[1]	*Abl.* mīt ībus	mīt ībus

[1] All adjectives of three endings in the nom. like acer and all adjectives of two endings in the nom. like mītis have abl. singular in -i ; nom. neut. pl. in -ia ; gen. pl. in ium. But comparatives and adjectives of one ending in nom. have abl. sing. in -i or e. Comparatives have nom. pl. neuter in -a, gen. pl. in -um. Adjectives of one termination from nominative in x or s impure like audax or oriens have the nom pl. in -ia and gen. pl. in -ium. Plus is the only comparative irregular in declension.

Mitior, *milder*.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	mītĭor	mītĭus	mītĭōr ēs	mītĭōr ă
Gen.	mītĭōr ĭs	mītĭōr ĭs	mītĭōr um	mītĭōr um
Dat.	mītĭōr ī	mītĭōr ī	mītĭōr ĭbus	mītĭōr ĭbus
Acc.	mītĭōr em	mītĭus	mītĭōr ēs	mītĭōr ă
Voc.	mītĭor	mītĭus	mītĭōr ēs	mītĭōr ă
Abl.	mītĭōr ĕ (-ī)	mītĭōr ĕ (-ī)	mītĭōr ĭbus	mītĭōr ĭbus

Plus, *more*.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	—	plus	plūr ēs	plūr ă
Gen.	—	plur ĭs	plūr ĭum	plūr ĭum
Dat.	—	—	plūr ĭbus	plūr ĭbus
Acc.	—	plus	plūr ēs	plūr ă
Voc.	—	—	plūr ēs	plūr ă
Abl.	—	plur e	plūr ĭbus	plūr ĭbus

(3) Adjectives of one termination :—

Audax, *bold*.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	audax	audax	audāc ēs	audāc ĭă
Gen.	audāc ĭs	audāc ĭs	audāc ĭum	audāc ĭum
Dat.	audāc ī	audāc ī	audāc ĭbus	audāc ĭbus
Acc.	audāc em	audax	audāc ēs	audāc ĭă
Voc.	audax	audax	audāc ēs	audāc ĭă
Abl.	audāc ī (-ĕ)	audac ī (-ĕ)	audāc ĭbus	audāc ĭbus

Felix, *bold*.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	fēlix	fēlix	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ĭă
Gen.	fēlīc ĭs	fēlīc ĭs	fēlīc ĭum	fēlīc ĭum
Dat.	fēlīc ī	fēlīc ī	fēlīc ĭbus	fēlīc ĭbus
Acc.	fēlīc em	fēlix	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ĭă
Voc.	fēlix	fēlix	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ĭă
Abl.	fēlīc ī (-ĕ)	fēlīc ī (-ĕ)	fēlīc ĭbus	fēlīc ĭbus

Vetus, *old.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	vĕtŭs	vĕtŭs	vĕtĕr ēs	vĕtĕr ă
Gen.	vĕtĕr ĭs	vĕtĕr ĭs	vĕtĕr um	vĕtĕr um
Dat.	vĕtĕr ī	vĕtĕr ī	vĕtĕr ĭbus	vĕtĕr ĭbus
Acc.	vĕtĕr em	vĕtŭs	vĕtĕr ēs	vĕtĕr ă
Voc.	vĕtŭs	vĕtŭs	vĕtĕr ēs	vĕtĕr ă
Abl.	vĕtĕr ī (-ĕ)	vĕtĕr ī (-ĕ)	vĕtĕr ĭbus	vĕtĕr ĭbus

Oriens, *rising.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ŏrĭens	ŏrĭens	ŏrĭent ēs	ŏrĭent ĭă
Gen.	ŏrĭent ĭs	ŏrĭent ĭs	ŏrĭent ĭum	ŏrĭent ĭum
Dat.	ŏrĭent ī	ŏrĭent ī	ŏrĭent ĭbus	ŏrĭent ĭbus
Acc.	ŏrĭent em	ŏrĭens	ŏrĭent ēs	ŏrĭent ĭă
Voc.	ŏrĭens	ŏrĭens	ŏrĭent ēs	ŏrĭent ĭă
Abl.	ŏrĭent ĕ (-ī)	ŏrĭent ĕ (-ī)	ŏrĭent ĭbus	ŏrĭent ĭbus

VIII.—NUMERALS.

For the declension of unus, see p. 244.

	Duo, *two.*			Trēs, *three.*	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	dŭo	dŭ ae	dŭo	trēs	tr ĭă
Gen.	dŭ ōrum	dŭ ārum	dŭ ōrum	tr ĭum	tr ĭum
Dat.	dŭ ōbus	dŭ ābus	dŭ ōbus	tr ĭbus	tr ĭbus
Acc.	dŭ ōs (duo)	dŭ ās	dŭo	trēs	tr ĭă
Voc.	dŭo	dŭ ae	dŭo	trēs	tr ĭă
Abl.	dŭ ōbus	dŭ ābus	dŭ ōbus	tr ĭbus	tr ĭbus

Mille, *a thousand.*

In the singular indeclinable. In plural: *Nom.* and *Acc.* Millĭă or milia; *Gen.* millĭum or milium; *Dat.* and *Abl.* millĭbus or milibus.

IX.—PRONOUNS.

(i) PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

	Ego, *I.*		Tu, *thou, you* (sing.).	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ĕgo	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	mĕī	nostrum, nostrī	tŭī	vestrum, vestrī
Dat.	mĭhi	nōbīs	tĭbi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Voc.	—	—	tū	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Sui, *of himself.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Wanting	Wanting
Gen.	sŭī	sŭī
Dat.	sĭbi	sĭbi
Acc.	sē	sē
Voc.	Wanting	Wanting
Abl.	sē	sē

(ii) DEMONSTRATIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Hic, *this* (near the speaker).

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius
Dat.	huīc	huīc	huīc
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural.

Nom.	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs

Iste, *that* (near you).

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	istĕ	istă	istud
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus
Dat.	istī	istī	istī
Acc.	istum	istam	istud
Abl.	istō	istā	istō

PLURAL.

Nom.	istī	istae	istă
Gen.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istōs	istās	istă
Abl.	istīs	istīs	istīs

Ille, *that* (near him, her, it).

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	illĕ	illă	illud
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL.

Nom.	illī	illae	illă
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illos	illās	illă
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs

Is, *he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	is	ĕă	ĭd
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius
Dat.	ĕī	ĕī	ĕī
Acc.	ĕum	ĕam	id
Abl.	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō

PLURAL.

Nom.	ĕī (ĭī)	ĕae	ĕă
Gen.	ĕōrum	ĕārum	ĕōrum
Dat.	ĕīs (ĭīs)	ĕīs (ĭīs)	ĕīs (ĭīs)
Acc.	ĕōs	ĕās	ĕă
Abl.	ĕīs (ĭīs)	ĕīs (ĭīs)	ĕīs (ĭīs)

Idem, *the same.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	īdem	ĕădem	ĭdem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
Dat.	ĕīdem	ĕīdem	ĕīdem
Acc.	ĕundem	ĕandem	ĭdem
Abl.	ĕōdem	ĕādem	ĕōdem

PLURAL.

Nom.	ĕīdem ĭīdem	ĕaedem	ĕădem
Gen.	ĕōrundem	ĕārundem	ĕōrundem
Dat.	ĕīsdem ĭīsdem	ĕīsdem ĭīsdem	ĕīsdem ĭīsdem
Acc.	ĕosdem	ĕasdem	ĕădem
Abl.	ĕīsdem ĭīsdem	ĕīsdem ĭīsdem	ĕīsdem ĭīsdem

Ipse, *self, himself.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL.

Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
Abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

(iii) RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui, *who.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	qui	quae	quod
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī
Acc.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL.

Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus

(iv) INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quis, *who?*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quis	quae	quid
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī
Acc.	quem	quam	quid
Abl.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL.

Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quĭbus	quĭbus	quĭbus

X.—REGULAR VERBS.

Principal Parts	1. Conjugation:	ămo,	ămārĕ,	ămāvī,	ămātum.
	2. "	mŏnĕo,	mŏnērĕ,	mŏnŭī,	mŏnĭtum.
	3. "	rĕgo,	rĕgĕrĕ,	rexī,	rectum.
	4. "	audĭŏ,	audīrĕ,	audīvī,	audītum.

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1.	ăm **o**	mŏn ĕo	rĕg **o**	aud ĭo
2.	ăm **ās**	mŏn ēs	rĕg **ĭs**	aud **ĭs**
3.	ăm **ăt**	mŏn ĕt	rĕg **ĭt**	aud **ĭt**

PLURAL.

1.	ăm **āmus**	mŏn ēmus	rĕg **ĭmus**	aud **ĭmus**
2.	ăm **ātis**	mŏn ētis	rĕg **ĭtis**	aud **ĭtis**
3.	ăm **ant**	mŏn ent	rĕg **unt**	aud **ĭunt**

IMPERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ăm ābam	mŏn ēbam	rĕg ēbam	audĭ ēbam
2.	ăm ābās	mŏn ēbās	rĕg ēbās	audĭ ēbās
3.	ăm ābăt	mŏn ēbăt	rĕg ēbăt	audĭ ēbăt

Plural.

1.	ăm ābāmus	mŏn ēbāmus	rĕg ēbāmus	audĭ ēbāmus
2.	ăm ābātis	mŏn ēbātis	rĕg ēbātis	audĭ ēbātis
3.	ăm ābant	mŏn ēbant	rĕg ēbant	audĭ ēbant

FUTURE.

Singular.

1.	ăm ābo	mŏn ēbo	rĕg am	audĭ am
2.	ăm ābĭs	mŏn ēbĭs	rĕg ēs	audĭ ēs
3.	ăm ābĭt	mŏn ēbĭt	rĕg ĕt	audĭ ĕt

Plural.

1.	ăm ābĭmus	mŏn ēbĭmus	rĕg ēmus	audĭ ēmus
2.	ăm ābĭtis	mŏn ēbĭtis	rĕg ētis	audĭ ētis
3.	ăm ābunt	mŏn ēbunt	rĕg ent	audĭ ent

PERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ămāv ī	mŏnŭ ī	rex ī	audīv ī
2.	ămāv isti	mŏnŭ isti	rex isti	audīv isti
3.	ămāv ĭt	mŏnŭ ĭt	rex ĭt	audīv ĭt

Plural.

1.	ămāv ĭmus	mŏnŭ ĭmus	rex ĭmus	audīv ĭmus
2.	ămāv istis	mŏnŭ istis	rex istis	audīv istis
3.	ămāv ērunt ămāv ēre	mŏnŭ ērunt mŏnŭ ēre	rex ērunt rex ēre	audīv ērunt audīv ēre

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	ămāv ĕram	mŏnŭ ĕram	rex ĕram	audīv ĕram
2.	ămāv ĕrās	mŏnŭ ĕrās	rex ĕrās	audīv ĕrās
3.	ămāv ĕrăt	mŏnŭ ĕrăt	rex ĕrăt	audīv ĕrăt

PLURAL.

1.	ămāv ĕrāmus	mŏnŭ ĕrāmus	rex ĕrāmus	audīv ĕrāmus
2.	ămāv ĕrātis	mŏnŭ ĕrātis	rex ĕrātis	audīv ĕrātis
3.	ămāv ĕrant	mŏnŭ ĕrant	rex ĕrant	audīv ĕrant

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	ămāv ĕro	mŏnŭ ĕro	rex ĕro	audīv ĕro
2.	ămāv ĕris	mŏnŭ ĕris	rex ĕris	audīv ĕris
3.	ămāv ĕrīt	mŏnŭ ĕrīt	rex ĕrīt	audīv ĕrīt

PLURAL.

1.	ămāv ĕrĭmus	mŏnŭ ĕrĭmus	rex ĕrĭmus	audīv ĕrĭmus
2.	ămāv ĕrītis	mŏnŭ ĕrītis	rex ĕrītis	audīv ĕrītis
3.	ămāv ĕrint	mŏnŭ ĕrint	rex ĕrint	audīv ĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1.	ăm em	mŏn ĕam	rĕg am	audĭ am
2.	ăm ēs	mŏn ĕās	rĕg ās	audĭ ās
3.	ăm ĕt	mŏn ĕăt	rĕg ăt	audĭ ăt

PLURAL.

1.	ăm ēmus	mŏn ĕāmus	rĕg āmus	audĭ āmus
2.	ăm ētis	mŏn ĕātis	rĕg ātis	audĭ ātis
3.	ăm ent	mŏn ĕant	rĕg ant	audĭ ant

IMPERFECT

Singular.

1.	ăm ārem	mŏn ērem	rĕg ĕrem	aud īrem
2.	ăm ārēs	mŏn ērēs	rĕg ĕrēs	aud īrēs
3.	ăm ārĕt	mŏn ērĕt	rĕg ĕrĕt	aud īrĕt

Plural.

1.	ăm ārēmus	mŏn ērēmus	rĕg ĕrēmus	aud īrēmus
2.	ăm ārētis	mŏn ērētis	rĕg ĕrētis	aud īrētis
3.	ăm ārent	mŏn ērent	rĕg ĕrent	aud īrent

PERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ămāv ĕrim	mŏnŭ ĕrim	rex ĕrim	audīv ĕrim
2.	ămāv ĕris	mŏnŭ ĕris	rex ĕris	audīv ĕris
3.	ămāv ĕrit	mŏnŭ ĕrit	rex ĕrit	audīv ĕrit

Plural.

1.	ămāv ĕrīmus	mŏnŭ ĕrīmus	rex ĕrīmus	audīv ĕrīmus
2.	ămāv ĕrītis	mŏnŭ ĕrītis	rex ĕrītis	audīv ĕrītis
3.	ămāv ĕrint	mŏnŭ ĕrint	rex ĕrint	audīv ĕrint

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ămāv issem	mŏnŭ issem	rex issem	audīv issem
2.	ămāv issēs	mŏnŭ issēs	rex issēs	audīv issēs
3.	ămāv isset	mŏnŭ isset	rex isset	audīv isset

Plural.

1.	ămāv issēmus	mŏnŭ issēmus	rex issēmus	audīv issēmus
2.	ămāv issētis	mŏnŭ issētis	rex issētis	audīv issētis
3.	ămāv issent	mŏnŭ issent	rex issent	audīv issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2.	ăm ā	mŏn ē	rĕg ĕ	aud ī

PLURAL.

2.	ăm āte	mŏn ēte	rĕg īte	aud īte

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2.	ăm āto, *you shall love.*	mŏn ēto	rĕg īto	aud īto
3.	ăm āto, *he shall love.*	mŏn ēto	rĕg īto	aud īto

PLURAL.

2.	ăm ātōte, *you shall love.*	mŏn ētōte	rĕg ītōte	aud ītōte
3.	ăm anto, *they shall love.*	mŏn ento	rĕg unto	aud īunto

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	ămā re	mŏnē re	rĕgĕ re	audī re
Perf.	ămāv isse	mŏnŭ isse	rex isse	audīv isse
Fut.	ămā tūrus esse	mŏnĭ tūrus esse	rec tūrus esse	audī tūrus esse

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	ăma ns	mŏne ns	rĕg ens	audĭ ens
Fut.	ămā tūrus, -a, -um	mŏnĭ tūrus, -a, -um	rec tūrus, -a, -um	audī tūrus -a, -um

SUPINE.

ămā tum	mŏnĭ tum	rec tum	audī tum

GERUND.

Gen.	ăma ndi	mone ndi	rĕg endi	audĭ endi
Dat.	ama ndo	mone ndo	rĕg endo	audĭ endo
Acc.	ama ndum	mone ndum	rĕg endum	audĭ endum
Abl.	ama ndo	mone ndo	rĕg endo	audĭ endo

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Singular.

1.	ămo r	mŏnĕ or	rĕg or	audĭ or
2.	ămā ris	mŏnē ris	rĕgĕ ris	audī ris
	ămā re	mŏnē re	rĕgĕ re	audī re
3.	ămā tur	mŏnē tur	rĕgĭ tur	audī tur

Plural.

1.	ămā mur	mŏnē mur	rĕgĭ mur	audī mur
2.	ămā mĭnī	mŏnē mĭnī	rĕgĭ mĭnī	audī mĭnī
3.	ăma ntur	mŏne ntur	rĕgu ntur	audĭ untur

IMPERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ămā bar	mŏnē bar	rĕgē bar	audĭ ēbar
2.	ămā bāris	mŏnē bāris	rĕgē bāris	audī ēbāris
	ămā bāre	mŏnē bāre	rĕgē bāre	audī ēbāre
3.	ămā bātur	mŏnē bātur	rĕgē bātur	audī ēbātur

Plural.

1.	ămā bāmur	mŏnē bāmur	rĕgē bāmur	audĭ ēbāmur
2.	ămā bāmĭnī	mŏnē bāmĭnī	rĕgē bāmĭnī	audĭ ēbāmĭnī
3.	ămā bantur	mŏnē bantur	rĕgē bantur	audĭ ēbantur

FUTURE.

Singular.

1.	ămā bor	mŏnē bor	rĕgā r	audĭa r
2.	ămā bĕris	mŏnē bĕris	rĕgē ris	audiē ris
	ămā bĕre	mŏnē bĕre	rĕgē re	audiē re
3.	ămā bĭtur	mŏnē bĭtur	rĕgē tur	audiē tur

Plural.

1.	ămā bĭmur	mŏnē bĭmur	rĕgē mur	audiē mur
2.	ămā bĭmĭnī	mŏnē bĭmĭnī	rĕgē mĭnī	audiē mĭnī
3.	ămā buntur	mŏnē buntur	rĕge ntur	audĭe ntur

PERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ămā tus sum	mŏnĭ tus sum	rec tus sum	audī tus sum
2.	ămā tus ĕs	mŏnĭ tus ĕs	rec tus ĕs	audī tus ĕs
3.	ămā tus est	mŏnĭ tus est	rec tus est	audī tus est

Plural.

1.	ămā tī sŭmus	mŏnĭ tī sŭmus	rec tī sŭmus	audī tī sŭmus
2.	ămā tī estis	mŏnĭ tī estis	rec tī estis	audī tī estis
3.	ămā tī sunt	mŏnĭ tī sunt	rec tī sunt	audī tī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ămā tus ĕram	mŏnĭ tus ĕram	rec tus ĕram	audī tus ĕram
2.	ămā tus ĕrās	mŏnĭ tus ĕrās	rec tus ĕrās	audī tus ĕrās
3.	ămā tus ĕrat	mŏnĭ tus ĕrat	rec tus ĕrat	audi tus ĕrat

Plural.

1.	ămā tī ĕrāmus	mŏnĭ tī ĕrāmus	rec tī ĕrāmus	audī tī erāmus
2.	ămā tī ĕrātis	mŏnĭ tī ĕrātis	rec tī ĕrātis	audī tī ĕrātis
3.	ămā tī ĕrant	mŏnĭ tī ĕrant	rec tī ĕrant	audī tī ĕrant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ămā tus ĕro	mŏnĭ tus ĕro	rec tus ĕro	audī tus ĕro
2.	ămā tus ĕris	mŏnĭ tus ĕris	rec tus ĕris	audī tus ĕris
3.	ămā tus ĕrit	mŏnĭ tus ĕrit	rec tus ĕrit	audī tus ĕrit

Plural.

1.	ămā tī ĕrĭmus	mŏnĭ tī ĕrĭmus	rec tī ĕrĭmus	audī tī ĕrĭmus
2.	ămā tī ĕrĭtis	mŏnĭ tī ĕrĭtis	rec tī ĕrĭtis	audī tī ĕrĭtis
3.	ămā tī ĕrunt	mŏnĭ tī ĕrunt	rec tī ĕrunt	audī tī ĕrunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Singular.

1.	ăm ēr	mŏnĕ ār	reg ār	audĭ ār
2.	ăm ēris ăm ēre	mŏnĕ āris mŏnĕ āre	rĕg āris rĕg āre	audĭ āris audĭ āre
3.	ăm ētur	mŏnĕ ātur	rĕg ātur	audĭ ātur

PLURAL.

1.	ăm ēmur	mŏnĕ āmur	rĕg āmur	audĭ āmur
2.	ăm ēmĭnī	mŏnĕ āmĭnī	rĕg āmĭnī	audĭ āmĭnī
3.	ăm entur	mŏnĕ antur	rĕg antur	audĭ antur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	ămā rer	mŏnē rer	rĕgĕ rer	audī rer
2.	ămā rēris ămā rēre	mŏnē rēris mŏnē rēre	rĕgĕ rēris rĕgĕ rēre	audī rēris audī rēre
3.	ămā rētur	mŏnē rētur	rĕgĕ rētur	audī rētur

PLURAL.

1.	ămā rēmur	mŏnē rēmur	rĕgĕ rēmur	audī rēmur
2.	ămā rēmĭnī	mŏnē rēmĭnī	rĕgĕ rēmĭnī	audī rēmĭnī
3.	ămā rentur	mŏnē rentur	rĕgĕ rentur	audī rentur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	ămā tus sim	mŏnĭ tus sim	rec tus sim	audī tus sim
2.	ămā tus sīs	mŏnĭ tus sīs	rec tus sīs	audī tus sīs
3.	ămā tus sit	mŏnĭ tus sit	rec tus sit	audī tus sit

PLURAL.

1.	ămā tī sīmus	mŏnĭ tī sīmus	rec tī sīmus	audī tī sīmus
2.	ămā tī sītis	mŏnĭ tī sītis	rec tī sītis	audī tī sītis
3.	ămā tī sint	mŏnĭ tī sint	rec tī sint	audī tī sint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	ămā tus essem	mŏnĭ tus essem	rec tus essem	audī tus essem
2.	ămā tus essēs	mŏnĭ tus essēs	rec tus essēs	audī tus essēs
3.	ămā tus esset	mŏnĭ tus esset	rec tus esset	audī tus esset

PLURAL.

1.	ămā tī essēmus	mŏnĭ tī essēmus	rec tī essēmus	audī tī essēmus
2.	ămā tī essētis	mŏnĭ tī essētis	rec tī essētis	audī tī essētis
3.	ămā tī essent	mŏnĭ tī essent	rec tī essent	audī tī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2.	ăm āre	mŏn ēre	rĕg ĕrĕ	aud īre

PLURAL.

2.	ăm āmĭnī	mŏn ēmĭnī	rĕg ĭmĭnī	aud īmĭnī

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2.	ăm ātor, *you shall be loved.*	mŏn ētor	rĕg ĭtor	aud ītor
3.	ăm ātor, *he shall be loved.*	mŏn ētor	rĕg ĭtor	aud ītor

PLURAL.

3.	ăm antor, *they shall be loved.*	mŏn entor	rĕg untor	aud iuntor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	ăm ārī	mŏn ērī	rĕg ī	audī rī
Perf.	ămā tus esse	mŏnĭ tus esse	rec tus esse	audī tus esse
Fut.	ămā tum īrī	mŏnĭ tum īrī	rec tum īrī	audī tum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	ămā tus	mŏnĭ tus	rec tus	audī tus
Fut.	ăm andus	mŏn endus	reg endus	audĭ endus

SUPINE.

	ămā tū	mŏnĭ tū	rec tū	audī tū

XI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

Sum, *I am.* Possum, *I am able, I can.* Prosum, *I help, I benefit.*

Principal parts

sum,	fŭī,	esse.
possum,	pŏtŭī,	posse.
prosum,	profŭī,	prodesse.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Singular.

1.	sum	possum	prōsum
2.	ĕs	pŏtes	prōdes
3.	est	pŏtest	prōdest

Plural.

1.	sŭmus	possŭmus	prōsŭmus
2.	estis	pŏtestis	prōdestis
3.	sunt	possunt	prōsunt

IMPERFECT.

Singular.

1.	ĕram	pŏtĕram	prōdĕram
2.	ĕras	pŏtĕras	prōdĕras
3.	ĕrat	pŏtĕrat	prōdĕrat

Plural.

1.	ĕrāmus	pŏtĕrāmus	prōdĕrāmus
2.	ĕrātis	pŏtĕrātis	prōdĕrātis
3.	ĕrant	pŏtĕrant	prōdĕrant

FUTURE.

Singular.

1.	ĕro	pŏtĕro	prōdĕro
2.	ĕris	pŏtĕris	prōdĕris
3.	ĕrit	pŏtĕrit	prōdĕrit

Plural.

1.	ĕrĭmus	pŏtĕrĭmus	prōdĕrĭmus
2.	ĕrĭtis	pŏtĕrĭtis	prōdĕrĭtis
3.	ĕrunt	pŏtĕrunt	prōdĕrunt

PERFECT.

Singular.

1.	fŭī	pŏtŭī	prōfŭī
2.	fŭistī	pŏtŭistī	prōfŭistī
3.	fŭit	pŏtŭit	prōfŭit

PLURAL.

1.	fŭĭmus	pŏtŭĭmus	prōfŭĭmus
2.	fŭistis	pŏtŭistis	prōfŭistis
3.	fŭērunt fŭēre	pŏtŭērunt pŏtŭēre	prōfŭērunt prōfŭēre

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	fŭĕram	pŏtŭĕram	prōfŭĕram
2.	fŭĕrās	pŏtŭĕrās	prōfŭĕrās
3.	fŭĕrat	pŏtŭĕrat	prōfŭĕrat

PLURAL.

1.	fŭĕramus	pŏtŭĕrāmus	prōfŭĕrāmus
2.	fŭĕrātis	pŏtŭĕrātis	prōfŭĕrātis
3.	fŭerant	pŏtŭĕrant	prōfŭĕrant

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	fŭĕro	pŏtŭĕro	prōfŭĕro
2.	fŭĕris	pŏtŭĕris	prōfŭĕris
3.	fŭĕrit	pŏtŭĕrit	prōfŭĕrit

PLURAL.

1.	fŭĕrĭmus	pŏtŭĕrĭmus	prōfŭĕrĭmus
2.	fŭĕrĭtis	pŏtŭĕrĭtis	prōfŭĕrĭtis
3.	fŭĕrint	pŏtŭĕrint	prōfŭĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1.	sim	possim	prōsim
2.	sīs	possīs	prōsīs
3.	sit	possit	prōsit

PLURAL.

1.	sīmus	possīmus	prōsīmus
2.	sītis	possītis	prōsītis
3.	sint	possint	prōsint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. essem	possem	prodessem
2. essēs	possēs	prodessēs
3. esset	posset	prodesset

PLURAL.

1. essēmus	possēmus	prodessēmus
2. essētis	possētis	prodessētis
3. essent	possent	prodessent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. fŭĕrim	pŏtŭĕrim	prōfŭĕrim
2. fŭĕris	pŏtŭĕris	prōfŭĕris
3. fŭĕrit	pŏtŭĕrit	prōfŭĕrit

PLURAL.

1. fŭĕrĭmus	pŏtŭĕrĭmus	prōfŭĕrĭmus
2. fŭĕrĭtis	pŏtŭĕrĭtis	prōfŭĕrĭtis
3. fŭĕrint	pŏtŭĕrint	prōfŭĕrint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. fŭissem	pŏtŭissem	prōfŭissem
2. fŭissēs	pŏtŭissēs	prōfŭissēs
3. fŭisset	pŏtŭisset	prōfŭisset

PLURAL.

1. fŭissēmus	pŏtŭissēmus	prōfŭissēmus
2. fŭissētis	pŏtŭissētis	prōfŭissētis
3. fŭissent	pŏtŭissent	prōfŭissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. ĕs	None.	prōdes

PLURAL.

2. estĕ	None.	prōdestĕ

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. esto, *thou shall be.*	None.		prōdesto
3. esto, *he shall be.*	None.		prōdesto

PLURAL.

2. estōte, *ye shall be.*	None.		prōdestōte
3. sunto, *they shall be.*	None.		prōsunto

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	esse	posse	prōdesse
Perfect.	fŭisse	pŏtŭisse	prōfŭisse
Future.	fŭtūrus esse	—	prōfŭtūrus esse

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	—	pŏtens	—
Future.	fŭtūrus, -a, -um	—	prōfŭtūrus, -a, -um

Defective Verbs.

mĕmĭnī,	mĕmĭnisse,	*I remember.*
coepī,	coepisse,	*I begin*, or *I began.*
ōdī,	ōdisse,	*I hate.*
nōvī,	nōvisse,	*I know.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.	mĕmĭnī, -isti, etc.	coepī	ōdī	nōvī
Pluperf.	mĕmĭnĕram, -ĕras, etc.	coepĕram	ōdĕram	nōvĕram
Fut. Pf.	mĕmĭnĕro, -ĕris, etc.	coepĕro	ōdĕro	nōvĕro

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.	mĕmĭnĕrim, -ĕris	coepĕrim	ōdĕrim	nōvĕrim
Pluperf.	mĕmĭnissem, -issēs	coepissem	ōdissem	nōvissem

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Future.	2. Sing.	mĕmento	Wanting.	Wanting.	Wanting.
	2. Plu.	mĕmentōte	"	"	"

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Perfect.	mĕmĭnisse	coepisse	ōdisse	nōvisse
Future.	Wanting.	coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse	Wanting.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Pass.	Wanting.	coeptus	ōsus	nōtus
Fut. Act.	Wanting.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus	Wanting.

Irregular Verbs—VŎLO, NŌLO, MĀLO.

Principal Parts { vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭī, *I will, I wish, I am willing.*
nōlo, nolle, nŏlŭī, *I am unwilling.*
mālo, malle, mālŭī, *I prefer.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Singular.

1.	vŏlo	nōlo	mālo
2.	vis	nōn vis	māvis
3.	vult	nōn vult	māvult

Plural.

1.	vŏlŭmus	nōlŭmus	mālŭmus
2.	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3.	vŏlunt	nōlunt	mālunt

IMPERFECT.

Singular.

1.	vŏlēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
2.	vŏlēbas	nōlēbas	mālēbas
3.	vŏlēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat

Plural.

1.	vŏlēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2.	vŏlēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
3.	vŏlēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

FUTURE.

Singular.

1.	vŏlam	nōlam	mālam
2.	vŏlēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3.	vŏlet	nōlet	mālet

Plural.

1.	vŏlēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2.	vŏlētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3.	vŏlent	nōlent	mālent

PERFECT.

Singular.

1.	vŏlŭī	nōlŭī	mālŭī
2.	vŏlŭistī	nōlŭistī	mālŭistī
3.	vŏlŭit	nōlŭit	mālŭit

Plural.

1.	vŏlŭĭmus	nōlŭĭmus	mālŭĭmus
2.	vŏlŭistis	nōlŭistis	mālŭistis
3.	vŏlŭērunt vŏlŭēre	nōlŭērunt nōlŭēre	mālŭērunt mālŭēre

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.

1.	vŏlŭĕram	nōlŭĕram	mālŭĕram
2.	vŏlŭĕrās	nōlŭĕrās	mālŭĕrās
3.	vŏlŭĕrat	nōlŭĕrat	mālŭĕrat

Plural.

1.	vŏlŭĕrāmus	nōlŭĕrāmus	mālŭĕrāmus
2.	vŏlŭĕrātis	nōlŭĕrātis	mālŭĕrātis
3.	vŏlŭĕrant	nōlŭĕrant	mālŭĕrant

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular.

1.	vŏlŭĕro	nōlŭĕro	mālŭĕro
2.	vŏlŭĕris	nōlŭĕris	mālŭĕris
3.	vŏlŭĕrit	nōlŭĕrit	mālŭĕrit

PLURAL.

1.	vŏlŭĕrĭmus	nōlŭĕrĭmus	mālŭĕrĭmus
2.	vŏlŭĕrĭtis	nōlŭĕrĭtis	mālŭĕrĭtis
3.	vŏlŭĕrint	nōlŭĕrint	mālŭĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1.	vĕlim	nōlim	mālim
2.	vĕlīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3.	vĕlit	nōlit	mālit

PLURAL.

1.	vĕlīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2.	vĕlītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3.	vĕlint	nōlint	mālint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	vellem	nollem	mallem
2.	vellēs	nollēs	mallēs
3.	vellet	nollet	mallet

PLURAL.

1.	vellēmus	nollēmus	mallēmus
2.	vellētis	nollētis	mallētis
3.	vellent	nollent	mallent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	vŏlŭĕrim	nōlŭĕrim	mālŭĕrim
2.	vŏlŭĕris	nōlŭĕris	mālŭĕris
3.	vŏlŭĕrit	nōlŭĕrit	mālŭĕrit

PLURAL.

1.	vŏlŭĕrĭmus	nōlŭĕrĭmus	mālŭĕrĭmus
2.	vŏlŭĕrĭtis	nōlŭĕrĭtis	mālŭĕrĭtis
3.	vŏlŭĕrint	nōlŭĕrint	mālŭĕrint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1.	vŏlŭissem	nōlŭissem	mālŭissem
2.	vŏlŭissēs	nōlŭissēs	mālŭissēs
3.	vŏlŭisset	nōlŭisset	mālŭisset

PLURAL.

1.	vŏlŭissēmus	nōlŭissēmus	mālŭissēmus
2.	vŏlŭissētis	nōlŭissētis	mālŭissētis
3.	vŏlŭissent	nōlŭissent	mālŭissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2.	None.	nōlī	None.

PLURAL.

2.	None.	nōlīte	None.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	velle	nolle	malle
Perfect.	vŏlŭisse	nōlŭisse	mālŭisse

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	vŏlens (used as an adj. = *willing.*)	nōlens (used as an adj. = *unwilling.*)	None.

Fero, *I carry.*

Principal Parts—Fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum.

PRESENT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Singular.		
1.	fĕro	fĕram	fĕror	fĕrār
2.	fers	fĕras	ferris ferre	fĕrāris fĕrāre
3.	fert	fĕrat	fertur	fĕrātur

Plural.

1.	fĕrĭmus	fĕrāmus	fĕrĭmur	fĕrāmur
2.	fertis	fĕrātis	fĕrĭmĭnī	fĕrāmĭnī
3.	fĕrunt	fĕrant	fĕruntur	fĕrantur

IMPERFECT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Singular.		
1.	fĕrēbam	ferrem	fĕrēbar	ferrer
2.	fĕrēbās	ferrēs	fĕrēbāris fĕrēbāre	ferrēris ferrēre
3.	fĕrēbat	ferret	fĕrēbātur	ferrētur
		Plural.		
1.	fĕrēbāmus	ferrēmus	fĕrēbāmur	ferrēmur
2.	fĕrēbātis	ferrētis	fĕrēbāmĭnī	ferrēmĭnī
3.	fĕrēbant	ferrent	fĕrēbantur	ferrentur

PERFECT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Singular.		
1.	tŭlī	tŭlĕrim	lātus sum	lātus sim
2.	tŭlisti	tŭlĕris	lātus ĕs	lātus sīs
3.	tŭlit	tŭlĕrit	lātus est	lātus sit
		Plural.		
1.	tŭlĭmus	tŭlĕrĭmus	lātī sŭmus	lātī sīmus
2.	tŭlistis	tŭlĕrĭtis	lātī estis	lātī sītis
3.	tŭlērunt tŭlēre	tŭlĕrint	lātī sunt	lātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Singular.		
1.	tŭlĕram	tŭlissem	lātus ĕram	lātus essem
2.	tŭlĕrās	tŭlissēs	lātus ĕrās	lātus essēs
3.	tŭlĕrat	tŭlisset	lātus ĕrat	lātus esset

Plural.

1.	tŭlĕrāmus	tŭlissēmus	lātī ĕrāmus	lātī essēmus
2.	tŭlĕrātis	tŭlissētis	lātī ĕrātis	lātī essētis
3.	tŭlĕrant	tŭlissent	lātī ĕrant	lātī essent

FUTURE.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Singular.		
1.	fĕram	None.	fĕrār	None.
2.	fĕrēs		fĕrēris fĕrēre	
3.	fĕret		fĕrētur	
		Plural.		
1.	fĕrēmus	None.	fĕrēmur	None.
2.	fĕrētis		fĕrēmĭnī	
3.	fĕrent		fĕrentur	

FUTURE PERFECT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Singular.		
1.	tŭlĕro	None.	lātus ĕro	None.
2.	tŭlĕris		lātus ĕris	
3.	tŭlĕrit		lātus ĕrit	
		Plural.		
1.	tŭlĕrĭmus	None.	lātī ĕrĭmus	None.
2.	tŭlĕrĭtis		lātī ĕrĭtis	
3.	tŭlĕrint		lātī ĕrunt	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
		Singular.	
2.	fer		ferre
		Plural.	
2.	ferte		fĕrĭmĭnī

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Singular.	
2. ferto, *you shall carry.*	fertor
3. ferto, *he shall carry.*	fertor
Plural.	
2. fertōte, *ye shall carry.*	Wanting.
3. fĕrunto, *they shall carry.*	fĕruntor

INFINITIVE.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Present.	ferre	ferrī
Perfect.	tŭlisse	lātus esse
Future.	lātūrus, a, um, esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	fĕrens	Wanting.
Perfect.	Wanting.	lātus, -a, -um
Future.	lātūrus, -a, -um	fĕrendus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

Active. lātum. *Passive.* lātū.

Fio, *I become.*

Principal Parts—Fīo, fĭĕrī, factus sum.

PRESENT		PERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Singular.			
1. fīo	fīam	factus sum	factus sim
2. fīs	fīās	factus ĕs	factus sīs
3. fit	fīat	factus est	factus sit
Plural.			
1. fīmus	fīāmus	facti sŭmus	facti sīmus
2. fītis	fīātis	facti estis	facti sītis
3. fīunt	fīant	facti sunt	facti sint

	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Singular.		
1.	fīēbam	fĭĕrem	factus ĕram	factus essem
2.	fīēbās	fĭĕrēs	factus ĕrās	factus essēs
3.	fīebat	fĭĕret	factus ĕrat	factus esset
		Plural.		
1.	fīēbāmus	fĭĕrēmus	facti ĕrāmus	facti essēmus
2.	fīēbātis	fĭĕrētis	facti ĕrātis	facti essētis
3.	fīēbant	fĭĕrent	facti erant	facti essent

	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
		Singular.		
1.	fīam	None.	factus ĕro	None.
2.	fīēs		factus ĕris	
3.	fīet		factus ĕrit	
		Plural.		
1.	fīēmus		facti ĕrĭmus	
2.	fīētis		facti ĕrĭtis	
3.	fīent		facti ĕrunt.	

IMPERATIVE.

fī fīte

INFINITIVE.

Present. fĭĕrī *Perfect.* factus esse *Future.* factum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. factus, -a, -um *Future.* făcĭendus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

factū

Eo, *I go.*

Principal Parts—Eo, īre, īvī *or* ĭī, ĭtum.

	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
			Singular.	
1.	eo	ĕam	īvī *or* ĭī	īvĕrim *or* ĭĕrim
2.	īs	ĕās	īvisti *or* ĭisti	īvĕris *or* ĭĕris
3.	it	ĕat	īvit *or* ĭit	īvĕrit *or* ĭĕrit
			Plural.	
1.	īmus	ĕāmus	īvĭmus *or* ĭīmus	īvĕrĭmus *or* ĭĕrĭmus
2.	ītis	ĕātis	īvistis *or* ĭistis	īvĕrītis *or* ĭĕrītis
3.	ĕunt	ĕant	{īvērunt *or* ĭērunt {īvēre *or* ĭēre	īvĕrint *or* ĭĕrint

	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
			Singular.	
1.	ībam	īrem	īvĕram *or* ĭĕram	īvissem *or* ĭissem
2.	ībās	īrēs	īvĕrās *or* ĭĕrās	īvissēs *or* ĭissēs
3.	ībat	īret	īvĕrat *or* ĭĕrat	īvisset *or* ĭisset
			Plural.	
1.	ībāmus	īrēmus	īvĕrāmus *or* ĭĕrāmus	īvissēmus *or* ĭissēmus
2.	ībātis	īrētis	īvĕrātis *or* ĭĕrātis	īvissētis *or* ĭissētis
3.	ībant	īrent	īvĕrant *or* ĭĕrant	īvissent *or* ĭissent

	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
			Singular.	
1.	ībo	None.	īvĕro *or* ĭĕro	None.
2.	ībis		īvĕris *or* ĭĕris	
3.	ībit		īvĕrit *or* ĭĕrit	
			Plural.	
1.	ībĭmus		īvĕrĭmus *or* ĭĕrĭmus	
2.	ībĭtis		īvĕrītis *or* ĭĕrītis	
3.	ībunt		īvĕrint *or* ĭĕrint	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
2. ī	2. īte

FUTURE.

2. īto	2. ītōte
3. īto	3. ĕunto

INFINITIVE.

Pres. īre	
Perf. īvisse *or* ĭisse	
Fut. ĭtūrus, -a, -um esse	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Act. ĭens (gen. ĕuntis)	
Fut. Act. ĭtūrus, -a, -um	
Fut. Pass. ĕundus, -a, -um	

SUPINES.

Active. ĭtum. *Passive.* ĭtū

Edo, *I eat.*

Principal Parts—Edo, ĕdĕre, ēdī, ēsum.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Singular.		
1. ĕdo	ĕdam	ēdī	ēdĕrim
2. ĕdis, ēs	ĕdās	ēdisti	ēdĕris
3. ĕdit, est	ĕdat	ēdit	ēdĕrit
	Plural.		
1. ĕdĭmus	ĕdāmus	ēdĭmus	ēdĕrĭmus
2. ĕdĭtis, estis	ĕdātis	ēdistis	ēdĕrĭtis
3. ĕdunt	ĕdant	ēdērunt, ēdēre	ēdĕrint

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Singular.		
1. ĕdēbam	ĕdĕrem *or* essem	ēdĕram	ēdissem
2. ĕdēbās	ĕdĕrēs *or* essēs	ēdĕrās	ēdissēs
3. ĕdēbat	ĕdĕret *or* esset	ēdĕrat	ēdisset
	Plural.		
1. ĕdēbāmus	ĕdĕrēmus *or* essēmus	ēdĕrāmus	ēdissēmus
2. ĕdēbātis	ĕdĕrētis *or* essētis	ēdĕrātis	ēdissētis
3. ĕdēbant	ĕdĕrent *or* essent	ēdĕrant	ēdissent

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Singular.		
1. ĕdam	None.	ēdĕro	None.
2. ĕdēs		ēdĕris	
3. ĕdet		ēdĕrit	
	Plural.		
1. ĕdēmus	None.	ēdĕrĭmus	None.
2. ĕdētis		ēdĕrĭtis	
3. ĕdent		ēdĕrint	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
2. ĕdĕ	ĕdīte

FUTURE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
2. ĕdīto	ĕdītōte
3. ĕdīto	ĕdunto

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Pres.	ĕdĕre *or* esse	*Pres.*	ĕdens
Perf.	ēdisse	*Fut.*	ēsūrus, a, um
Fut.	ēsūrus, a, um, esse		

Aio, *I say*, or *I affirm.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	āĭo,	aıs,	aıt,	—	—	āĭunt
Impf.	āiēbam,	āiēbās,	āiēbat,	āiēbāmus,	āiēbātis,	āiēbant
Perf.	—	—	āit			

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	—	—	āĭat	—	—	āĭant

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. āĭens

RULES OF SYNTAX.

ACCUSATIVE.

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative: as, Puella rosam laudat, *The girl praises the rose.*

2. Many verbs that are intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, especially verbs of *emotion*, *taste* and *smell:* as, Sequăni Ariovisti crudelitatem horrebant, *The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus.* Haec oratio antiquitatem olet, *This speech smacks of antiquity.* Piscis mare sapit, *The fish tastes of the sea.*

3. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *naming*, *regarding* and *showing*, take two accusatives in the active: as, Populus Romanus Ciceronem consulem creavit, *The Roman people elected Cicero consul.* Here Ciceronem is the direct object and consulem is a part of the predicate, and is called the *predicate accusative.*

In the passive these verbs take two nominatives: the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative: as, Cicero consul a populo Romano creatus est, *Cicero was elected consul by the Roman people.*

4. Verbs of *asking*,[1] *teaching*, and *concealing*, take two accusatives in the active, one of the person and another of the thing: as, Pater filium musicam docuit, *The father taught his son music.*

In the passive the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained: as, Filius musicam a patre doctus est, *The son was taught music by his father.*

5. Many verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred origin or meaning *(cognate accusative):* as, Turpissimam vitam vivit, *He lives a very base life.* Mirum somnium somniavit, *He dreamed a wonderful dream.* Proelium pugnat, *He fights a battle.*

---

[1] Peto, *I ask*, and postulo, *I demand*, take the accusative of the thing and ablative of the person with a or ab, *from:* as, Pacem a Romanis petiverunt, *They asked peace from the Romans*, or *They asked the Romans for peace.* Librum ab amicis postulavit, *He demanded a book from his friends.* Quaero, *I ask*, takes an accusative of the thing and an ablative of the person with a (or ab), e (or ex), de: as, Causam e viro quaesivit, *He asked a reason from the man* (or, *He asked the man for a reason*).

6. The accusative neuter of a pronoun or of a numeral adjective, is sometimes joined to an intransitive verb to denote, not the proper object, but the compass and extent of the action : as, **Ĭdem gloriatur,** *He makes the same boast.* **Id laetor,** *I rejoice at this.*

7. Many intransitive verbs, especially those that express motion, compounded with the prepositions **ad** (*to*), **circum** (*around*), **per** (*through*), **praeter** (*past*), **trans** (*across*), or **super** (*above*), take an accusative after them : as, **Cato rostra advolat,** *Cato flies to the hustings.* The accusative depends on the preposition and the sentence might be written, **Cato ad rostra volat.**

8. Transitive verbs compounded with **trans (transduco, transporto, traicio)** may take two accusatives in the active, one depending on the verb, and the other on the preposition : as, **Hannibal copias Ibērum traduxit,** *Hannibal led his forces across the Iberus.* This might also be expressed, **Hannibal copias trans Iberum duxit,** or **Hannibal copias trans Iberum traduxit.** In the passive the direct object of the verb becomes the subject, and the subject of the active becomes the ablative of agent with **a** or **ab**: as, **Ab Hannibale copiae Iberum traductae sunt,** *His forces were led across the Iberus by Hannibal.*

9. An adjective or a verb may take an accusative to define its meaning : as, **Puer caput vulneratur,** *The boy is wounded in the head.* **Imperator dextram manum ictus est,** *The general was struck on the right hand.* **Ille est patri vultum similis,** *He is like his father in face.* This is called the *accusative of specification* or *nearer definition.*

10. The accusative is used in exclamations with or without an interjection : as, **Me miserum,** *O wretched me!* **O malam fortunam,** *What evil fortune!*

DATIVE.

1. The indirect object of a transitive verb is put in the dative : as, **Puer epistolam puellae donat,** *The boy gives the girl a letter (a letter to the girl).*

2. Adjectives implying *nearness*, *likeness*, *fitness*, *kindness*, or the opposite idea, take a dative : as, **Urbs propinqua flumini est,** *The city is near a river.* **Canis similis lupo est,** *A dog is like a wolf.*

Castris idoneus locus est, *The place is suitable for a camp.* Erat vir mihi amicissimus, *He was a man very friendly to me.* Omni aetati mors est communis, *Death is common to every time of life.*

3. The dative is used in Latin with many verbs that in English have a direct object. This is most common with verbs signifying *to please*, *favor*, *trust*, *assist* and their opposites; also *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *threaten*, *spare*, *pardon*, *be angry:* as, Res omnibus placuit, *The affair pleased all.* Fortuna fortibus favet, *Fortune favors the brave.* Pāret legibus consul, *As consul he obeys the laws.* Tibi irascor, *I am angry with you.*[1]

4. A verb that governs a dative in the active can only be used impersonally in the passive: as, Tibi imperatur, *You are commanded* (literally, *It is commanded to you*). Mihi creditur, *I am believed* (Do not say Imperaris or credor).

5. Verbs compounded with bene, male, and satis, govern a dative: as, Optimo viro maledixit, *He reviled a most excellent man.* Mihi nunquam satisfecit, *He never satisfied me.*

6. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, con (for cum), in, inter, ob *(on, against)*, post, prae *(before)*, sub *(under)*, or super *(above)*, often govern the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect: as, Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intulit, *The Roman people made war on the Gauls.*

In the passive the direct object of the active becomes the subject, and the indirect object is retained: as, Bellum Gallis a populo Romano illatum est, *War was made on the Gauls by the Roman people.*

7. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-named prepositions often take a dative: as, Caesar exercitui praefuit, *Caesar*

[1]The chief verbs that govern a dative are: Placeo (*please*), displiceo (*displease*), libet (*it pleases*), faveo (*favor*), fido and confido (*trust:* dat. of person but abl. of thing), resisto (*resist*), obsto (*stand in the way of*), credo (*trust*, with dat. of person and accusative of thing; in sense of *believe*, dat. of person), persuadeo (*persuade*), suadeo (*recommend*), impero (*command*), mando (*entrust*), obedio (*obey*), pareo (*obey*), repugno (*oppose*), obsisto (*meet*), occurro (*meet*), nubo (*wed*, said of a woman; properly *to veil one's self for*), servio (*be a slave to*), minor (*threaten:* dat. of person and acc. of thing, or acc. of person and abl. of thing), parco (*spare*), ignosco (*pardon*). Exceptions:—Iuvo, adiuvo (*help*), delecto (*delight*), laedo, offendo (*harm*), iubeo (*order*), veto and prohibeo (*forbid*), rego, guberno (*rule, direct*), govern the accusative.

commanded the army. Consulis consiliis obstat, *He opposes the plans of the consul.*

8. The dative is used with the verb sum, *I am*, to express possession: as, Mihi est liber, *I have a book* (literally, *There is a book to me*).

9. The compounds of sum (except possum, *I can*) govern the dative: as, Tibi adsum, *I aid you.* Amicis prodest, *He helps his friends.*

10. Opus est, and usus est (*there is need*), are generally used impersonally with the dative of the person to whom there is need, and the ablative of the thing needed: as, Cibo mihi opus est, *I have need of food* (literally, *There is need to me with food*). Viginti denariis tibi usus est, *You have need of twenty denarii.*

11. The agent is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by the dative: as, Parentes nobis amandi sunt, *Our parents should be loved by us.* (See p. 172, 3.)

12. The dative is used to express *purpose*, *intention*, or *destination:* as, Malo est hominibus avaritia, *Avarice is an evil* (literally, *for an evil*) *to men.* Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit, *He left five cohorts to guard the camp* (literally, *for a guard to the camp*). This is called the *dative of purpose.*

13. The dative is often used in Latin instead of the English possessive: as, Omnes flentes Caesari sese ad pedes proiecerunt, *All threw themselves at Caesar's feet in tears.*

14. A dative is often used of the person specially interested in an action: as, Quid mihi Celsus agit? *Tell me, what is Celsus about?* This use is confined to personal pronouns. It is called the *ethic dative.*

GENITIVE.

1. A noun used to limit or define another noun, and not meaning the same thing, is put in the genitive. This relation is generally expressed in English by the preposition *of:* as, Libri Ciceronis, *The books of Cicero.* Libra auri, *A pound of gold.*

2. The genitive is often used in the predicate with sum to express possession: as, Haec domus est mei patris, *This house belongs to*

my father. This genitive may be used to express our *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token:* as, Iudicis est verum sequi, *It is the duty of a judge to follow the truth* (literally, *To follow the truth is of a judge*). Hoc est praeceptōris, *This is the task of an instructor.* Sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre, *It is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation* (literally, *with an even mind*).[1]

3. The genitive expresses the whole of which a part is taken: as, Pars militum, *A part of the soldiers.* Unus militum, *One of the soldiers.* Decem millia passuum, *Ten thousand paces* (=*ten Roman miles*). Decem vestrum, *Ten of you.* Quinque nostrum, *Five of us.* This is called the *partitive genitive.* (Do not use nostri and vestri in partitive genitive. See p. 104, note.)

4. A noun in the genitive (called the *genitive of quality*) is often added to another noun to denote a quality: as, Vir est summae fortitudinis, *He is a man of the highest courage.* The word in the genitive expressing the quality has invariably an adjective with it. Thus, *A man of wisdom* is not Vir sapientiae, but Vir sapiens. When a word expressing quality is without an adjective and cannot be turned as in the last example, praedītus (*endowed with*) is used with the ablative: as, Homo virtute praeditus, *A man of valour* (literally, *A man endowed with valour*).

5. When the price for which a thing is *bought* or *sold* is not stated definitely, price is usually expressed by the genitive, especially with the words magni (*at a great price*), maximi (*at a very great price*), parvi (*at a low price*), pluris (*at a greater price*), minoris (*at a less price*), tanti (*at so great a price*), quanti (*at as high a price* or *at how high a price*): as, Hortos tanti quanti tu emit, *He bought gardens at as high a price as you.* Frumentum pluris vendo, *I sell corn at a higher price.*[2]

6. The genitive is used with nouns derived from verbs to denote the subject of the verb implied in the governing noun: as, Morsus

---

[1] With possessive pronouns this genitive is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive adjective: as, Tuum (not tui) est vidēre, *It is your duty to see.*

[2] Do not use multi or maioris or plurimi, for *At a high, at a higher, at a very high, price.*

canis, *The bite of a dog.* Here canis is the subject of the implied mordet, *he bites.* This is called the *subjective genitive.*

7. The genitive is also used with nouns derived from verbs to denote the object of the verb implied in the governing noun: as, Timor mortis, *The fear of death.* Here mortis is the object of the implied timet, *he fears.* This is called the *objective genitive.*

8. A genitive is often added to another noun to define and limit: as, Virtus iustitiae, *The virtue of justice.* This is called the *genitive of definition.*

9. Adjectives are followed by a genitive when they express *plenty*, *want*, or the opposite: as, Plenus hostium, *Full of the enemy.* Expers rationis, *Devoid of reason.* So, also, adjectives derived from verbs: as, Tenax propositi, *Firm of purpose.* Cupĭdus pecuniae, *Eager for money.*

10. Verbs of *plenty* and *want* take the genitive: as, Eget pecuniae, *He is in need of money.*

11. Verbs signifying to *remember*,[1] *forget*, *pity*[2], like memini *(remember)*, reminiscor *(remember)*, obliviscor *(forget)*, misereor *(pity)*, miseresco *(pity)*, often take the genitive: as, Miserēre laborum, *Pity our sufferings.* Huius diei meminero, *I shall remember this day.*

12. Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *condemning*, *reminding* and *admonishing* take, in the active, the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing: as, Te impietatis absolvo, *I acquit you of impiety.* Arguit me furti, *He accuses me of theft.* Cives eum proditionis accusavērunt, *The citizens accused him of treachery.*

In the passive, these constructions become respectively, Tu ab me impietatis absolvĕris, Furti ab eo arguor, Ab civibus is proditionis accusatus est.

13. Miseret *(it excites pity)*, poenitet *(it makes repent)*, pudet *(it shames)*, taedet *(it wearies)*, pĭget *(it annoys)*, are used impersonally with the accusative of the person affected and the genitive

---

[1] Verbs of forgetting and remembering often take the accusative, especially of things. Recordor, *I recollect*, has usually the accusative.

[2] Miseror, -āri, -ātus sum *(express pity for)* takes the accusative: as, Casum suum miseratur, *He bewails his misfortune.*

of the object causing the feeling : as, **Eorum nos miseret**, *We pity them* (literally, *It pities us of them*).

14. The impersonals **interest** and **rēfert**, *it is of importance*, take the genitive of the person to whom the matter is of importance : as, **Clodii intererat Milonem perire**, *It was of importance to Clodius that Milo should die.* But if the person is represented in English by a personal pronoun, the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun is used in Latin : as, **Id meā interest**, *This is of importance to me.* The degree of importance is expressed either by an adverb (**multum**, **plurimum**, *much*, *very much*), or by the genitive of price (as, **magni**, **parvi**, **pluris**, etc.) : as, **Multum meā interest**, *It is of great importance to me.* **Magni tuā interest**, *It is of great importance to you.*

ABLATIVE.

1. The ablative expresses *separation* or *motion from ;* hence it is used with verbs signifying to *desist from*, *relieve from*, *deprive of*, *need*,[1] *be without*, *free from ;* as, **Conatu destitit**, *He desisted from the attempt.* **Levā me hoc onere**, *Relieve me of this burden.* **Se oculis privavit**, *He deprived himself of his eyes.* **Non egeo medicinā**, *I do not want medicine.* **Cibo caret**, *He is without food.*

2. Adjectives signifying *want* or *freedom from* take the ablative : as, **Animus liber curā**, *A mind free from care.* **Puer est expers**[2] **metu**, *The boy is without fear.* **Urbs est nuda praesidio**, *The city is destitute of defence.*

3. The ablative of origin is used with verbs (chiefly participles like **natus**, **satus**, *born from ;* **editus**, **genītus**, *descended from ;* **ortus**, *sprung from*) with the preposition **a** (or **ab**), **e** (or **ex**), **de** when implying remote ancestry, or with the simple ablative for immediate ancestry : as, **Belgae a Germanis orti sunt**, *The Belgae are descended from the Germans.* **Ille optimis parentibus ortus est**, *He is born of very noble parents.*

4. The agent after a passive verb is regularly expressed by the ablative with **a** or **ab** : as, **Vir a sociis laudatur**, *The man is praised by his comrades.*

---

[1] **Egeo** and **indigeo** govern also the genitive. (See p. 281. 10.)

[2] This governs the genitive also. (See p. 281, 9.)

5. *Cause*, *manner*, *means* and *instrument* are denoted by the ablative without a preposition : as, Puer pallidus irā fuit, *The boy was pale with rage* (abl. of cause ; not often used without an adj.). Magno fletu Caesarem orant, *they beseech Caesar with much weeping* (abl. of manner ; not often used without an adj.). Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, *He encouraged the minds of the Gauls by his words* (abl. of means). Puerum gladio vulneravit, *He wounded the boy with a sword* (abl. of instrument).

6. The ablative is used with an adjective in the comparative when quam *(than)* is omitted : as, Lupus saevior cane est, *The wolf is fiercer than the dog*. Lupum saeviorem cane aestimo, *I consider the wolf fiercer than the dog*.

Note that quam can only be omitted when the word after it would be in the nominative or accusative, if quam were expressed.

7. The ablative is used with the comparative of the adjective to express the amount of difference : as, Puer uno anno senior quam frater erat, *The boy was one year older* (literally, *older by one year*) *than his brother*. This is called the *ablative of difference*.

8. Price with verbs of *buying* and *selling* is expressed by the ablative when the price is definitely stated : as, Viginti talentis unam orationem vendidit Isocrates, *Isocrates sold one speech at twenty talents*. Multo sanguine haec victoria nobis stat, *This victory costs us much blood* (literally, *Stands to us at much blood*).

9. The following adjectives govern the ablative : Dignus (*worthy*), indignus *(unworthy)*, contentus *(contented)*, praedītus *(endowed with)*, frētus (*relying on*), liber *(free from)* : as, Miles coronā dignus est, *The soldier is worthy of a crown*. Puer est ingenio praeditus, *The boy is endowed with ability*.

10. The deponents utor *(I use)*, fruor *(I enjoy)*, fungor *(I discharge)*, potior *(I obtain)*, vescor *(I eat)*, govern the ablative : as, Plurimis rebus fruimur et utimur, *We enjoy and use many things*. Magnā praedā est potītus, *He obtained large booty*. Lacte et carne vescebantur, *They used to live on milk and flesh*.

11. Opus est and usus est *(there is need)* are generally used impersonally with the *dative of the person* to whom there is need, and the *ablative of the thing* needed : as, Cibo mihi opus est, *I have need of food* (literally, *There is need to me with food*).

12. An ablative (called the *abl. of quality*) is often used, like the genitive,[1] to express *quality*, especially when external qualities of dress or appearance are mentioned: as, **Homo magno capite, ore rubicundo, magnis pedibus**, *A man with a big head, red face, and big feet.* **Caesar erat excelsā staturā**, *Caesar was of lofty stature.* The abl. of quality should not be used without an adjective.

13. An ablative (called the *abl. of respect*) is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true: as, **Pauci numero erant**, *They were few in number.* **Est Medus genere**, *He is a Mede by birth.*

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

14. The *ablative absolute* is a phrase consisting of a noun in the ablative case with a participle, adjective, or noun in agreement with it: as, **Coniuratio facta est Tarquinio regnante**, *A conspiracy was formed in the reign of Tarquin.* **His rebus dictis rediit**, *He returned after saying these things.* **Consule Planco**, *In the consulship of Plancus.*

RULES FOR EXPRESSING TIME.

1. *A point of time* is expressed by the ablative: as, **Hiĕme noctes sunt longae**, *In winter the nights are long.*

2. *Within a period of time* is expressed either by the simple ablative or by the accusative with **inter** or **intra**: as, **Paucis diebus, inter paucos dies, intra paucos dies**, *Within a few days.*

3. *Many years after* is **multis annis** (abl.) **post**,[2] or **post**[3] **multos annos**; *many years before* is **multis annis** (abl.) **ante**,[2] or **ante**[3] **multos annos**: as, **Multis annis post urbs expugnata est**, *The city was taken many years after.*

4. *Duration of time* is expressed by the accusative: as, **Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit**, *Romulus reigned for thirty-seven years.* Often **per**, *through*, is used if definite duration is to be expressed: as, **Per totam noctem dormiebat**, *He slept the live-long night.*

5. *Ago* is expressed by **abhinc**, followed by the words expressing time in the accusative or ablative: as, **Abhinc decem dies** (or

[1] See Genitive (p. 280,4).

[2] In these cases **post** and **ante** are adverbs.

[3] In these cases **post** and **ante** are prepositions.

abhinc decem diebus) Caesar castra movit, *Ten days ago Caesar moved his camp.*

6. *Old* or *of age* is expressed by the participle natus with the accusative: as, Homo est triginta annos natus, *The man is thirty years old* (literally, *has been born thirty years*); or without natus, as Homo est triginta annorum (p. 280, 4). *More than thirty years* may be expressed by Natus plus (quam) triginta annos.

RULES FOR EXPRESSING PLACE.

1. *Place to which* is generally expressed by the *accusative* with the prepositions ad or in, unless before the names of towns or small islands: as, Ad Galliam, in urbem contendit, *He hastens to Gaul, to the city.* With the names of towns and small islands *place to which* is regularly expressed by the accusative without a preposition[1]: as, Romam, Corinthum, Karthaginem, Aeginam contendit, *He hastens to Rome, Corinth, Carthage, Aegina.* So also domum (*home*), rus (*to the country*), are used without a preposition: as, Domum, rus ambulat, *He walks home, to the country.* Ad domum Ciceronis ambulat would mean *He walks to the house of Cicero.*

2. *Place from which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with the prepositions, a, ab, e, ex, or de, unless before the names of towns and small islands; as, Ab Gallia, ex urbe, de provincia excessit, *He departed from Gaul, out of the city, from the province.* But, with the names of towns and small islands, *from* is regularly expressed by the *ablative without a preposition:* as, Romā, Corintho, Karthagine, Aegīnā, contendit, *He hastens from Rome, Corinth, Carthage, Aegina.* So also: Domo, *from home;* rure, *from the country.*

3. To express *place in which*, a preposition is required, unless with the names of towns and small islands: as, In Gallia, in urbe vivit, *He lives in Gaul, in the city.* But to express *place in which* with the names of towns or small islands, the so-called *locative*[2]

[1] When ad is used before the name of a town it means *towards*, or *in the neighborhood of*: as, Ad Romam contendit, *He hastens towards Rome.* Ad Romam pugnatum est, *The battle was fought in the neighborhood of Rome.*

[2] A case which became obsolete in later Latin

case is used. This case has the form of (*a*) the genitive, if the noun is of the first or second declension singular; (*b*) the ablative, if the noun is of the third declension singular or if the noun is plural: as, **Romae**, *at Rome;* **Corinthi**, *at Corinth;* **Karthagine**, *at Carthage;* **Athenis**, *at Athens* (from **Athenae**, nom. pl.); **Delphis**, *at Delphi* (**Delphi**, nom. pl.); **Curibus**, *at Cures* (**Cures**, nom. pl.). So also: **Domi**, *at home;* **humi**, *on the ground;* **belli**, *in war;* **ruri**, *in the country;* **militiae**, *on military service, abroad.*

4. When **urbs** or **oppidum** is used in apposition to the name of a town, the preposition should be expressed: as, **Ad urbem Romam contendit**, *He set out for the city of Rome.* **Ex urbe Romā properavit**, *He hastened from the city of Rome.* **In urbe Romā vixit**, *He lived in the city of Rome.* (Note.—The *City of Rome* is **Urbs Roma**, not **Urbs Romae**.)

EXTENT OF SPACE.

1. *Space over which* motion takes place is expressed by the accusative: as, **Tria millia passuum ambulavit**, *He walked three miles.*

2. *Space of measurement* answering to the questions, *How high? how deep? how broad? how long?* may be expressed by the acc. or gen. Thus: *A tree a hundred feet high,* **Arbor alta centum pedes** (acc. of extent of space) or **Arbor centum pedum** (gen. of qual.).

3. *Space which lies between* is expressed by the accusative or ablative: as, **Abest decem millia passuum**, *It is ten miles off.* **Quinque millibus passuum distat**, *It is five miles distant* (lit. *by five miles*).

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Is the soldier here?* is **Adestne miles?** *Is not the soldier here?* is **Nonne miles adest?** *The soldier is not here, is he?* is **Num miles adest?**

Questions not introduced by interrogative pronouns or adverbs are usually introduced by one of the interrogative particles **-ne, nonne, num.** **-Ne** simply asks for information; **nonne** expects the answer *Yes*, and **num** the answer *No.*

2. Questions introduced by interrogative pronouns or adverbs do

not require an interrogative particle: as, *Why are you laughing?* Quid rides? *Where are you coming from?* Unde venis?

3. *Yes* or *no* in answer to a question is usually expressed by repeating some word in the question: as, *Is the soldier present? Yes* (*No*). Adestne miles? Adest (Non adest).

4. An is often used to introduce a rhetorical question: as, *Have you doubts of their honor?* An de eorum fide dubitatis?

5. *Whether . . . or* is Utrum (rarely -ne) . . . an, and *whether . . . or not*, utrum . . . annon: as, *Whether is he reading or writing?* Utrum legit an scribit? *Are you slaves or freemen?* Servine estis an liberi? *Whether will he come or not?* Utrum veniet annon?

6. *Tell me who you are* is Dic mihi quis sis. *I will ask him what he is reading*, Rogabo eum quid legat.

N.B.—A question dependent upon a verb of *saying* or *asking* has the verb in the subjunctive. Such a question is called an *indirect question*, while an independent question is called a *direct question*.

7. *Whether* in an indirect question is num: as, *He is asking me whether I am tired*, Rogat num fessus sim. *Whether . . . or not* in an indirect question is Utrum . . . necne: as, *Ask him whether he will come or not*, Roga eum utrum venturus sit necne.

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

1. Commands are expressed by the imperative mood: as, *Consult for yourselves*, Vos vobis consulĭte.

2. Prohibitions (addressed to individuals) are expressed most usually by nolī or nolīte with the infinitive, or by nē with the perfect subjunctive: as, *Don't scold*, Nōli obiurgare (Noli is the imperat. of nolo, *I am unwilling*). *Don't do it*, Ne hoc fecĕris.

NOTE.—Ne with the imperat. or with the pres. subjunc. is common in poetry and in general prohibitions: as, *Be not wroth, great priestess*, Ne saevi, magna sacerdos. *Do not learn many things, but much*, Ne multa discas sed multum.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. The subjunctive is used in exhortations: as, *Let us always be the same*, Semper īīdem simus.

2. The subjunc. is used in commands: as, *Let him come to-morrow*, Cras veniat. (See last section.)

3. The subjunc. is used where a question is asked in doubt: as, *What shall I say?* Quid dicam? *What should I have said?* Quid dicerem? This is called the *deliberative subjunctive.*

4. The subjunc. is used to soften an assertion: as, *You would ask me what God is*, Roges me quid sit deus. *Then you would have said*, Tunc diceres.

5. Wishes and prayers are expressed by the subjunc. usually preceded by utĭnam *(O that)*. The negative is nē. Thus: Utinam veniat, *May he come* (future and possible). Utinam adesset, *O that he were here now* (unaccomplished in present). Utinam ne copias eduxisset, *O that he had not led out his forces* (unaccomplished in past).

THE INFINITIVE.

1. Many verbs take an inf. to complete their meaning: as, *He had learned to talk*, Loqui didĭcerat. *You know how to win, Hannibal; you do not know how to use a victory*, Vincere scis, Hannibal; victorĭā ūti nescis. Such verbs are called *modal verbs.*

The principal modal verbs are:

Audeo *(dare)*, cogo *(compel)*, conor *(endeavor)*, constituo and statuo *(determine)*, cunctor *(hesitate)*, cupio *(desire)*, debeo *(ought)*, desĭno *(cease)*, disco *(learn)*, dubĭto *(hesitate)*, incipio *(begin)*, mālo *(prefer)*, nescio *(not know how)*, nōlo *(be unwilling)*, obliviscor *(forget)*, patior *(allow)*, paro *(prepare)*, possum *(be able)*, scio *(know how)*, soleo *(be accustomed)*, vereor *(fear)*, volo *(be willing)*.

2. The subject of the inf. is in the acc.: as, *Your coming is very pleasing to me*, Te venire mihi pergratum est.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. The English *that*-clause after a verb meaning *to say* or *think* is expressed in Latin by the acc. with the inf.: as, *He says that he is coming*, Dicit se venire. *He said that he was coming*, Dixit se venire. *He says that he came*, Dicit se venisse. *He said that he came* (or *had come*), Dixit se venisse. *He says that he will come*, Dicit se venturum. *He said that he would come*, Dixit se venturum.

N.B.—The esse of the fut. inf. act. may be omitted.

2. Such a statement, depending upon a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique narration* (as opposed to the simple form, which is called *direct narration*).

3. The tense of an inf. in oblique narration is the tense of the verb it represents in direct narration.

NOTE.—This idiom is quite different from the English and should be carefully mastered. The rule for finding the tense of the inf. may be stated thus: In turning English oblique into Latin, find first the English direct. *The tense of the English main verb in direct, is the tense of the Latin inf. in indirect.* Thus: *He said that all men erred*, Dixit omnes homines errare (direct = *all men err*). *He said that he was a Roman citizen*, Dixit se civem Romanum esse (direct = *I am a Roman citizen*, Civis Romanus sum).

4. Verbs meaning *to hope*, *promise*, *undertake*, have in Latin the fut. inf. and not as in English the pres.: as, *He hopes to live long*, Sperat se diu victurum. *I promised to come soon*, Pollicitus sum me brevi venturum.

Note that the proper pronoun must be expressed before the inf.

5. *He said that he would not come* is Negavit se venturum (not dixit non).

Note that the *he* of the *that*-clause, when referring to the subject of the principal clause, is se; referring to some one else, it would be eum: as, *They said that he would come*, Dixerunt eum venturum.

6. *He is said to be rich* is Dicitur esse dives, not Dicitur eum esse divitem.

SUPINE. GERUNDIVE.

1. The supine in -um is used to express *purpose*, but only with verbs of motion: as, Ludos visum ierunt, *They went to see the games.* Questum iniurias eo, *I am going to complain of wrongs.*

2. The gerundive of verbs that govern the acc. is to be used instead of the gerund with an object: as, Consilium inībant urbis delendae, *They formed a plan for destroying the city* (not urbem delendi).

But the gerund is used if the verb does not govern the acc.: as, Magnam gloriam victis parcendo paravit, *He won great glory by sparing the vanquished.*

3. To express *duty*, *obligation*, or *necessity* use the gerundive + **sum** (*passive periphrastic*): as, **Urbs defendenda est**, *The city must be defended.* **Est mihi ambulandum**, *I must walk* (agent usually in dat.). **Nonne inimicis a nobis parcendum est?** *Ought we not to spare our enemies?* (agent expressed by **a** or **ab** to avoid ambiguity).

PARTICIPLES.

1. Use the pres. participle, only of an action simultaneous with that of the main verb: as, **Haec moriens dixit**, *This he said while dying.*

2. The fut. part. act. is used to express a *purpose:* as, **Venio agros visurus**, *I am coming to see the lands.*

3. Use the fut. part. act. + **sum** to express *I am about to, intend to:* as, **Dic mihi quid facturus sis**, *Tell me what you intend to do* (*active periphrastic*).

4. For the perf. part. act. (which is wanting) use (*a*) abl. absolute or (*b*) **cum** + subjunc. or (*c*) **postquam** + perf. ind.: as, *Having killed his enemy he spoke thus*, **Hoste interfecto** (*or* **Hostem cum interfecisset** *or* **Hostem postquam interfecit**), **haec locutus est.**

NOTE.—*He killed and stripped his enemy*, is **Hostem interfectum spoliavit** (not **Hoste interfecto eum spoliavit**).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

1. Latin tenses are divided into *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*), as follows:—

Primary Tenses.	Pres.,	**ămat**, *he loves.*
	Perfect,	**ămāvit**, *he has loved.*
	Future,	**ămābit**, *he will love.*
	Future Perf.,	**ămāvĕrit**, *he will have loved.*
Secondary (or Historical) Tenses.	Imperf.,	**ămābat**, *he was loving.*
	Perfect,	**ămāvit**, *he loved.*
	Pluperf.,	**ămāvĕrat**, *he had loved.*

2. A primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense in the principal clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent clause: as, **Venio ut urbem videam**, *I am coming that I may see*

the city (primary sequence). **Veniebam ut urbem vidērem**, *I was coming that I might see the city* (secondary sequence). This is called the *Law of the Sequence of Tenses.*

NOTE.—The Latin perfect has the force both of the English present perfect (*i.e.*, perf. with *have*) and of the English past. When the Latin perfect is a pres. perf., it is a *primary* tense; when a past, a *secondary:* as, **Veni ut urbem videam**, *I have come to see the city* (primary). **Veni ut urbem viderem**, *I came to see the city* (secondary).

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. A clause joined to a principal verb by an interrogative pronoun or conjunction is called an *indirect question*, and an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive: as, **Quaesīvit cur haec fecissem**, *He inquired why I had done this.*

2. For the fut. subjunc. act. in an indirect question, use the fut. part. + **sum**: as, **Scio quid facturus sit**, *I know what he will do.* **Sciebam quid facturus esset**, *I knew what he would do* (secondary sequence.)

3. For a fut. subjunc. pass. use **futurum sit** (or **esset**) + **ut**: as, **Sciunt quare futurum sit ut is necetur**, *They know why he will be killed.* **Rogaverunt quando futurum esset ut pons conficeretur**, *They asked when the bridge would be finished* (secondary sequence).

NOTE.—Use **quando**, not **cum**, for *when* in an interrogative sentence.

4. *Whether* in an indirect question is **num** or (rarely) **-ne**: as, **Dic mihi num eădem quae ego sentias**, *Tell me whether you have the same opinion as I.* **Quaesīvi salvusne esses**, *I inquired whether you were safe.*

5. *Whether . . . or* in alternative questions is **Utrum** (rarely **-ne**) . . . an in indirect as well as in direct questions (see p. 287,5); but *or not* is **necne** in indirect, **annon** in direct. Thus:

I know whether this is true or false, **Scio** { **utrum hoc verum an falsum sit.** / **verumne sit an falsum.**

I ask whether he intends to go or not, **Rogo utrum iturus sit necne.**

6. *Tell me if he is well* is **Dic mihi num** (not **si**) **valeat.**

7. *I told them what he ought to do* is **Eis dixi quid** (not **quod**) **ei faciendum esset**, because the dependent clause (**quid ei faciendum esset**) implies in direct narration the question, *What ought he to do?*

8. An English abstract noun is often expressed by an indirect question: as,

I know	*the size of the island.*	Scio	**quanta insula sit.**
	the extent of the danger.		**quantum periculum sit.**
	the nature of the soil.		**quale sŏlum sit.**
	the origin of the war.		**unde bellum ortum sit.**
	the position of the enemy.		**in quo loco hostes sint.**

UT-CLAUSE WITH VERBS OF ASKING.

1. Verbs of *asking*, *commanding*, *striving* and *effecting* take in English an infinitive, but in Latin a clause introduced by **ut** with the subjunctive: as, **Oro te ut hoc facias**, *I beg you to do this.*

2. If there is a *not* with the infinitive in English, **nē** is used for **ut non**: as, **Puero imperavi ne domo exīret**, *I ordered the boy not to go from home* (secondary sequence).

3. So also *that no one*, is **ne quis**; *that no*, **ne ullus**; *that nothing*, **ne quid**; *that never*, **ne unquam**; as, **Orant ne quis excedat**, *They beg that no one may leave.*

4. **Neve** or **neu** is used in a second such clause; as, **Te rogo ut bono animo sis neve perturbēris**, *I beg you to be of good cheer and not to be troubled. Neither . . . nor* would be **neve (neu) . . . neve (neu)**: as, **Rogo te neve dŏles materiam neve caedas**, *I beg of you neither to hew timber nor cut it.*

5. **Iubeo** (*I order*), **veto** (*I forbid*), **prohibeo** (*I prevent*), **patior** (*I suffer*), **volo** (*I wish*), **cogo** (*I compel*), **nolo** (*I am unwilling*), **sino** (*I allow*), **cupio** (*I desire*), take the infinitive: as, **Puerum iussi domo non exire**, *I ordered the boy not to go away from home.* **Vetuit me hoc facere**, *He forbade me to do this.*

6. **Statuo, constituo, decerno** (*I determine*), take the infinitive when the infinitive is used in English, otherwise **ut** or **ne** with the subjunctive: as, **Caesar statuit in Italiam redire**, *Caesar decided to return to Italy;* but **Caesar statuit ut legiones in Italiam redirent**, *Caesar decided that his legions should return to Italy.* **Imperator decrevit ne quis ex castris exiret**, *The commander resolved that no one should leave the camp.*

7. *He persuaded them to come*, is **Eis ut venirent persuasit.** But: *He persuaded them that the enemy was near*, is **Adesse hostes eis persuasit.**

NOUN CLAUSES.

1. A noun-clause introduced by **ut** is used as the subject of an impersonal verb like **accidit**, fit, *it happens;* **futurum est**, *the result will be;* **accedit**, *it is added;* **sequitur**, **proximum est**, *it follows;* **fieri (non) potest**, *it is (im) possible;* **reliquum est**, **restat**, *it remains;* **tantum abest** (see p. 297,7): as, **Accidit ut nemō abesset**, *It happened that no one was absent.* **Ad Appi Claudi senectutem accedebat ut caecus esset**, *There was added to the old age of Appius Claudius the fact that he was blind.* **Sequitur ut erres**, *It follows that you are wrong.*

2. Noun clauses are often introduced by **quod** (=*the fact that*) with the indicative expressing an admitted fact: as, **Magnum est hoc quod victis pepercit**, *This is an important matter that he spared the vanquished.* **Gaudeo quod vales**, *I rejoice that you are well.*

3. Nouns akin in meaning to the verbs of p. 292, 1, may take an appositive **ut**-clause to define them: as, **Vetus est lex ut īdem amici semper velint**, *It is an old law that friends should always have the same aim* (literally, *wish the same thing*). Such nouns are: **animus**, **consilium** (*purpose*), **condicio** (*condition*), **negotium** (*business*), **sententia** (*view*).

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

A. FINAL CLAUSES.

1. An adverbial clause introduced by **ut** or **ne** with the subjunctive, is used in Latin to express a purpose: as, **Edo ut vivam**, *I eat to live.* **Hoc dico ne te laedam**, *I say this not to offend you.*

Such clauses of purpose are called *final clauses.*

2. In final clauses the present is used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary: as, **Occludit portas ut hostes excludat**, *He shuts the gates to keep out the enemy* (primary sequence). **Occlusit portas ut hostes excluderet**, *He shut the gates to keep out the enemy* (secondary sequence).

3. For *That no one, that no, that nothing, that never*, use Ne quis, ne ullus, ne quid, ne unquam: as, Porta clausa est ne quis exīret, *The gate was shut that no one might go out.* Clamant ne ullum verbum audiatur, *They are shouting that no word may be heard.* Abii ne quid vidērem, *I went away that I might see nothing.* Hoc facīte ne unquam vituperent, *Do this that they may never revile.*

4. Quo is used for ut when there is a comparative in the final clause: as, Puto aliquid puero dandum esse quo sit studiosior, *I think that something should be given to the boy that he may be more zealous.* Caesar castella communit quo facilius Helvetios prohibēre possit, *Caesar erects forts that he may the more easily keep back the Helvetii.*

5. The relative qui (called *qui final*) is used with the subjunc. to express a *purpose:* as, Misit legatos qui pacem peterent, *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace* (qui=ut ii). So also relative adverbs like ubi (*where*), unde (*whence*), often express a purpose: as, Domum ubi habitaret lēgit, *He chose a house where he might dwell* (or *to dwell in;* ubi=ut ibi).

6. With verbs of *preventing*, a final clause is often introduced by quominus (=*by which the less=in order that not*) with the subjunc.: as, Nihil obstat quominus scribas, *Nothing prevents you from writing* (i.e., *by which you should the less write*). Notice, however, that prohibeo (the common word for *to prevent*) takes the inf.: as, Eos egredi prohibuit, *He prevented them from going out.*

7. After verbs of *preventing*, quin may be used in the same sense as quominus, if there is a negative or a virtual negative in the sentence: as, Non prohibēri poterat quin hoc faceret, *He could not be prevented from doing this.* Vix inhiberi potuit quin saxa iacĕret, *He could not be restrained from throwing stones.*

8. After verbs of *fearing*, a final clause is used, introduced by ut or ne: as, Vereor ut veniat, *I am afraid that he will not come.* Vereor ne veniat, *I am afraid that he will come.* (Here ut and ne apparently change their meanings, ut=*that . . . not;* ne=*that.*) Note that the English future after a verb of *fearing* is expressed by the subjunctive—in the present if the main verb is in a primary tense, in the imperfect if the main verb is in a secondary tense: as, Timeo

ut labores sustineas, *I am afraid that you will not endure your sufferings.* Timēbam ne ea evenīrent, *I was afraid that these things would happen.*

9. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace* may be expressed as follows :—

(1) Legatos misit ut pacem peterent (ut final).
(2) Legatos misit qui pacem peterent (qui final).
(3) Legatos misit ad pacem petendam (ad with accusative of gerundive).
(4) Legatos misit pacis petendae causā (causā with the genitive of gerundive).
(5) Legatos misit ad pacem petendum (ad with gerund).
(6) Legatos misit pacem petendi causā (causā with genitive of gerund).
(7) Legatos misit pacem petītum (supine after verb of motion).
(8) Legatos misit pacem petītūros (future participle active expressing a purpose).

10. For et ne in a second clause of purpose use neu or neve (p. 292,4).

B. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1. An adverbial clause is often used to express the *result* of what is described in the main clause. Such clauses are called consecutive clauses, or clauses of consequence or result : as, Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fūgĕrit, *Such fear seized all that the king himself fled.* Tam caecus fuit ut me non vidēret, *He was so blind that he did not see me.*

2. The rule for the sequence of tenses in consecutive clauses is the same as in English, except that (after a secondary tense) the imperfect subjunctive is used of a continuous act : as, Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut perturbati sint, *Such fear seized all that they were panic stricken.* But : Tam callidus erat ut Romānos saepe eludĕret, *He was so skilful that he often eluded the Romans.*

3. *That not* in a consecutive clause is not ne, as in a final clause (p. 293, A, 1), but ut . . . non : as, Longe aberam ut me non videret, *I was far away so that he did not see me.* So, too, Ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nihil, ut nunquam, are used for *That no one, that no, that*

never, that nothing: as, Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet, *He was of such a character that no one believed him.* Verres Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit, *Verres so harried Sicily for three years that it could not in any way be restored to its original condition.* Ita improbus fuit ut nihil eum a scelere revocaverit, *He was so wicked that nothing ever called him away from crime.*

4. Consecutive clauses are often used after demonstrative words like talis, *such;* tantus, *so great;* sic, ita, tam, *so;* adeo, *to such a degree:* as, Tanta vis probitatis est ut etiam in hoste diligamus, *So great is the force of honesty that we love it even in an enemy.* Tarquinius sic Servium diligebat ut is eius vulgo haberetur filius, *Tarquin so loved Servius that the latter was commonly regarded as his son.* Hoc eum adeo terruit ut vix hodie prodire audeat, *This so terrified him that he scarcely now ventures to go forth.*

5. The relative qui (called *qui consecutive*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a consecutive clause: as, Non is sum qui hoc faciam, *I am not the one to do this* (qui=ut ego). The consecutive relative is found in the following constructions:—

(*a*) With certain *indefinite expressions* like sunt qui (*there are some who*); reperiuntur qui (*there are found those who*): as, Sunt qui putent nihil sibi litteris opus esse, *There are some who think that they have no need of literature.* Nihil est quod dicere velim, *There is nothing that I wish to say.*

(*b*) After dignus (*worthy*), indignus (*unworthy*), and idoneus or aptus (*fit*); as, Dignus est qui ametur, *he is worthy to be loved.*

(*c*) After quam with a comparative: as, Maior est quam cui resisti possit, *He is too great to be resisted* (=*greater than to whom it can be resisted*). [Possum is used impersonally only when an infinitive passive is joined to it.]

6. Instead of qui non, quin is often used when the verb in the principal clause has a negative or virtual negative[1]: as, Nemo est quin sciat, *There is no one but knows.* Negari non potest quin turpe sit fidem fallere, *It cannot be denied that it is dishonorable to*

[1] Words like vix, *scarcely*, and question forms that expect the answer 'No.'

break one's word. Non dubitat quin animus sit immortalis, *He does not doubt that the soul is immortal.* Num quis[1] ignorat quin haec vera sint? *Is any one ignorant that this is the truth?*

NOTE.—Dubito has two meanings in Latin: (1) *Hesitate*, (2) *doubt:* as, Dubitat loqui, *He hesitates to speak.* Desīnīte dubitare num hoc utile sit, *Cease to doubt whether this is expedient.* Non dubito quin vir summo ingenio sit, *I do not doubt that he is a man of the highest ability.*

7. A consecutive ut-clause sometimes depends on the phrase tantum abest followed by a noun-clause introduced by ut: as, Tantum abest ut nostra miremur ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes, *So far am I from admiring my own productions that Demosthenes himself does not satisfy me.*

C. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

1. Causal adverbial clauses state the cause or reason for a fact mentioned in the principal clause. In English they are usually introduced by *because:* as, Tacent quia periculum metuunt, *They are silent because they fear danger.*

2. Causal clauses are usually introduced by quod, quia (*because*), quoniam (=quum iam, *since now, seeing that*), and by quum (*since*).

3. Quod,[2] quia, quoniam are followed by the indicative when the reason they introduce is given on the speaker's own authority; they are followed by the subjunctive, when the reason they introduce is given on the authority of some one else, or is not a reason assigned by the speaker (p. 307, 11): as, Patriā expulsus est quia iustus erat, *He was banished from his country because he was just.* (The reason given is vouched for by the historian as being the true one.) But, Patriā expulsus est quia iustus esset, *He was banished because (as was alleged) he was just.* Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet iuventutem, *Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth.* [Corrumpebat would mean that the historian vouched for the truth of the charge.]

4. Quum (cum), in the sense of *since*, always takes the subjunctive: as, Haec quum ita sint, abibo, *Since this is so, I shall go away.*

---

[1] Quis is *any* after si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto.

[2] Quod is common after queror *(I complain)*, laudo *(I praise)*, gaudeo *(I rejoice)*, doleo *(I grieve)*.

5. The relative **qui** (called *qui causal*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a *causal* clause: as, **Pecâsse videor qui a te decesserim**, *It seems that I have done wrong since I have departed from you* [qui=cum ego]. **Qui** is often strengthened by **quippe, utpote**, *indeed, as being:* as, **Multa de me questus est, quippe qui a me incensus esset**, *He complained at length of me, inasmuch as he had been exasperated by me.* **Qui** causal is often used after exclamations: as, **Me miserum qui haec fecerim**, *Wretched that I am for doing this.*

6. **Non quod, non quo** with the subjunctive are often used to introduce a rejected reason: as, **Hoc laudo non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est**, *I praise this not because it is honorable, but because it is expedient.* So, **De consilio meo non scripsi, non quo celandum esset, sed quia**, etc., *I did not write to you about my plan, not because it required to be concealed, but because, etc.* So, too, **non quin**, *not but that:* as, **Non quin me ames sed quod abire cupio**, *Not but that you love me, but because I wish to go.*

D. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

1. Temporal adverbial clauses define the *time* of the action of the main verb: as, **Haec feci dum potui**, *I did this while I could.*

2. The temporal conjunctions **ubi, ut** (*when*), **postquam** or **posteaquam** (*after*), **simul ac** (or **simul atque** before a vowel or *h*), **ut primum, quum primum** (*as soon as*), are followed by the indicative (usually the perfect or historical present). The English commonly requires the pluperfect: as, **Simul atque haec audivit, abiit**, *As soon as he had heard this, he went away.* **Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar in proximum collem copias subducit**, *After he had noticed this, Caesar withdraws his forces to the nearest hill.* **Ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt**, *When they thought they were ready, they set fire to the towns.* **Ea res ut Helvetiis nuntiata est, eum causam dicere coegērunt**, *When this fact was reported to the Helvetii, they compelled him to plead his cause.* **Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, impetum fecerunt**, *Our men, as soon as they had set foot on dry ground, made an attack.*

3. **Dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad**, meaning *while, as long as*, take the indicative: as, **Dum vivo, spero**, *While I live, I hope.* **Vixit,**

dum vixit, bene, *He lived well, while he lived.* Quoad potuit, restitit, *He held out, as long as he could.*

4. Dum (not donec, quoad, or quamdiu) is often used with a present indicative instead of the English past when the time of the dum-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb: as, Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur, *While the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.*

5. Dum, donec, quoad, meaning *until*, take the indicative, when they express *time* alone: as, Hoc feci dum mihi licuit, *I did this as long as it was allowed me.* Dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit, *There was silence till Marcellus returned.* Milo in Senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est, *Milo was in the senate on that day till it was dismissed.*

6. Dum, donec, quoad take the subjunctive when they express some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation:* as, Dum naves convenirent, exspectavit, *He waited till the ships should assemble* (Purpose). Exspectate dum consul aut dictator fiat Kaeso, *Wait till Kaeso become consul or dictator* (Expectation). Differant dum ira defervescat, *Let them put off till their anger cools* (Purpose). Impetum hostium sustinuit quoad ceteri pontem interrumperent, *He withstood the attack till the rest should break down the bridge* (Purpose).

7. Priusquam and antequam take the indicative when they mark simple *priority* of time: as, Priusquam lucet, adsunt, *They are here before it is light.* Filios convocavit antequam mortuus est, *He called his sons together before he died.*

8. Priusquam and antequam take the subjunctive when they express some further notion of *intention* or *prevented result:* as, Priusquam pugnaretur, nox intervēnit, *Night came on before the battle was fought* (Result prevented). Priusquam se hostes ex terrore reciperent, in fines eorum exercitum duxit, *Before the enemy recovered from their panic, he led his army into their territories* (Intention).

NOTE.—Antequam and priusquam are often written in two words: as, Ante rorat quam pluit, *It drops before it rains.*

9. Quum (cum) takes the *indicative*

(*a*) When denoting *contemporaneous* time : as, **Quum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui,** *When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of one of the two parties.* **Quum verba faciunt, maiores extollunt,** *When they speak, they extol their ancestors.* **Nondum profectus erat, quum haec gerebantur,** *He had not yet departed when these things were taking place.* **Veniam quum potero,** *I shall come, when I can.* When the verb in the main clause is future, the fut. perf. is used in the dependent clause if the act in the dependent clause is over before that described in the main clause begins : as, **Quum epistolam tuam accepero, ad te scribam,** *I shall write you when I get your letter.*

In these sentences quum is a relative adverb of time corresponding to a suppressed tum in the main clause.

(*b*) When equivalent to quoties, *as often as, whenever:* as, **Quum impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogebantur,** *Whenever they made an attack, the enemy were forced to retire.* **Quum rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror,** *whenever I see a rose, then I judge that it is spring.* Note that in this sense quum takes the perfect indicative for the English present, and the pluperfect for the English past.

10. Quum[1] takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in historical narrative (*i.e.*, when the verb in the principal clause is in the perfect or historical present) : as, **Decessit Agesilaus quum in portum venisset,** *Agesilaus died when he had entered the harbour.* **Cum hostes adessent, in urbem pro se quisque ex agris demigrant,** *On the approach of the enemy, they move each as he best can from the country to the city.*

E. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. Conditional clauses express a condition on which the statement of the main clause depends. The conditional clause is usually introduced by si (*if*) or nisi (*unless*).

---

[1] Note that quum with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is a substitute for the perfect participle active. Thus: *Having said this, he went away*=(1) **Quum haec dixisset, abiit.** (2) **His rebus dictis abiit.** (3) **Postquam haec dixit abiit.** (4) **Haec locutus abiit.**

2. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:—

(1) *Present and past conditions.* In these nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. They have usually the indicative in both clauses, but they may have the imperative in the main clause or the subjunctive used imperatively: as,

Pecuniam si habet, dat, *If he has money, he gives it.*
Pecuniam si habes, da, *If you have money, give it.*
Pecuniam si habet, det, *If he has money, let him give it.*
Pecuniam si habebat, dabat, *If he had money, he gave it.*

(2) *Future conditions.* These are divided into two classes:—

(*a*) Where the condition is likely to be fulfilled. Here the future indicative is used in both clauses, but the future-perfect indicative is used in the si-clause if the action of the verb in that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main verb begins: as,

Pecuniam si habebit, dabit, *If he has* (literally *shall have*) *money, he will give it.*

Litteras si accepero, ad te scribam, *If I get* (literally *shall have got*) *a letter, I shall write you.*

(*b*) Where the condition is unlikely to be fulfilled: as,

Pecuniam si habeat, det, *If he should* (in the future) *have money, he would give it.*

(3) *Conditions contrary to fact.* This class contains all conditional sentences in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled. There are two types:—

(*a*) When the condition is not fulfilled in the present: as,

Pecuniam si haberet, daret, *If he had money* (now), *he would give it* (now).

(*b*) When the condition was not fulfilled in the past: as,

Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset, *If he had had money* (in the past), *he would have given it* (in the past).

Often (*a*) and (*b*) are combined: as,

Si id fecisset, viveret, *If he had done this* (in the past), *he would be living* (now).

3. The indicative, not the subjunctive, must be used in the main clause of the conditional sentence when the principal verb in the conditional clause is

(*a*) In the periphrastic conjugation, active or passive (p. 172, 174): as, **Id facturus fuit, si adfuisset,** *He would have done it, if*

he had been here. Nisi litteras misisset, agros relicturi erant, *If he had not sent the letter, they would have left their lands.* Consilia si processissent, interficiendus fuit, *If the plans had succeeded, he must have been put to death.*

(*b*) Possum (*I can*), debeo (*I ought*), oportet (*it is needful*): as, Totus exercitus deleri potuit, si persecuti essent victores, *The whole army might have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up.*

4. Sive . . . sive (seu . . . seu) are used for alternative conditions: as, Seu credis seu non credis, verum est, *Whether you believe it or not, it is true.*

CAUTION.—Distinguish *whether . . . or* in alternative questions, and *whether . . . or* in alternative conditions. Thus: Utrum credam necne, tu nescis, *Whether I believe or not, you do not know* (noun clause, object of nescis). But: Sive credo, sive non credo, tu quidem credis, *Whether I believe or not, you at least believe* (alternative adverbial conditions).

5. Nisi negatives a whole clause, si non, some particular word: as, Nemo saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit, *No one dances when he is sober unless perchance he is insane.* Si manebit, laudabo; si non manebit, culpabo, *If he stays, I shall praise him; if he does not stay, I shall blame him.*

6. A second conditional clause of contrary meaning to the first is introduced, if affirmative, by sin *(but if)*; if negative, by si non, with a verb, or with si minus *(if not)* without a verb: as,

Si manebit, laudabo; sin abibit, culpabo, *If he stays I will praise him; but, if he goes, I will blame him.*

Si manebit, laudabo; si non manebit, culpabo.

Si manebit, laudabo; si minus, culpabo, *If he stays I will praise him; if not, I will blame him.*

7. *Provided that* is expressed by dum, modo, or dummodo, with the subjunctive (with ne, *not*, in negative clauses): as, Oderint, dum metuant, *Let them hate provided that they fear.* Veniant dummodo ne maneant, *Let them come, provided they do not stay.*

F. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. Concessive clauses are those that make some concession in spite of which the statement of the main clause is true. They are

usually introduced in English by *though*. These clauses may be divided into those which state

(*a*) An admitted fact. These are introduced by **quamquam** with the indicative : as, **Romani, quamquam proelio fessi erant, tamen procedunt**, *The Romans, although they were weary with fighting, nevertheless advance.* **Caesar, quamquam eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur**, *Caesar, though he had not yet learned their plans, was nevertheless suspicious.*

(*b*) A mere supposition. These are introduced by **licet, ut, quamvis**, which always have the subjunctive : as, **Quamvis pericula impendeant tamen ea subībo**, *Though dangers may threaten still I will encounter them.*

2. **Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi** follow the rules for **si**. (See p. 300-302.)

3. Note that **quamvis** has often an adverbial force : as, **Quamvis facētus sit, ille est odio**, *However witty he is, he is hated.*

Note that **odio esse** is used for the passive of **odisse**, *to hate.*

4. The relative **qui** with the subjunc. (called *qui concessive*) is often used concessively: as, **Caesar, qui haec vidēret, tamen aciem instruxit**, *Though Caesar saw this, he drew up his line.*

5. **Quum** with the subjunc. sometimes has a concessive force: as, **Quum dicas te esse Graecum, es Romanus**, *Though you say that you are a Greek, you are a Roman.*

G. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

1. A comparative adverbial clause expresses agreement (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause : as, **Ut sementem feceris, ita metes**, *You shall reap according as you do* (literally *shall have done*) *your sowing.*

2. There are two classes of comparative sentences :—

(*a*) When the comparison is stated as a *fact:* as, **Omnia sicut acta sunt, memoravit**, *He narrated everything just as it was done.*

(*b*) When the comparison is stated as a mere supposition : as, **Honores petunt quasi honesti sint**, *They seek office as if they were honorable* (which they are not).

Those of the (*a*) type take the indicative, those of the (*b*) type, the subjunctive.

3. The following are the common comparative conjunctions that are usually found with the subjunctive: Tanquam, tanquam si, quasi, velut or velut si (*as if*): as, Tanquam hoc difficile sit, *As if this were hard.* Velut si Asia sit clausa, sic nihil perfertur ad nos, *Just as if Asia were closed, no news reaches us.*

NOTE.—These conjunctions prefer the subjunc. of 2 (*b*), p. 301, to that of 3 (*a*), p. 301.

4. *The . . . the* before comparatives is expressed by (*a*) Quo . . . eo, or by quanto . . . tanto: as, Quo (or quanto) quisque est melior, eo (or tanto) difficilius suspicatur, *The better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting*, or by (*b*) Ut quisque . . . ita, with superlatives: as, Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime suspicatur. This may also be rendered, *In proportion to a man's goodness, he has difficulty in suspecting.*

5. Distinguish the use of *as* in the following:

He did as he was told, Ut imperatum est, sic fecit. Eadem ac tu peto, *I have the same object as you* (comparative clause).

He is not so mad as to think this, Non tam insanus est ut hoc putet (consecutive clause).

He ran fast so as to be in time, Celeriter cucurrit ut tempori veniret (ut final).

He collected as many forces as possible (or *as he could*), Quam maximas copias (potuit) coegit.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

1. Adjective clauses stand in the relation of adjectives to some word in the principal sentence. They are introduced by the relative pronoun (qui, quae, quod), or by correlatives (qualis, quantus, quot), or by adverbs (unde, ubi).

2. The relative clause in its simple use takes the indicative: as, Nuntii qui missi erant, rediērunt, *The messengers who had been sent returned.*

So also the correlatives **qualis, quantus, quot,** and the adverbs **ubi, unde**: as, **Non sum qualis eram,** *I am not what I was.* **Ad locum rediērunt unde profecti erant,** *They returned to the spot from which they had set out.* **In eodem oppido est sepultus ubi natus erat,** *He was buried in the same town in which he had been born.*

3. The relative pronoun is often omitted in English when it is the object of a verb, but is never so omitted in Latin: as, **Verba quae locutus es, vera sunt,** *The words you have spoken are true.*

4. The antecedent of the relative is often omitted: as, **Sunt qui putent hoc esse verum,** *There are some who think that this is true.*

5. *He was the first to come* is **Primus vēnit.** *This is the goal I am aiming at,* **Hoc peto.** *Such a great danger as this,* **Hoc tantum periculum.**

INDIRECT (OR OBLIQUE) NARRATION.

1. A statement depending on a verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing,* or the like, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique* narration. Thus:

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
Ego civis Romanus sum.	**Dixit se civem Romanum esse.**
I am a Roman citizen.	*He said that he was a Roman citizen.*
Romulus, inquit, urbem condidit.	**Dixit Romulum urbem condidisse.**
"Romulus," he said, "founded a city."	*He said that Romulus had founded a city.*

NOTE.—If the actual words of a speaker or writer are quoted, they are introduced by **inquit,** *he says* or *he said,* usually following the first word. If the speech is reported in indirect narration, **dicit, dixit,** or **ait** is used.

2. All dependent adjectival and adverbial clauses are in the subjunctive in indirect narration: as,

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
Darius, qui rex Persarum est, advĕnit.	**Darium, qui rex Persarum esset, advenire dixit.**
Darius, who is the king of the Persians, is approaching.	*He said that Darius, who was the king of the Persians, was approaching.*

(For tense of **advenire** see p. 289, 3, note, and for tense of **esset** see p. 290, 2.)

NOTE.—The future-perf. ind. of direct becomes plupf. subjunc. in indirect after a past tense: as, **Dixit eum, qui id fecisset, poenas daturum**, *He said that the man who did that, would be punished* (direct = **qui id fēcĕrit**, *the man who does that*, see p. 301, 2, (2), (*a*).

3. Indirect commands are in the subjunctive (usually the imperfect; but sometimes the present takes the place of the imperative of the direct command): as,

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
Ite, inquit, create consules.	**Irent, crearent consules.**
"Go," says he, "elect consuls."	*He ordered them to go and elect consuls.*

4. Indirect questions asking for information (and representing the second person in direct), are usually in the subjunctive (the imperfect or pluperfect when the principal verb is secondary): as,

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
Quid agis? inquit; cur non antea pugnam commisisti?	**(Dixit) quid ageret? cur non antea pugnam commisisset?**
"What are you about?" says he. "Why have you not begun the battle before?"	*(He asked) what was he about? Why had he not begun the battle before?*

5. Indirect rhetorical questions representing the first or third person in direct are generally expressed by the accusative and infinitive: as,

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
Num Romam repulsi ibimus?	**Num se Romam repulsos esse ituros?**
Shall we if repulsed go to Rome?	*Would they if repulsed go to Rome?*

6. Pronouns of the first and second persons are usually changed to those of the third person. Thus:

ego, nos	become	**se**
meus, noster	"	**suus**
tu, vos	"	**ille, illi**
tuus, vester,	"	**illius, illorum**
hic, iste	"	**ille, is**

7. Adverbs of present time become after a secondary tense adverbs of past time : as,

nunc (*now*)	becomes	**iam, tunc** (*then*).
heri (*yesterday*)	"	**pridie** (*the day before*).
hodie (*to-day*)	"	**illo die** (*that day*).
cras (*to-morrow*)	"	**postridie** (*the next day*).
hic (*here*)	"	**ibi** (*there*).

8. It should be noted that, **Si hăbeam, dem** (p. 301) becomes **Dixit se daturum, si haberet. Si haberem, darem** becomes **Dixit se daturum fuisse, si haberet. Si mansissem, interfectus essem** becomes **Dicit** *or* **dixit, futurum fuisse ut interficeretur, si mansisset.**

It may also be noted that **Debellatum erit,** *The war will then be over*, becomes **Dixit debellatum fore.**

9. **Se** and **suus** in indirect usually refer to the subject of the principal verb, **is** or **ille** to some one different from that subject : as, **Caesar Catoni dixit verba eius sibi displicēre,** *Caesar told Cato that his* (*Cato's*) *words displeased him* (*Caesar*).

10. If a pronoun is required in indirect to refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, **ipse** may be used : as, **Rogavit eos ut dēderent qui ipsos prodidissent,** *He asked them to surrender men who had betrayed them.*

11. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause when an indirect statement is only implied and not expressed : as, **Noctu ambulabat quod somnum capere non posset,** *He used to walk about at night because he could not sleep* (as was reported). **Ei, qui primus conscendisset, praemium proposuit,** *He offered a reward to the one who should first scale the wall.*

NOTE.—Such a use of the subjunctive is called *virtual oblique.*

12. Indirect narration is often used in a principal clause without a verb of saying : as, **Rhenum transiit: Gallos enim sibi bellum intulisse,** *He crossed the Rhine : for (he said) the Gauls had made war on him.*

13. The following exceptions to the rules of indirect may be noticed :—

(*a*) **Certior factus est id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto**

fecerat, dissolveretur, *He (Xerxes) was told that the intention was to break down the bridge which he had built over the Hellespont.* (Here the words quem . . . fecerat are not part of the message sent to Xerxes, but an independent statement made by the historian.)

(*b*) Existimavit te dicere quae sentiebas, *He supposed you said what you really thought.* (Here the quae sentiebas is regarded as the statement of something known to all, the force of which would be weakened if the direct form of expression were changed.) So, too: Quaero e vobis ut haec pauca, quae restant, audiatis, *I ask of you to hear the few words that remain.* Dico me copias, quas mecum habeo, missurum, *I say that I will send the troops which I have with me.* Rogo cur nuntius, quem misi, nondum redierit, *I ask why the messenger whom I sent has not yet returned.*

(*c*) Dixit hoc nuntiatum esse dum haec geruntur, *He said that word of it was brought while this was going on.* (Dum-clause unchanged, as often in oblique.)

SPECIAL LATIN IDIOMS.

The following idioms may be noticed :—

(*a*) Quid facerent ego nescii, *I did not know what they ought to do* (delib. subjunc. in indirect).

(*b*) Laniando hostem exspiravit, *He expired mangling his enemy* (abl. of gerund used for pres. part.).

(*c*) Quod omnibus notum esse dixit, *And that this matter (he said) was known to all* (the relative as a connective (=et id) in indirect does not take a finite verb).

(*d*) Adeo territi erant ut non pugnaturi essent, *They were so terrified that they would not fight* (fut. subjunc., secondary sequence).

(*e*) Non dubitavi quin urbem capturus fuerit, *I did not doubt that he would have taken the city* (conditional in consecutive clause : double dependence). So : Rogo te quid facturus fueris, *I ask you what you would have done.*

(*f*) Laetemur potius quam queramur, *Let us rejoice rather than complain.* Addit se prius occisum iri quam me violatum iri, *He adds that he will be killed sooner than that I shall be harmed.*

FIRST LATIN READER.

CORNELIUS NEPOS.

THEMISTOCLES.

I. Themistocles, Neoclis filius, Atheniensis. Huius vitia ineuntis adulescentiae magnis sunt emendata virtutibus, adeo ut anteferatur huic nemo, pauci pares putentur. Sed ab initio est ordiendum. Pater eius Neocles generosus fuit. Is uxorem Halicarnassiam civem duxit, ex qua natus est Themistocles. Qui cum minus esset probatus parentibus, quod et liberius vivebat et rem familiarem neglegebat, a patre exheredatus est. Quae contumelia non fregit eum, sed erexit. Nam cum iudicasset sine summa industria non posse eam exstingui, totum se dedidit rei publicae, diligentius amicis famaeque serviens. Multum in iudiciis privatis versabatur, saepe in contionem populi prodibat; nulla res maior sine eo gerebatur, celeriter quae opus erant reperiebat, facile eadem oratione explicabat. Neque minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat, quod et de instantibus, ut ait Thucydides, verissime iudicabat et de futuris callidissime coniciebat. Quo factum est ut brevi tempore illustraretur. The early life of Themistocles.

II. Primus autem gradus fuit capessendae rei publicae bello Corcyraeo: ad quod gerendum praetor a populo factus non solum praesenti bello, sed etiam reliquo tempore ferociorem reddidit civitatem. Nam cum pecunia publica, quae ex metallis redibat, largitione magistratuum quotannis interiret, ille persuasit populo ut ea pecunia classis centum navium aedificaretur. Qua celeriter effecta, primum Corcyraeos fregit, deinde maritimos praedones consectando mare tutum reddidit. In quo cum divitiis ornavit, tum etiam peritissimos belli navalis fecit Athenienses. The Athenians build a fleet. B.C. 481.

Xerxes invades Greece.

Id quantae saluti fuerit universae Graeciae, bello cognitum est Persico. Nam cum Xerxes et mari et terra bellum universae inferret Europae cum tantis copiis, quantas neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam: huius enim classis mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit, quam duo millia onerariarum sequebantur, terrestris autem exercitus DCC peditum, equitum CCCC millia fuerunt:—cuius de adventu cum fama in Graeciam esset perlata et maxime Athenienses peti dicerentur propter pugnam Marathoniam, miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis se munirent. Id responsum quo valeret cum intellegeret nemo, Themistocles persuasit consilium esse Apollinis, ut in naves se suaque conferrent: eum enim a deo significari murum ligneum. Tali consilio probato addunt ad superiores totidem naves triremes suaque omnia, quae moveri poterant, partim Salamina, partim Troezena deportant: arcem sacerdotibus paucisque maioribus natu ad sacra procuranda tradunt, reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

Thermopylae; Artemisium, B.C. 480.

III. Huius consilium plerisque civitatibus displicebat et in terra dimicari magis placebat. Itaque missi sunt delecti cum Leonida, Lacedaemoniorum rege, qui Thermopylas occuparent longiusque barbaros progredi non paterentur. Ii vim hostium non sustinuerunt eoque loco omnes interierunt. At classis communis Graeciae trecentarum navium, in qua ducentae erant Atheniensium, primum apud Artemisium inter Euboeam continentemque terram cum classiariis regiis conflixit: angustias enim Themistocles quaerebat, ne multitudine circumiretur. Hic etsi pari proelio discesserant, tamen eodem loco non sunt ausi manere, quod erat periculum, ne, si pars navium adversariorum Euboeam superasset, ancipiti premerentur periculo. Quo factum est ut ab Artemisio discederent et exadversum Athenas apud Salamina classem suam constituerent.

IV. At Xerxes Thermopylis expugnatis protinus accessit astu idque nullis defendentibus, interfectis sacer-

dotibus quos in arce invenerat, incendio delevit. Cuius flamma perterriti classiarii cum manere non auderent et plurimi hortarentur, ut domos suas discederent moenibusque se defenderent, Themistocles unus restitit et universos pares esse posse aiebat, dispersos testabatur perituros, idque Eurybiadi, regi Lacedaemoniorum, qui tum summae imperii praeerat, fore affirmabat. Quem cum minus quam vellet moveret, noctu de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit, ut ei nuntiaret suis verbis, adversarios eius in fuga esse : qui si discessissent, maiore cum labore et longinquiore tempore bellum confecturum, cum singulos consectari cogeretur ; quos si statim aggrederetur, brevi universos oppressurum. Hoc eo valebat, ut ingratiis ad depugnandum omnes cogerentur. Hac re audita barbarus, nihil doli subesse credens, postridie alienissimo sibi loco, contra opportunissimo hostibus, adeo angusto mari conflixit, ut eius multitudo navium explicari non potuerit. Victus ergo est magis etiam consilio Themistoclis quam armis Graeciae. The Greeks conquer at Salamis, B.C. 480.

V. Hic etsi male rem gesserat, tamen tantas habebat reliquias copiarum, ut etiam tum iis opprimere posset hostes. Iterum ab eodem gradu depulsus est. Nam Themistocles, verens ne bellare perseveraret, certiorem eum fecit id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur ac reditu in Asiam excluderetur ; idque ei persuasit. Itaque qua sex mensibus iter fecerat, eadem minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus est seque a Themistocle non superatum, sed conservatum iudicavit. Sic unius viri prudentia Graecia liberata est Europaeque succubuit Asia. Haec est altera victoria, quae cum Marathonio possit comparari tropaeo. Nam pari modo apud Salamina parvo numero navium maxima post hominum memoriam classis est devicta. Xerxes leaves Greece.

VI. Magnus hoc bello Themistocles fuit neque minor in pace. Cum enim Phalerico portu neque magno neque bono Athenienses uterentur, huius consilio triplex Piraei portus constitutus est iisque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitate aequiperaret, utilitate superaret. Piraeus fortified ; the walls of Athens restored, B.C. 478-472

Idem muros Atheniensium restituit praecipuo suo periculo. Namque Lacedaemonii causam idoneam nacti propter barbarorum excursiones, qua negarent oportere extra Peloponnesum ullam urbem muros habere, ne essent loca munita quae hostes possiderent, Athenienses aedificantes prohibere sunt conati. Hoc longe alio spectabat atque videri volebant. Athenienses enim duabus victoriis, Marathonia et Salaminia, tantam gloriam apud omnes gentes erant consecuti, ut intellegerent Lacedaemonii de principatu sibi cum iis certamen fore. Quare eos quam infirmissimos esse volebant. Postquam autem audierunt muros strui, legatos Athenas miserunt qui id fieri vetarent. His praesentibus desierunt ac se de ea re legatos ad eos missuros dixerunt. Hanc legationem suscepit Themistocles et solus primo profectus est : reliqui legati ut tum exirent, cum satis alti tuendo muri exstructi viderentur, praecepit : interim omnes, servi atque liberi, opus facerent neque ulli loco parcerent, sive sacer sive privatus esset sive publicus, et undique, quod idoneum ad muniendum putarent, congererent. Quo factum est ut Atheniensium muri ex sacellis sepulchrisque constarent.

The Spartans outwitted by Themistocles.

VII. Themistocles autem, ut Lacedaemonem venit, adire ad magistratus noluit et dedit operam, ut quam longissime tempus duceret, causam interponens se collegas exspectare. Cum Lacedaemonii quererentur opus nihilo minus fieri eumque in ea re conari fallere, interim reliqui legati sunt consecuti. A quibus cum audisset non multum superesse munitionis, ad ephoros Lacedaemoniorum accessit, penes quos summum erat imperium, atque apud eos contendit falsa iis esse delata : quare aequum esse illos viros bonos nobilesque mittere, quibus fides haberetur, qui rem explorarent : interea se obsidem retinerent. Gestus est ei mos, tresque legati functi summis honoribus Athenas missi sunt. Cum his collegas suos Themistocles iussit proficisci iisque praedixit, ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hos postquam Athenas pervenisse ratus

est, ad magistratus senatumque Lacedaemoniorum adiit et apud eos liberrime professus est: Athenienses suo consilio, quod communi iure gentium facere possent, deos publicos suosque patrios ac penates, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere, muris saepsisse, neque in eo quod inutile esset Graeciae fecisse. Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam iam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium. Lacedaemonios autem male et iniuste facere, qui id potius intuerentur quod ipsorum dominationi quam quod universae Graeciae utile esset. Quare, si suos legatos recipere vellent, quos Athenas miserant, se remitterent, cum aliter illos nunquam in patriam essent recepturi.

Themistocles ostracised, B.C. 471.

VIII. Tamen non effugit civium suorum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timorem, quo damnatus erat Miltiades, testularum suffragiis e civitate eiectus Argos habitatum concessit. Hic cum propter multas virtutes magna cum dignitate viveret, Lacedaemonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui eum absentem accusarent, quod societatem cum rege Perse ad Graeciam opprimendam fecisset. Hoc crimine absens proditionis damnatus est. Id ut audivit, quod non satis tutum se Argis videbat, Corcyram demigravit. Ibi cum eius principes animadvertisset timere, ne propter se bellum iis Lacedaemonii et Athenienses indicerent, ad Admetum, Molossum regem, cum quo ei hospitium erat, confugit. Huc cum venisset et in praesentia rex abesset, quo maiore religione se receptum tueretur, filiam eius parvulam arripuit et cum ea se in sacrarium, quod summa colebatur caerimonia, coniecit. Inde non prius egressus est, quam rex eum data dextra in fidem reciperet, quam praestitit. Nam cum ab Atheniensibus et Lacedaemoniis exposceretur publice, supplicem non prodidit monuitque ut consuleret sibi: difficile enim esse in tam propinquo loco tuto eum versari. Itaque Pydnam eum deduci iussit et quod satis esset praesidii dedit. Hic in navem omnibus ignotus nautis escendit. Quae cum tempestate maxima Naxum ferretur, ubi tum Atheniensium erat exercitus, sensit

Withdraws to Corcyra and to Epirus, B.C. 466

Themistocles, si eo pervenisset, sibi esse pereundum. Hac necessitate coactus domino navis, quis sit, aperit, multa pollicens, si se conservasset. At ille clarissimi viri captus misericordia diem noctemque procul ab insula in salo navem tenuit in ancoris neque quemquam ex ea exire passus est. Inde Ephesum pervenit ibique Themistoclem exponit : cui ille pro meritis postea gratiam rettulit.

Themistocles at the court of Artaxerxes, B.C. 465.

IX. Scio plerosque ita scripsisse, Themistoclen Xerxe regnante in Asiam transisse. Sed ego potissimum Thucydidi credo, quod et aetate proximus de iis, qui illorum temporum historiam reliquerunt, et eiusdem civitatis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxen eum venisse atque his verbis epistulam misisse : "Themistocles veni ad te, qui plurima mala omnium Graiorum in domum tuam intuli, quam diu mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum bellare patriamque meam defendere. Idem multo plura bona feci, postquam in tuto ipse et ille in periculo esse coepit. Nam cum in Asiam reverti vellet, proelio apud Salamina facto, litteris eum certiorem feci, id agi ut pons, quem in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur atque ab hostibus circumiretur : quo nuntio ille periculo est liberatus. Nunc autem confugi ad te exagitatus a cuncta Graecia, tuam petens amicitiam : quam si ero adeptus, non minus me bonum amicum habebis quam fortem inimicum ille expertus est. Te autem rogo, ut de iis rebus, quas tecum colloqui volo, annuum mihi tempus des eoque transacto ad te venire patiaris."

The Persian king receives him kindly and assigns him three cities for his support.

X. Huius rex animi magnitudinem admirans cupiensque talem virum sibi conciliari veniam dedit. Ille omne illud tempus litteris sermonique Persarum dedidit : quibus adeo eruditus est, ut multo commodius dicatur apud regem verba fecisse quam ii poterant, qui in Perside erant nati. Hic cum multa regi esset pollicitus gratissimumque illud, si suis uti consiliis vellet, illum Graeciam bello oppressurum, magnis muneribus ab Artaxerxe donatus in Asiam rediit domiciliumque Magnesiae sibi constituit. Namque hanc urbem ei rex donarat, his quidem verbis, quae ei panem praeberet (ex qua regione quinquagena

talenta quotannis redibant), Lampsacum autem, unde vinum sumeret, Myunta, ex qua obsonium haberet.

His death (about B.C. 449).

Huius ad nostram memoriam monumenta manserunt duo: sepulchrum prope oppidum, in quo est sepultus, statua in foro Magnesiae. De cuius morte multis modis apud plerosque scriptum est, sed nos eundem potissimum Thucydidem auctorem probamus, qui illum ait Magnesiae morbo mortuum neque negat fuisse famam, venenum sua sponte sumpsisse, cum se, quae regi de Graecia opprimenda pollicitus esset, praestare posse desperaret. Idem ossa eius clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta, quoniam legibus non concederetur, quod proditionis esset damnatus, memoriae prodidit.

ARISTIDES.

Character of Aristides. Ostracised by Themistocles. B.C. 484.

I. Aristides, Lysimachi filius, Atheniensis, aequalis fere fuit Themistocli atque cum eo de principatu contendit: namque obtrectarunt inter se. In his autem cognitum est, quanto antestaret eloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeo excellebat Aristides abstinentia, ut unus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nos audierimus, cognomine Iustus sit appellatus, tamen a Themistocle collabefactus testula illa exilio decem annorum multatus est. Qui quidem cum intellegeret reprimi concitatam multitudinem non posse, cedensque animadvertisset quendam scribentem, ut patria pelleretur, quaesisse ab eo dicitur, quare id faceret aut quid Aristides commisisset, cur tanta poena dignus duceretur. Cui ille respondit se ignorare Aristiden, sed sibi non placere, quod tam cupide laborasset, ut praeter ceteros Iustus appellaretur. Hic decem annorum legitimam poenam non pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxes in Graeciam descendit, sexto fere anno quam erat expulsus, populi scito in patriam restitutus est.

II. Interfuit autem pugnae navali apud Salamina, quae facta est prius quam poena liberaretur. Idem praetor

Fights at Salamis, B.C. 480, and Plataea, B.C. 479.

fuit Atheniensium apud Plataeas in proelio, quo barbarorum exercitus fusus Mardoniusque interfectus est. Neque aliud est ullum huius in re militari illustre factum quam huius imperii memoria, iustitiae vero et aequitatis et innocentiae multa: in primis, quod eius aequitate factum est, cum in communi classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausania, quo duce Mardonius erat fugatus, ut summa imperii maritimi ab Lacedaemoniis transferretur ad Athenienses: namque ante id tempus et mari et terra duces erant Lacedaemonii. Tum autem et intemperantia Pausaniae et iustitia factum est Aristidis, ut omnes fere civitates Graeciae ad Atheniensium societatem se applicarent et adversus barbaros hos duces deligerent sibi.

Chosen to settle the tribute to be paid by the allies, B.C. 477. His death, B.C. 468.

III. Quos quo facilius repellerent, si forte bellum renovare conarentur, ad classes aedificandas exercitusque comparandos quantum pecuniae quaeque civitas daret, Aristides delectus est qui constitueret, eiusque arbitrio quadringena et sexagena talenta quotannis Delum sunt collata: id enim commune aerarium esse voluerunt. Quae omnis pecunia postero tempore Athenas translata est. Hic qua fuerit abstinentia nullum est certius indicium, quam quod, cum tantis rebus praefuisset, in tanta paupertate decessit, ut quî efferretur vix reliquerit. Quo factum est ut filiae eius publice alerentur et de communi aerario dotibus datis collocarentur. Decessit autem fere post annum quartum, quam Themistocles Athenis erat expulsus.

HANNIBAL.

I. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis.

The greatest of all military commanders.

Si verum est, quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superarit, non est infitiandum Hannibalem tanto praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, quanto populus Romanus antecedat fortitudine cunctas nationes. Nam quotienscumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur

superare potuisse. Sed multorum obtrectatio devicit unius virtutem.

Continues his father's enmity to Rome.

Hic autem velut hereditate relictum odium paternum erga Romanos sic conservavit, ut prius animam quam id deposuerit, qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et alienarum opum indigeret, numquam destiterit animo bellare cum Romanis.

II. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absens hostem reddidit Romanis, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rex Antiochus fuit. Hunc tanta cupiditate incendit bellandi, ut usque a rubro mari arma conatus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum legati venissent Romani, qui de eius voluntate explorarent darentque operam consiliis clandestinis, ut Hannibalem in suspicionem regi adducerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptum alia atque antea sentire, neque id frustra fecissent, idque Hannibal comperisset seque ab interioribus consiliis segregari vidisset, tempore dato adiit ad regem, eique cum multa de fide sua et odio in Romanos commemorasset, hoc adiunxit :

Swears eternal hatred of Rome before the altar.

" Pater meus," inquit, " Hamilcar, puerulo me, utpote non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens Karthagine, Iovi optimo maximo hostias immolavit ; quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me vellemne secum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accepissem atque ab eo petere coepissem ne dubitaret ducere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'si mihi fidem quam postulo dederis.' Simul me ad aram adduxit, apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque ceteris remotis tenentem iurare iussit, numquam me in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Id ego iusiurandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetatem ita conservavi, ut nemini dubium esse debeat, quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus. Quare si quid amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris, si me celaris : cum quidem bellum parabis, te ipsum frustraberis, si non me in eo principem posueris."

III. Hac igitur qua diximus aetate cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est : cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale

Commander-in-Chief, B.C. 221; Saguntum, B.C. 219.

imperatore suffecto, equitatui omni praefuit. Hoc quoque interfecto exercitus summam imperii ad eum detulit. Id Karthaginem delatum publice comprobatum est. Sic Hannibal minus quinque et viginti annis natus imperator factus proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit: Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, vi expugnavit, tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit.

He crosses the Pyrenees and Alps, B.C. 218.

Saltum Pyrenaeum transiit; quacumque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis conflixit; neminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpes posteaquam venit, quae Italiam ab Gallia seiungunt, quas nemo umquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpicos conantes prohibere transitu concidit, loca patefecit, itinera muniit, effecit ut ea elephantus ornatus ire posset, qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat repere. Hac copias traduxit in Italiamque pervenit.

Ticinus and Trebia, B.C. 218. Battle of the Trasumene Lake, B.C. 217; and of Cannae, B.C. 216.

IV. Conflixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione consule eumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eodem Clastidii apud Padum decernit sauciumque inde ac fugatum dimittit. Tertio idem Scipio cum collega Tiberio Longo apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. Cum iis manum conseruit: utrosque profligavit. Inde per Ligures Appenninum transiit, petens Etruriam. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo adficitur oculorum, ut postea numquam dextro aeque bene usus sit. Qua valetudine cum etiamtum premeretur lecticaque ferretur, C. Flaminium consulem apud Trasumenum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem cum delecta manu saltus occupantem. Hinc in Apuliam pervenit. Ibi obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit, Paulum consulem occidit et aliquot praeterea consulares, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

V. Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente. In propinquis urbi montibus moratus est. Cum aliquot ibi dies castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, in agro Falerno ei se obiecit. Hic clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine ullo detrimento exercitus se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimo imperatori, dedit verba. Namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencorum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispalatam immisit. Quo repentino obiecto visu tantum terrorem iniecit exercitui Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus. Ruse by which he escaped from Fabius. B.C. 216.

Hanc post rem gestam non ita multis diebus M. Minucium Rufum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictatorem imperio, dolo productum in proelium fugavit. Tiberium Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lucanis absens in insidias inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Marcellum, quinquies consulem, apud Venusiam pari modo interfecit. Longum est omnia enumerare proelia. Quare hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quo intellegi possit, quantus ille fuerit : quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit. Other victories.

VI. Hinc invictus patriam defensum revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis, quem ipse primo apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugarat. Cum hoc exhaustis iam patriae facultatibus cupivit inpraesentiarum bellum componere, quo valentior postea congrederetur. In colloquium convenit : condiciones non convenerunt. Post id factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eodem conflixit : pulsus (incredibile dictu) biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrumetum pervenit, quod abest ab Zama circiter millia passuum trecenta. In hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati sunt ei : quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrumeti reliquos e fuga collegit : novis dilectibus paucis diebus multos contraxit. His recall to Africa. B.C. 203. Zama. B.C. 202.

He distinguishes himself in a civil capacity. B.C. 200.

VII. Cum in apparando acerrime esset occupatus, Karthaginienses bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. Ille nihilo secius exercitui postea praefuit resque in Africa gessit usque ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurelium consules. His enim magistratibus legati Karthaginienses Romam venerunt, qui senatui populoque Romano gratias agerent, quod cum iis pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem corona aurea eos donarent simulque peterent, ut obsides eorum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. His ex senatus consulto responsum est: munus eorum gratum acceptumque esse; obsides, quo loco rogarent, futuros, captivos non remissuros, quod Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nomini Romano, etiam nunc cum imperio apud exercitum haberent itemque fratrem eius Magonem. Hoc responso Karthaginienses cognito Hannibalem domum et Magonem revocarunt. Huc ut rediit, rex factus est, postquam imperator fuerat, anno secundo et vicesimo: ut enim Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. In eo magistratu pari diligentia se Hannibal praebuit, ac fuerat in bello. Namque effecit, ex novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia, quae Romanis ex foedere penderetur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerario reponeretur.

His surrender demanded.

He escapes, B.C. 196.

Deinde anno post M. Claudio L. Furio consulibus, Roma legati Karthaginem venerunt. Hos Hannibal ratus sui exposcendi gratia missos, priusquam iis senatus daretur, navem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profugit. Hac re palam facta Poeni naves duas, quae eum comprehenderent, si possent consequi, miserunt: bona eius publicarunt, domum a fundamentis disiecerunt, ipsum exulem iudicarunt.

Hannibal and Antiochus. B.C. 193.

VIII. At Hannibal anno tertio, postquam domo profugerat, L. Cornelio Q. Minucio consulibus, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrenaeorum, si forte Karthaginienses ad bellum Antiochi spe fiduciaque inducerentur, cui iam persuaserat, ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. Huc Magonem fratrem excivit. Id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem eadem, qua fratrem,

absentem adfecerunt poena. Illi desperatis rebus cum solvissent naves ac vela ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. De Magonis interitu duplex memoria prodita est : namque alii naufragio, alii a servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquerunt.

Defeated by the Rhodians, B.C. 191.

Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendo bello consiliis eius parere voluisset, quam in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis de summa imperii dimicasset. Quem etsi multa stulte conari videbat, tamen nulla deseruit in re. Praefuit paucis navibus, quas ex Syria iussus erat in Asiam ducere, iisque adversus Rhodiorum classem in Pamphylio mari conflixit. Quo cum multitudine adversariorum sui superarentur, ipse, quo cornu rem gessit, fuit superior.

Hannibal in Crete preserves his treasure by a stratagem.

IX. Antiocho fugato, verens ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset, si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad Gortynios venit, ut ibi, quo se conferret, consideraret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magno se fore periculo, nisi quid providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium : magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de qua sciebat exisse famam. Itaque capit tale consilium. Amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. Has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae, simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. His in errorem inductis, statuas aëneas, quas secum portabat, omni sua pecunia complet easque in propatulo domi abicit. Gortynii templum magna cura custodiunt, non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille inscientibus iis tolleret secumque duceret.

Hannibal at the court of Prusias, king of Bithynia, B.C. 188-183.

X. Sic conservatis suis rebus Poenus, illusis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum pervenit. Apud quem eodem animo fuit erga Italiam, neque aliud quidquam egit quam regem armavit et exercuit adversus Romanos. Quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliabat ceteros reges, adiungebat bellicosas nationes.

Dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus rex Eumenes, Romanis amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et

Makes war on Eumenes of Pergamus

terra. Sed utrobique Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem : quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi : quem si removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore arbitrabatur. Ad hunc interficiendum talem iniit rationem. Classe paucis diebus erant decreturi : superabatur navium multitudine : dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis.

He collects snakes to fling on the enemy's decks.

Imperavit quam plurimas venenatas serpentes vivas colligi easque in vasa fictilia conici. Harum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium, classiarios convocat iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant se defendere. Id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos. Rex autem in qua navi veheretur, ut scirent, se facturum : quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent, magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.

How he discovered the king's ship.

XI. Tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium in scapha cum caduceo mittit. Qui ubi ad naves adversariorum pervenit epistulamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius, ducis navi declarata suis, eodem unde erat egressus se recepit. At Eumenes soluta epistula nihil in ea repperit, nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent. Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiebat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. Horum in concursu Bithynii Hannibalis praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur.

Eumenes retires. His fleet defeated.

Quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fuga salutem petit : quam consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamenae naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae

iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt, neque quare id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem naves suas oppletas conspexerunt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, cum, quid potissimum vitarent, non viderent, puppes verterunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. Sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenorum superavit, neque tum solum, sed saepe alias pedestribus copiis pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

The Romans demand his surrender.

XII. Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit casu ut legati Prusiae Romae apud T. Quintium Flamininum consularem cenarent, atque ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex iis unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. Id postero die Flamininus senatui detulit. Patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, in iis Flamininum, qui ab rege peterent, ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibique dederet. His Prusias negare ausus non est: illud recusavit, ne id a se fieri postularent, quod adversus ius hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent: locum, ubi esset, facile inventuros.

His death.

Hannibal enim uno loco se tenebat in castello, quod ei a rege datum erat muneri, idque sic aedificarat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet, scilicet verens ne usu veniret, quod accidit. Huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. Qui imperavit ei, ut omnes fores aedificii circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret, num eodem modo undique obsideretur. Puer cum celeriter, quid esset, renuntiasset omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam esse retinendam. Quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinarum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuerat, sumpsit.

XIII. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus laboribus, anno acquievit septuagesimo. Quibus consulibus interierit, non convenit. Namque Atticus M.

The date of Hannibal's death uncertain. B.C. 183, 182, or 181.

Claudio Marcello Q. Fabio Labeone consulibus mortuum in annali suo scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemilio Paulo Cn. Baebio Tamphilo, Sulpicius autem Blitho P. Cornelio Cethego M. Baebio Tamphilo. Atque hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nonnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius libri sunt, Graeco sermone confecti, in iis ad Rhodios de Cn. Manlii Vulsonis in Asia rebus gestis. Huius belli gesta multi memoriae prodiderunt, sed ex his duo, qui cum eo in castris fuerunt simulque vixerunt, quamdiu fortuna passa est, Silenus et Sosilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hoc Sosilo Hannibal litterarum Graecarum usus est doctore.

CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO, B. IV, B. V, CH. 1-23.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

In the following selections from Caesar's great work on the conquest of Gaul, he narrates:

(1) The story of his successful attempt to prevent the German tribes, who held the right bank of the Rhine, from crossing the river and settling upon the left or Gallic bank.

(2) The story of his First Invasion of Britain in the end of August, B.C. 55.

(3) The story of his Second Invasion of Britain on July 20th, B.C. 54.

C. IULI CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER QUARTUS.

Usipetes and Tencteri migrate to Gaul, pressed by the Suebi.

I. Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Gneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, quod a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pelles haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

Customs of the Suebi.

II. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam iumentis,

quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos nata, prava atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione summi ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

The Suebi reduce the Ubii to a tributary state.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suebis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum, et paulo quam sunt eiusdem generis ceteri humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suebi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

The Menapii are surprised by the sudden attack of the Germans.

IV. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simul-

averunt et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

The fickle character of the Gauls.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

Caesar discovers intrigues between the Gauls and Germans; calls a meeting of the Gallic chiefs and gets their aid against the Germans.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius, quam consuerat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit: missas legationes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Trevirorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

The German deputies negotiate with Caesar,

VII. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset,

legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio : Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eiectos domo ; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos : vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint ; sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint : reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

who refuses to allow them to remain in Gaul.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit ; sed exitus fuit orationis : Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent ; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare ; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint ; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant : hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

They agree to give him an answer in three days ; and ask him not to advance, but he refuses.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros : interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam : hos exspectari equites atque eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

Geography of the Meuse and the Rhine.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur et, ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in plures defluit partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars

magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

Caesar prepares for a battle against the Germans.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureiurando fidem fecissent, ea condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

Treacherous attack of the Germans. Death of Piso and his brother.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab eis petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; rursus resistentibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossisque equis compluribusque nostris deiectis reliquos in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat

amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

The deputies of the enemy apologize for the attack; they are detained. Caesar orders a general advance,

XIII. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissime res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus illos retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

and surprises the Germans who after a brief resistance

XIV. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo millium itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra irruperunt. Quo loco, qui celeriter arma

capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt : at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit ; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

XV. Germani post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis se ex castris eiecerunt et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata magno numero interfecto reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes perpaucis vulneratis ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

are utterly routed by the Romans.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt : Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire : si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant,

Caesar determines to cross the Rhine, and gives his reasons for so doing.

magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

In ten days the bridge is finished and Caesar crosses.

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. At Sugambri, ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

After laying waste the lands of the Germans, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

XIX. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis se in fines Ubiorum recepit atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Caesar determines to invade Britain; his reasons for crossing.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem iubet convenire. Interim consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos a compluribus eius insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari

Sends Volusenus, who returns and reports to him.

potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies hostages from the Morini,

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum iis obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quominus in eundum portum pervenire possent; has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

and reaches Britain.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam

nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

The natives attack the Romans.

XXIV. At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela conicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

Caesar's device; bravery of the standard bearer of the 10th legion; Roman advance.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe

meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

Rout of the enemy.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Several states submit to Caesar.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturos quaeque imperasset sese facturos polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arces-

sitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

Fate of the eighteen cavalry troop ships.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur ; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur : quae tamen, ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

A storm and high tides wreck Caesar's transports.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

Conspiracy of British chiefs.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se collocuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc

erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt rebellione facta frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod iis superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects their intentions; forms plans accordingly.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Sudden attack of the British.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis

interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

The British mode of fighting.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

Caesar acts on the defensive; severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est,

secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque afflictis incensisque se in castra receperunt.

Caesar makes peace; sets sail for Gaul.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Sudden attack of the Morini.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

Conquest of the Morini and Menapii.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius

et Lucius Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

LIBER QUINTUS.

I. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

Caesar orders a fleet to be built.

The Pirustae give hostages.

The soldiers praised for their zeal. Fleet ordered to rendezvous at Portus Itius.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

The Treveri and their rival chieftains.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit quaeque in Treveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam

laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

Cingetorix honored and Indutiomarus offended.

IV. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

Caesar prepares to sail.

V. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero millium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus, ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Dumnorix gives trouble.

VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant.

Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of Dumnorix.

VII. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar intermissa profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

Caesar's second landing in Britain, 54 B.C.

VIII. His rebus gestis Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo provectus media circiter nocte vento intermisso cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

The Britons oppose his march inland.

IX. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones

ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Bad news of the fleet.

X. Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Labienus builds new ships.

XI. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro

Cassivellaunus.

adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgis transierant (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia remissioribus frigoribus. The people.

XIII. Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existi- The island.

matur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

Manners and customs.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugna aspectu ; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis ; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

More fighting ; a surprise ; death of a tribune.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint ; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

British mode of fighting.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et

pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

The Britons repulsed.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto repulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

XVIII. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque

impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

So do other tribes.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt.

A British "town."

Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

Four Kentish kings defeated.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cassivellaunus treats for peace.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

NOTES ON NEPOS.

THEMISTOCLES.

Chapter I.—Huius ... adulescentiae: "The faults of this man's early youth." **Adulescentia**: from 17 to 30 years of age.—**Anteferatur**: for the mood and tense see p. 295, B. 2: "so that no one is superior to him," *i.e.*, even of the present day.—**Est ordiendum**: scil., **nobis**: "we must begin," *i.e.*, describe his life: p. 173, 6.—**Halicarnassiam**: "of Halicarnassus," a city of Caria, in Asia Minor.—**Qui cum ... parentibus**: "and since he was displeasing to his parents." Note that a Latin sentence often begins with **cum** and a relative pronoun. In English the relative pronoun is best translated by a demonstrative and a connective.—**Parentibus**: dative. See Vocab. under **probo**.—**Cum**: causal: p. 297, 4.—**Liberius**: "too freely": compar. deg., often = "too."—**Quae ... contumelia**: "but this slight." Avoid beginning an English principal sentence with a relative pronoun: see note above on **Qui cum ... parentibus**.—**Cum ... iudicavisset**: p. 297, 4. — **Eam**: *i.e.*, **contumeliam**. — **Diligentius**: "very diligently": compar. deg. = "very," "rather." — **Quae opus erant**: note that **opus est** is generally used impersonally. What is the construction? p. 283, 11. The thing needed, may, however, be the subject: as, **Dux nobis opus est**, "We have need of a leader."—**Excogitandis**, *i.e.*, **in rebus excogitandis**.—**Verissime iudicabat**: see Vocabulary under **vere**.—**Quo factum est ut**: "and, therefore, the result was that": note that the relative adverb **quo** = **et eo** = "and therefore." See note on **quae contumelia** above.

Chapter II.—Gradus capessendae rei publicae: see Vocab. under **gradus**: "His first position in the administration of public affairs."—**Bello Corcyraeo**: "In the war with Corcyra": there was no war with Corcyra at this time. Athens was, however, involved in a war with Aegīna which lasted 488-481 B.C.—**Ad quod gerendum**: express this in various ways: p. 295, 9. For the translation of **quod** see note on **quae contumelia**, Chap. I.—**Praetor**, properly **praeitor**, "the one who goes before," hence, "commander."—**Metallis redibat**: see Vocab. under **redeo**. Nepos refers to the silver mines of Laurīum on the promontory of Sunium.—**Largitione magistratuum**: see Vocab. under **largitio**: for subjective genitive, p. 280, 6. Nepos is thinking of the distribution of corn and money by the Roman magistrates to obtain popularity.—**Interiret**: depending on **cum** causal: p. 297, 4.—**Maritimos praedones**: the Aegean sea has always been infested with pirates from early days to the present. —**In quo**: "and in doing this": see note on **quae contumelia**, Chap. I.—**Cum ... tum**: "both ... and."—**Divitiis ornavit**: see Vocab. under **orno**.—**Saluti ... Graeciae**: for the two datives, see p. 279, 12. For the mood of **fuerit**, see p. 291, 1.—**Bello ... Persico**: p. 284, 1. The Second Persian War (480 B.C.) is meant. Herodotus (vii, 144) says that the building of the ships for the war against Aegīna proved the salvation

of Greece, because the Athenians were compelled to become a maritime people.—**Nam cum ... quisquam**: this sentence is left unfinished.—**Et mari et terra**: we also find **terra marique, terra ac mari**: note the omission of **in**.—**Terrestris ... exercitus**: Herodotus puts the infantry at 1,700,000, and the whole force, including camp followers, at 5,283,220.—**Cuius**: Darius was king of Persia when Marathon was fought (490 B.C.). He died 486 B.C., and was succeeded by his son Xerxes, who reigned from 485 to 465 B.C. In the reign of the latter were fought the battles of Thermopylae, 480 B.C.; Artemisium, 480 B.C.; Salamis, 480 B.C., and Plataeae, 479 B.C.—**Delphos**: for the case, p. 285, 1.—**Consultum**: in what different ways may this be expressed : p. 295, 9.—**Quidnam facerent**: "what, pray, were they to do": delib. subjunc. in indirect. What would be the direct question? p. 288, 3, top of page.—**Respondit ut**: note that **respondeo** has here the construction of a verb of *commanding*: p. 292, 1. The meaning is "bade them in answer."—**Id ... valeret**: see Vocab. under **valeo.** For mood, p. 306, 4.—**Persuasit ... esse**: when **persuadeo** means "to convince," it takes the acc. with inf., like other verbs of *saying*: p. 288, 1, foot of page. — **Eum ... ligneum**: scil., **Themistocles dixit**: "for (Themistocles said) that was the wooden wall meant by the god." **Eum** is predicate and attracted to the gender of **murum**.—**Maioribus natu**: "the elders": comparative of **senex**: cf. superlative **maximus natu**: p. 58, note.—**Ad sacra procuranda**: "to perform the religious rites." The Acropolis of Athens contained the Parthenon, the chief temple of Athens, dedicated to Athene, the guardian goddess of the city.

Chapter III.—**Huius**: *i.e.*, Themistocles.—**Magis**: scil. **quam in mari**: "rather than on the sea." There was no division among the Greeks prior to this, for the Greek congress decided that the fleet should guard the northern entrance of the Euboic channel, and that the army should make a stand at Thermopylae.—**Qui ... occuparent, paterentur**: p. 294, 5.—**Sustinuerunt**: Leonidas and his Spartan band withstood the Persians for three days, till the enemy was treacherously led over the ridge of Oeta, and attacked the Greeks in the rear.—**At**: a particle of transition introducing a new subject; **sed** is adversative.—**Trecentarum navium**: according to Herodotus (viii, 2), the number of the Greek ships was 271 : of which 127 were Athenian.—**Artemisium**: there were three battles at Artemisium on three successive days. After the news came that Leonidas had fallen at Thermopylae, and that the Persians were marching on Athens, the Greeks decided to retire to Salamis.—**Pari proelio**: "after a drawn battle" (abl. manner) : on the first two days, the Athenians gained some advantage, but on the third, both fleets suffered heavily.—**Quod erat periculum ne : periculum erat** has the construction of verbs of *fearing*: p. 294, 8.—**Si ... superasset**: p. 301, (3), (*b*). Two hundred of the Persian fleet did try to sail around Euboea, but were wrecked on the coast.—**Ancipiti periculo**: *i.e.*, in front and rear.—**Quo factum est**: see note on the same expression, Chap. I.

Chapter IV.—**At**: see above, Chap. III.—**Protinus**: also written **protenus**: it refers to time, "forthwith," or to place, "onwards." Here it means "without interruption."—**Accessit astu**: for the more common **accessit ad astu. Astu** is the Greek ἀστυ in Roman characters. The City of Athens was called ἀστυ in opposition to the harbour towns, Piraeus,

Phalērum and Munychia.—**Nullis defendentibus**, abl. abs.: the city had no defenders but the Acropolis had.—**Cuius**: the burning city (Herodotus viii, 56).—**Domos suas**: p. 285, 1: decline **domus**: p. 238.—**Universos... dispersos**: equivalent to **si universi essent ... si dispersi essent**: "if they were all united... if they were all separated."—**Pares**: scil. **hostibus.**—**Regi**: Eurybiades: he was admiral, not king.—**Qui ... praeerat**, for the indicative: p. 307, 13, (*a*).—**Minus quam vellet**: virtual oblique: it refers to what was passing in the mind of Themistocles: p. 307, 11, note.—**De servis suis**: the preposition **de** with the abl. is often used for the partitive genitive: cf. French **de** in a partitive construction. The slave's name was Sicinnus.—**Suis verbis**: "in his own words," *i.e.*, in the words of Themistocles.—**Qui si = et si ille**: see note on **qui cum ... parentibus**, Chap. I.—**Confecturum**: *i.e.*, **Themistocles testabatur regem esse confecturum.**—**Hoc eo valebat**: "the meaning of this was": cf. **id valeret**, Chap. II.—**Depugnandum**: note the intensive force of **de** in **depugno, devinco, decerto.**—**Angusto mari**: the bay of Salamis.

Chapter V.—**Ut posset**: distinguish in meaning from **ut potuerit**: p. 295, 2.—**Iterum**: "a second time"; **rursus**, "again," said of things repeated more than once.—**Ab eodem**: Themistocles.—**Gradu depulsus est**: "he was disconcerted," literally, "he was driven from his foothold."—**Id agi**: "that this was the intention."—**Pons**: the bridge extended from Abydos on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont to Sestos on the European, and consisted of a number of boats connected by cables.—**Quem ... fecerat**: p. 307, 13, (*a*).—**Qua**: scil. **via**: so **eadem**, scil. **via**: "he returned within six months by the same route by which he had advanced." Nepos ("Agesilaus") makes it a year: the real time was four months. The retreat occupied 46 days.—**Sex mensibus... diebus triginta**: ablative of time within which: the comparative **minus** has no influence on the construction.—**Altera**: "This is a second victory."—**Quae ... possit**: "of such importance that it may be compared to the victory of Marathon."—**Quae = talis ut**: p. 296, 5. As the land forces of the Greeks at Marathon were inferior, so the naval forces of the Greeks at Salamis were inferior.—**Tropaeo**: here = **victoria.**

Chapter VI.—**Phalerico portu**: the most ancient of the Athenian ports was Phalerum, to the east of the Piraeus. Both were connected by the "long walls" with the city.—**Triplex**: the three basins were the Piraeus proper, Munychia and Zeia.—**Moenibus circumdatus**: in the active we say either **urbem muro** (abl.) or **urbi** (dat.) **murum circumdat**: in the passive, **urbs muro** (abl.) or **urbi** (dat.) **murus circumdatur.**—**Restituit**: Themistocles both rebuilt the old walls and extended the boundaries of Athens, enclosing the newly acquired parts with new walls.—**Nacti**: from **nanciscor.**—**Qua negarent**: 296, 5, (*b*): "for denying":—**Quae ... possiderent**: final: "for their enemy to acquire": p. 294, 5.—**Alio ... atque**: "had a different object than they wished to appear": note the force of **atque (ac)** after words expressing *similarity* and *dissimilarity.*—**Principatu**: "the first place" (hegemony) in Greece. The Spartans had held this before the Persian wars.—**Qui ... vetarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Desierunt**: *i.e.*, the Athenians.—**Reliqui ... praecepit**: construe **(Themistocles) praecepit ut reliqui legati tum exirent ... interim (praecepit ut) servi**, etc.—**Satis alti tuendo**: "high enough to

protect them."—**Sive ... esset**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2. — **Ex sacellis sepulchrisque**: this is only partially true (Thucydides, I, 193, sqq.).

Chapter VII.—**Dedit operam ... duceret**: "took care to spin out the time." Note that **longius** and **longissime** may be applied to time, but not **longe**: **diu** is the regular word.—**Causam interponens**: Nepos is fond of present participles; Caesar would have said **causa interposita.**—**Sunt consecuti = advenerunt**: "arrived." The others were Aristides and Habronichus.—**Imperium**: "military power" belonged to the kings of Sparta; **potestas**, "civil power," to the Ephors.—**Quibus ... haberetur**: oblique narration, hence the subjunctive: p. 305, 2.—**Qui ... explorarent**: for mood: p. 294, 5.—**Se ... retinerent = me retinete** = imperat. of direct narration: p. 306, 3.—**Gestus ... mos**: see Vocab. under **mos.**—**Praedixit = praecepit**: in this sense **praedico** follows the construction of verbs of *commanding*: p. 292, 1.—**Ut ne**: for **ne.**—**Esset remissus**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Magistratus senatumque**: referring to the board of Ephors, five in number, and to the Gerusia or Senate of Sparta, which consisted of the two kings and twenty-eight other members.—**Quod = id quod**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Deos ... penates**: **deos publicos**, the gods generally worshipped throughout Greece, as Zeus, Apollo, etc.: **deos patrios**, the guardian gods of Athens, as **Athene, Poseidon**: **penates**, the gods of each family. —**Quo facilius**: p. 294, 4.—**Oppositum** agrees with the predicate **propugnaculum** by attraction.—**Bis**: at Marathon 490 B.C.; at Salamis 480 B.C. —**Qui ... intuerentur = quippe qui ... intuerentur**: p. 298, 5.—**Si ... vellent**: p. 305, 2.—**Quos ... miserant**: p. 307, 13, (*a*).—**Se remitterent**: direct narration = **me remittite.**

Chapter VIII.—**Tamen**: *i.e.*, in spite of all his successes.—**Ob eundem timorem**: *i.e.*, of his becoming too powerful.—**Testularum suffragiis**: see Vocab. under **testula.** He refers to the ostracism of Themistocles (B.C. 471), on the charge of taking bribes from the Persians. The institution of ostracism was one of the reforms of Cleisthenes. The Athenian law provided that "at any political crisis a special meeting could be called, at which the people could declare by their vote that the presence of any individual was prejudicial to the interest of the state." If six thousand citizens voted, by writing the name of any individual on a piece of tile (**testula**, Gk. *ὄστρακον*), that such a person should be banished, he was required to withdraw from the boundaries of Attica, and remain in exile for ten years, or until recalled. He did not, however, lose his citizenship or property.—**Argos**: what case, gender and number? See Vocab.—**Habitatum**: supine.—**Hic**: *i.e.*, at Argos.—**Cum ... viveret**: for **cum** causal, see p. 297, 4.—**Qui ... accusarent**: for **qui** final, see p. 294, 5.—**Quod ... fecisset**: is this a charge of Nepos or of the ambassadors? p. 297, 3. What would **fecerat** mean?—**Rege Perse = rege Persarum** or **rege Persico.**—**Hoc crimine**: the charge **quod societatem ... fecisset.**—**Proditionis**: p. 281, 12.—**Quod ... videbat**: what does the indicative imply? p. 297, 3.—**Eius: = Corcyrae.**—**Timere ne ... indicerent**: p. 294, 8.—**Admetum cum quo**, etc.: according to Thucydides (I, 136) Admetus had been thwarted by Themistocles in pressing some demands at Athens, so that the statement here is probably incorrect.—**In praesentia**:

see Vocab. under **praesentia.**—**Quo**: p. 294, 4.—**Religione**: "reverence."—**Receptum**: "when received."—**In fidem reciperet**: "promised him his protection": p. 299, 8.—**Quam**: = **et eam**, scil. **fidem**: "and this pledge he redeemed"; see note on **quae contumelia**, Chap. I.—**Publice**: "in the name of the state."—**Consuleret sibi**: see Vocab. under **consulo.**—**Enim**: scil. **dixit.**—**Propinquo**: *i.e.*, so near Greece.—**Quod ... esset**: the sufficiency of the guard is not vouched for by Nepos: p. 297, 3: probably the opinion of Admetus stated by the author.—**Hic**: *i.e.*, at Pydna.—**Escendit**: others have **ascendit.** Caesar usually has **conscendit.**—**Naxum**: this island was in revolt against the confederacy of Delos. It was reduced by the Athenians to the position of a tributary state.—**Quis sit**: p. 291, 1.—**Pervenisset, conservasset**: oblique, p. 306, note.—**Viri ... misericordia**: "pity for so illustrious a man": objective genitive: p. 281, 7.—**Ephesum**: at that time under the rule of Persia.—**Exponit**: historic present.—**Gratiam rettulit**: see Vocab. under **gratia.**

Chapter IX.—**Xerxe regnante**: as Xerxes reigned 485-465 B.C. and Artaxerxes 465-425 B.C., and as the flight of Themistocles was probably in 460 B.C., his withdrawal to Asia was in the reign of Artaxerxes, not of Xerxes.—**Aetate proximus de iis**: "the nearest in point of time of those": for the use of **de** see note on **de servis suis**, Chap. IV.—**Eiusdem civitatis**: *i.e.*, of Athens.—**Epistulam**; Thucydides (1, 137) gives the letter which is substantially the same as given by Nepos.—**Veni**: "I am come."—**Graiorum**: partitive genitive after **qui**: p. 280, 3.—**Idem**: "I, however": often **idem** introduces a contrast.—**Ipse**: scil. **coepi** from the **coepit** following.—**Litteris**: the statement from **nam cum** to **liberatus** does not occur in Thucydides. Herodotus (viii, 110) says that the message sent to Xerxes by Sicinnus was verbal, not written.—**Id agi**: see note on **id agi**, Chap. V.—**Quam ... adeptus**: see note on **quae contumelia** (Chap. I): for the indicative, p. 307, 13, (*a*).—**Quas = de quibus.**—**Annuum ... tempus**, not "annual" but "a year's time."

Chapter X.—**Huius**: does not agree with **animi.**—**Admirans cupiensque**: here equivalent to *causal* clauses: "because he admired his magnanimity and wished."—**Veniam**: "permission."—**Commodius ... verba fecisse**: "to have spoken with greater facility." **In Perside**: scil. **terra.**—**Cum ... esset pollicitus**: for **cum** causal, see p. 297, 4.—**Illud**: "the following," referring to the clause **illum ... oppressurum.**—**Asiam**: *i.e.*, as if to the Roman province of Asia, which comprised Caria, Lydia, Mysia, and Phrygia except Lycaonia.—**Magnesiae**: this was Magnesia on the Maeander, in Caria. Another Magnesia was in Northern Lydia, near Sardis, called **Magnesia ad Sipylum.**—**Donarat**: = **donaverat.**—**Quae ... praeberet**: for **quae** final, see p. 294, 5: so **unde ... sumeret** and **ex qua ... haberet.**—**Oppidum**: *i.e.*, Magnesia.—**In quo**: scil. **sepulchro.** Thucydides (1, 138) says that the remains of Themistocles, according to his wish, were buried secretly in Attica. In the time of Pausanias, the tomb of Themistocles was pointed out near the harbour of Piraeus.—**Potissimum**: adverb: "above all others."—**Neque negat**: "yet admits," "without denying": literally, "but he does not deny."—**Venenum**: the common report was that his death was caused by drinking bull's blood. Thucydides (1, 138) says that he committed suicide.—**Quoniam ..., concederetur**: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11, note.

ARISTIDES.

Chapter I.—Themistocli: genitive with **aequalis**, "a contemporary." —**De principatu**: "for the first position in the state."—**Obtrectarunt = obtrectaverunt**: see Vocab. under **obtrecto.**—**In his**: "in the case of these men."—**Quanto ... innocentiae**: "how much eloquence outweighs integrity": for the mood of **antestaret**: p. 291, 1: for the case of **innocentiae**, p. 278, 7.—**Quamquam ... excellebat**: p. 302, 1, (*a*).—**Quem ... audierimus**: "at least of those whom we have heard of." **Qui** consecutive is often used to express *limitation;* as, **quod sciam**, "As far as I know." —**Collabefactus**: according to Grote, the rivalry arose from the fact that Aristides was opposed to the policy of Themistocles, which aimed at making Athens a sea-power.—**Testula illa**: note **illa**, "that well-known": see note on **testularum suffragiis** (Them., viii).—**Qui quidem cum intellegeret**: "and when he observed." Note the intensive force of **quidem** after a relative = γέ in Greek: for **qui cum** see note on **qui cum ... parentibus** (Them., 1).—**Cedens**: "as he was retiring from the struggle."—**Scribentem**: "as he was writing": *i.e.*, the name of Aristides on the tablet. No name was officially proposed for ostracism, and the voter could write any name he wished. Plutarch tells the story that the man could not write, and asked Aristides to write his own name, which he did.—**Quod ... laborasset**: scil. **Aristides**: for the subjunctive see p. 307, 11, note: see Vocab. under **laboro.**—**Postquam ... quam**: **quam** is regularly used for **postquam** when **post** or **postquam** has just preceded. The pluperfect is used with **postquam** when a definite time is stated (as here, **sexto anno**); otherwise, the perfect indicative is used. Aristides was banished 484 B.C., and recalled 480 B.C., about the time of the battle of Salamis.—**Populi scito**: "a decree of the people" = ψήφισμα. The resolutions of the **plebs** in the **Comitia Tributa** at Rome were called **plebis scita** (**scitum**, from **scisco**, *to approve*).

Chapter II.—Interfuit pugnae: p. 278, 7. He had no command, though he was one of the ten generals the following year.—**Facta est**: it is said that he joined the Athenian army the night before the battle.— **Praetor**: here = στρατηγός, general. Contrary to usage Aristides was made sole commander of the Athenians at Plataeae, though Pausanias led the united Greeks.—**Huius imperii memoria**: "the record of this command."—**Multa**: scil. **sunt illustria facta**, from the **illustre factum** before: "there are many striking instances."—**Factum est**: join with **ut summa ... Athenienses**: the treasury of the Confederacy of Delos was at Delos; but after the first ten years of the league (about 466 B.C.) it was transferred to Athens.

Chapter III.—Quos = et eos: quo: p. 294, 4.—**Ad ... constitueret**: the order is: **Aristides delectus est qui constitueret quantum pecuniae quaeque civitas daret ad classes aedificandas exercitusque comparandos. Constitueret**: p. 294, 5.—**Quantum pecuniae**: p. 280, 3.— **Daret**: p. 291, 1.—**Qua ... abstinentia**: abl. of quality: p. 284, 12.— **Quam quod**: "than the fact that," a **quod**-clause used in apposition to the subject: p. 293, 2, top of page.—**Cum ... praefecisset**: on **cum** (though) concessive, see p. 303, 5.—**Qui efferretur**: "wherewith to be buried."—

Qui: an old ablative form used in **quicum** = **quocum.** For the subjunctive see p. 294, 5.—**Reliquerit**: p. 295, 1.—**Ut . . . collocarentur**: according to Plutarch they received each 3,000 drachmas (about $530 of our money).

HANNIBAL.

Chapter I.—**Verum est . . . ut . . . superarit**: the construction of **verum est ut** with the subjunctive (instead of acc. with inf.) is on the analogy of **ut** after impersonal verbs and phrases like **accidit ut, verisimile est ut, falsum est ut,** etc.—**Non est infitiandum**: scil. **nobis**: "we must not deny."—**Cum eo . . . Italia**: construe, **nam quotienscumque (Hannibal) congressus est in Italia cum eo (populo).** This is not true, as Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus at Nola in Campania, B.C. 215.—**Nisi . . . esset**: he refers to the opposition of the peace party at Carthage which was led by Hanno.—**Videtur**: Latin prefers the personal construction with verbs of *saying, seeming,* etc.—**Ut deposuerit**: construe **ut deposuerit animam priusquam (deposuit) id,** *i.e.*, **odium.**—**Qui quidem**: for *causal* **qui,** see p. 298, 5: "since he, indeed."—**Animo**: "in his heart," "in intention."

Chapter II.—**Ut omittam**: see Vocab. under **omitto.**—**Absens**: equivalent to a concessive clause: "though he was not with him."—**Ut . . . conatus sit**: for mood, p. 295, 1.—**Italiae**: p. 278, 6.—**Ad quem cum**: Roman ambassadors visited Antiochus at Ephesus and found Hannibal there.—**Qui . . . explorarent darentque operam**: p. 294, 5.—**Ut . . . adducerent**: cf. **in suspicionem alicui venio,** "I am suspected by some one": see Vocab. under **suspicio.** The Roman ambassadors pretended to be friends of Hannibal in order to make Antiochus distrust him.—**Tamquam . . . sentire**: "of entertaining, as though corrupted by them, opinions different from those he had before": **sentire** depends on **suspicionem**: note the force of **atque** with **alia**: see note on **alio . . . atque** (Them., Chap. VI).—**Neque . . . fecissent**: supply **cum** from the preceding: "and when they were successful in their scheme, and when Hannibal discovered it and found himself excluded from the king's privy councils, then he went to the king at a time appointed."—**De fide sua**: scil. **erga regem Antiochum**: "of his loyalty to King Antiochus."—**Puerulo me**: abl. abs.: p. 284, 14.—**Iovi optimo maximo**: Nepos substitutes "Jove, the best and the greatest" for Baal, the supreme deity of the Carthaginians.—**Vellemne**: "whether I would like": dependent question: p. 291, 1.—**Ab eo petere . . . ne dubitaret**: p. 306, 3. Note that **dubito** in the sense of *hesitate* takes the infinitive: in the sense of *doubt,* if negative, it takes **quin** with subjunctive: p. 296, 6.—**Tenentem**: scil. **me**: "while I held my hand upon it." It was customary when taking a solemn oath to lay one's hands on the horns of the altar or, at least, to touch some part of it.—**In amicitia . . . fore** := **amicum esse futurum**: "that I would never be friendly."—**Conservavi**: a pres. perfect, "I have kept."—**Reliquo tempore**: "for the rest of my life."—**Eadem mente**: abl. of quality: p. 284, 12.—**Celaris** = **celaveris**: fut. perf.: p. 301, 2, (2), (*a*): so also **posueris.**

Chapter III.—**Hac . . . aetate**: abl. of quality depending on Hannibal understood: p. 284, 12.—**Qua diximus** := "which we have said": abl.

qual.—**Suffecto**: a magistrate was called **suffectus** who was elected to complete the unexpired term of another magistrate who had died or been deposed.—**Hoc**: Hasdrubal. He was assassinated by a Spaniard whose master had been killed by Hasdrubal.—**Delatum**: "reported."—**Annis**: more commonly **annos**: see p. 285, 6.—**Proximo triennio**: p. 284, 2.—**Foederatam**: the Carthaginians held the part of Spain south of the Ebro; the Romans occupied the part north of the Ebro. Saguntum was south of the river, but was in alliance with Rome, which guaranteed her independence.—**Comparavit**: Hannibal rather divided his army into three parts.—**Saltum**: either "pass," or "chain," near the coast.—**Nemo unquam**: this is not correct, as we know that the Gauls often made inroads into the Roman territory through the Alpine passes. According to Polybius, Hannibal crossed by the Little St. Bernard Pass (**Alpes Graiae**), but Livy says he crossed by Mt. Genèvre (**Alpes Cottiae**).—**Alpicos**: "Alpine tribes." The mountain villagers annoyed Hannibal in his ascent, but there was no pitched battle, as Nepos would have us believe.—**Concĭdit**: distinguish this in meaning and derivation from **concīdit**.—**Itinera muniit**: note the expression, **iter munire**, "to build a military road."—**Ornatus**: "fully equipped." Note the antithesis in the latter part of the sentence.

Chapter IV.—**Conflixerat ... pepulerat**: there was no regular battle at the Rhone, though the Romans routed the Numidian cavalry which Hannibal sent out to reconnoitre.—**Clastidii**: Nepos confuses the battle of Clastidium with that at the river Ticinus. After passing the Ticinus, Hannibal took Clastidium.—**Decernit ... dimittit**: historic presents.—**Apud Trebiam**: Scipio was not present at Trebia, for he had not yet recovered from the wound he received at the battle of Ticinus. The battle of Trebia was fought in December, 218 B.C.—**Inde**: "after that"; in the spring of 217 B.C.—**Appenninum**: scil. **montem**.—**Dextro**: scil. **oculo**: Livy says (xxii, 1) that he lost the sight of one eye completely.—**Lectica**: Livy says that he was at this time carried by the only elephant left.—**C. Flaminium**: he gave his name to the **Via Flaminia**, the great road leading north from Rome which he repaired when he was *censor*.—**Praetorem**: C. Centenius was not *praetor* but *propraetor*.—**Obviam**: see Vocab. under **obviam**.—**Paulum**: Lucius Aemilius Paulus was wounded at Cannae, 216 B.C., and refused to save himself by flight.

Chapter V.—**Romam**: Hannibal did not march at once on Rome after the battle of Cannae. In 211 B.C., five years after the battle of Cannae, he went there and encamped for a short time on the hills around the city.—**Fabius Maximus**: appointed dictator in 217 B.C., the year before Cannae. The escape from Maximus took place in 217 B.C., not after Cannae, as Nepos states.—**Clausus**: concessive: "though enclosed."—**Dedit verba**: see Vocab. under **do**.—**Obducta nocte**: see Vocab. under **obduco**.—**M. Minucius Rufus**: the dilatory policy of Fabius caused the Romans to appoint Minucius, the Master of the Horse, to a command equal to that of the dictator. Half of the army was given him, and he was drawn into an engagement with Hannibal, in which he was saved only by the timely arrival of Fabius. He then resigned his command.—**Ti. Sempronius Gracchus**: this happened in 212 B.C. Marcellus, not Gracchus, was consul at this time. The correct expression is **bis consulem**, "who had

been twice consul," not **iterum consulem**, "who had been consul a second time": so also **quintum** (adv.), not **quinquies consulem**. He was cut off by Mago, at Campi Veteres, in Lucania, near Beneventum. M. Claudius Marcellus, the conqueror of Syracuse, was slain, not after, but during his fifth consulship, 208 B.C., near Venusia.—**Sustulit**: from **tollo**.—**Pari modo**: by getting him into an ambush in the neighborhood of Venusia.—**Longum est**: "it would be tedious." The indicative is often used in expressions of *necessity*, *propriety* for the subjunctive as apodosis of an implied condition as here = **si ennumerarem...longum esset**: cf. p. 301, 3.

Chapter VI.—**Hinc**: from Italy.—**Defensum**: p. 289, 1. This was in 203 B.C., when the Romans, having conquered Spain and confined Hannibal to Bruttium and Lucania, crossed over to Africa and threatened Carthage.—**Fugarat** = **fugaverat.**—**In praesentiarum**: see Vocab. under **praesentia.** **Quo...congrederetur**: p. 294, 4.—**Condiciones non convenerunt**: "the terms were not agreed upon." We might also say **de condicionibus non convenerunt**, "they did not agree on the terms."—**Incredibile dictu**: p. 175. The statement here is absurd. It is not known where Zama was. Polybius says it was five days' march west of Carthage. Others say that Hadrumetum and Zama were about one hundred miles apart.—**Biduo**: scil. **spatio.**—**Oppressit**: "crushed." **Paucis diebus**: p. 284, 2.

Chapter VII.—**Nihilo secius**: see Vocab. under **nihilo.**—**Resque ...gessit**: "and he carried on the war."—**Consules**: the Romans marked their year by the names of the consuls. These were in office B.C. 200.—**His magistratibus**: either abl. of time *when*, or abl. absolute.—**Qui... agerent**: p. 294, 5.—**Quod ... fecissent ... donarent ... peterent**: the subjunctives show that the words of the ambassadors were used: p. 297, 3. Note that we say either **donare coronam homini** or **donare corona hominem.**—**Cum iis** = **secum**: so **obsides eorum** = **obsides sui.**—**Ut... Fregellis essent**: "might be allowed to live at Fregellae."—**Ex senatus consulto**: the presiding magistrate was said **senatum consulere**, hence "an order of the senate" was called **senatus consultum.**—**Rogarent... foret ... haberent**: subjunctive of dependent clauses of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Rex**: two magistrates called **Suffetes** were elected at Carthage for a fixed period. The word **Suffetes** is connected with the Hebrew word **Shophetim**, "judges." Nepos translates it by **reges.**—**Vectigalibus**: the **vectigalia** were taxes raised from conquered lands, crown lands, imports and exports.—**Quae...penderetur**: p. 296, 5; so also **reponeretur.**—**Senatus daretur**: **dare senatum**, "to grant a hearing in the senate"; for subjunctive, p. 299, 8.—**Quae comprehenderent**: p. 294, 5.—**Si possent consequi**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Publicarunt** = **publicaverunt**: all moneys realized from goods confiscated became a part of the state treasury (**publicum aerarium**).

Chapter VIII.—**Consulibus**: 193 B.C.—**Africam accessit**: "landed in Africa in the territory of the Cyrenaeans.—**Si...inducerentur**: "in the hope that they might," etc.: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Antiochi spe fiduciaque**: objective genitive, p. 281, 7: "by their hope in, and reliance upon, Antiochus."—**Cui...persuaserat**: the truth is that Hannibal had tried to persuade Antiochus to invade Italy and had failed.—**Huc**: to Cyrene.—**Desperatis rebus**: see Vocab. under

desperare.—**Memoria**: "tradition": the usual account is that he was wounded in 203 B.C. in Cisalpine Gaul, and that he died of his wound on his return to Africa.—**Interfectum**: note the *zeugma:* "he perished by shipwreck and was assassinated by his slaves."—**Propius Tiberi**: **prope** is not usual with a dative in good Latin, the regular construction being the accusative or the ablative with **ab**: as, **tam prope urbem**, or **ab urbe**, "so near the city." So also **propius** and **proxime.**—**Thermopylis**: Antiochus was defeated there by the Romans (191 B.C.). He then withdrew to Asia, and was in the following year defeated at Magnesia in Lydia.—**Etsi ... videbat**: p. 303, 2.—**Praefuit ... navibus**: p. 278, 7.—**Iisque**: scil. **navibus**: abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5.—**Quo ... superior**: *i.e.*, **ipse fuit superior in eo cornu in quo rem gessit.**

Chapter IX.—**Fugato**: at Magnesia (190 B.C.).—**Verens ne dederetur**: p. 294, 8.—**Si ... potestatem**: "if he (Hannibal) had given them power over him": *i.e.*, "if he had fallen into their hands": p. 301, (3), (*b*).—**Quo ... conferret**: p. 291, 1.—**Nisi quid providisset**: **quid**=**aliquid**: "unless he took some precaution": p. 306, note.—**Illorum ... his**: both pronouns refer to the Gortyni.—**Statuas aëneas**: perhaps hollow with movable heads.—**Domi**: p. 285, 3.

Chapter X.—**Suis rebus**: "his property."—**Poenus**: *i.e.*, Hannibal.—**Apud quem**: "at whose court."—**Eodem animo**: p. 284, 12.—**Minus... robustum**: "not strong enough." **Minus** + adj. = "not."—**Utrobique**=**terra marique.**—**Quem si removisset**: scil. Hannibal: p. 306, note.—**Erant decreturi**: "they had intended to decide the matter": p. 290, 3, middle of page.—**Imperavit colligi**: the infinitive passive is sometimes used with **impero.** What is the regular construction? p. 292, 1.—**Cum effecisset**: "when he had collected": p. 300, 10.—**A ceteris ... defendere**: "to be content only to defend themselves from the others." Note that **habeo** is used with an adverb. The expression is equivalent to **esse** with an adjective: cf. ἔχω in Greek.—**Id ... consecuturos**: scil. **esse dixit.**—**In qua ... veheretur**: p. 291, 1.—**Magno iis ... praemio**: p. 279, 12.—**Fore**=**id futurum esse.**

Chapter XI.—**Deducitur**: see Vocab. under **deduco.**—**Quarum**: scil. **classium.**—**Priusquam ... daretur**: p. 299, 7.—**Caduceo**: a herald's staff was originally an olive branch twined with garlands. Afterwards the garlands were changed to serpents. Hermes (Mercury) as the messenger of the gods is represented with a **caduceus.**—**Mittit**: historic present: hence the imperfect subjunctive **faceret**: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—**Quod ... dubitabat**: p. 297, 3.—**Quin ... esset scriptum**: p. 296, 6.—**Soluta**: an ordinary letter would consist of two wax tablets fastened together with a string.—**Quae ... pertineret**: consecutive relative: p. 296, 5.—**Posset**: p. 297, 4.—**Conici coepta sunt**: the passive of **coepi** is used when the dependent inf. is passive.—**Nova re**: "by the novelty of the attack."—**Consilio**: "by stratagem."

Chapter XII.—**Dum ... geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**Patres conscripti**: "the Senators": so called because the Senate probably consisted originally of the heads of families making up the citizens of Rome: **conscripti**="enrolled in the list of citizens."—**Qui ... existimarent**: **qui** causal: p. 298, 5.—**Qui ...**

...**peterent**: **qui** final: p. 294, 5.—**Dederet**: supply **ut** before **dederet** from the preceding **ne.**—**Ipsi** ... **comprehenderent**: for imperat. of direct: =**vos, si potestis, comprehendite.**—**Inventuros**: scil. **dixit eos esse.**—**Ei**...**muneri**: p. 279, 12.—**Ne usu veniret**: literally, "lest it should come in actual experience": **usu** is an ablative of manner, or, if an old form for **usui**, a dative of purpose.—**Puer ab ianua**: "the door-boy," "the slave at the door": cp. Horace, Od. I, 29, 7; **puer ex aula**, "the hall-boy," "the waiter."—**Consuerat**=**consueverat.**

Chapter XIII.—**Acquievit**: a euphemism for **mortuus est.**—**Septuagesimo**: Hannibal was born in 247 B.C., and would have been 63, 64, 65 years of age at these dates, according as the consuls mentioned held office 183, 182, 181 respectively.—**Annali suo**: scil. **libro**: "in his chronicle."—**Nonnihil temporis**: partitive genitive: "some time."—**Ad Rhodios**: "addressed to the Rhodians."—**Huius**: Hannibal.

NOTES ON CAESAR.

BOOK IV.

Chapter I.—Qui fuit annus: "Which was the year of the consulship of," etc.—**Consulibus**: abl. of quality: literally, "of Pompey and Crassus consuls."—**Quo**: "into which."—**Quod**: "the fact that," explaining **causa transeundi**: p. 293, 2.—**Complures annos**: p. 284, 4.—**Bello**: abl. of instr.: p. 283, 5.—**Agricultura**: p. 282, 1.—**Pagos**: "Cantons," country districts of undefined extent: cp. French *pays*. Trace the origin of our words *pagan, heathen*.—**Singula millia**: "a thousand from each canton": p. 69, 8, (*a*).—**Qui . . . manserunt . . . alunt**: the perfect combined with the present denotes repetition: "The rest who remain at home, maintain."—**Domi**: p. 286, top of page.—**Anno post**: p. 284, 3.—**Ratio atque usus**: see Vocab. under **ratio**.—**Agri . . . nihil**: p. 280, 3. The **ager privatus** was "the land belonging to the individual," as opposed to the **ager publicus**, "the land belonging to the state": **ager separatus** was "land marked out by boundaries."—**Longius** = **diutius** (see note on **dedit operam**, Nepos, Them. VII): **longe** may be said of space, but not of time: though **longius**, and **longissime** may be said of both.—**Frumento**: "on corn": **vivo** like **vescor** takes the abl. of means: p. 283, 10.—**Maximam partem**: adverbial acc.—**Multum sunt**: see Vocab. under **multum**.—**A pueris**: "from boyhood": cp. ἐκ παίδων.—**Nullo . . . assuefacti**: "as they are trained to no systematic performance of duty": literally, "trained to no set duty or system." Caesar refers to the restraints of civilized society, education, etc.: **assuefacio** is used also with the dative.—**Quod . . . faciant**: virtual oblique narration: "because, as they say, they do so."—**Immani . . . magnitudine**: p. 284, 12.—**In eam . . . adduxerunt**: "they have brought themselves up to such hardy habits": the imperfect subjunctive in **haberent . . . lavarentur** is irregular; we should expect the pres.: p. 295, 2.—**Locis frigidissimis**: see Vocab. under **loca**.—**Vestitus**: p. 280, 3.

Chapter II.—Mercatoribus . . . habeant: the construction is, **mercatoribus est aditus ad eos** (*i.e.*, Germanos) **magis eo (consilio) ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quae ceperint bello**: **eo**: "for this reason."—**Quibus**: final = **ut eis**: p. 294, 5.—**Quae . . . ceperint** = **talia qualia ceperunt**: p. 296, 5.—**Quam quo** = **quam eo quod**, "than for the reason that": for subjunctive **desiderent**: p. 297, 3.—**Quin etiam**: see Vocab. under **quin**.—**Impenso . . . pretio**: see Vocab. under **impensus**.—**Summi . . . laboris**: p. 280, 4.—**Equestribus proeliis**: "in cavalry engagements."—**Pedibus**: "on foot."—**Eodem . . . vestigio**: see Vocab. under **vestigium**.—**Eorum moribus**: "according to their notions": abl. of cause.—**Inertius**: "more indolent" or "more unskilful."—**Quamvis pauci**: "however few."

Chapter III.—Publice: "as a nation" opposed to **privatim**, "as an individual."—**Quam latissime**: p. 143, note.—**A suis finibus**: "on the side of their territories": so below **a Suebis**.—**Hoc . . . posse**: "by this

(they suppose) is shown the fact that a great number of states **cannot withstand their power**": the subject of **significari** are the words **magnum... posse.—Agri**: subject of **dicuntur**: note the personal use: see note on **videtur** (Nep., Hannibal, Chap. I).—**Succedunt**: see Vocab. under **succedo.—Ut... Germanorum**: see Vocab. under **captus.—Paulo**: join with **humaniores**. Note that **propterea quod** like the simple **quod** takes the indicative when stating facts: p. 297, 3.—**Moribus assuefacti**: "made familiar with Gallic habits": see note on **nullo ... assuefacti** (Caes., B. IV, Chap. I).—**Cum**: "although," answered by **tamen**: p. 303, 5.—**Ac ... redegerunt**: "and they reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength," *i.e.*, than they originally had. The distinction between **multum** and **multo** is this: the former is used with verbs, and the latter with comparative adjectives and adverbs.

Chapter IV.—Causa: "condition."—**Multis ... locis**: **in** is omitted with **locus** when qualified with an adjective.—**Vi contendere**: "to dispute a passage by force."—**Reverti**: note that the forms of **revertor** from the present are passive in form, and from the perfect are active.—**Tridui**: scil. **spatii**: p. 280, 4.—**Equitatu**: abl. of instrument or of accompaniment with **cum** omitted.—**Priusquam ... certior fieret**: p. 299, 8.—**Reliquam partem**: p. 284, 4.—**Eorum copiis**: "with their supplies": *i.e.*, the supplies of the Menapii.

Chapter V.—Quod sunt: p. 297, 3.—**Student**: see Vocab. under **studeo.—Nihil ... existimavit**: "he thought that no confidence at all should be placed in them": **nihil**=an emphatic **non.—Est ... consuetudinis**: "now this is a characteristic of Gallic custom": p. 279, 2.—**Uti ... cogant ... quaerant ... circumstat ... cogant**: explanatory of **hoc.—Audierit aut cognoverit**: indirect questions, p. 291, 1. The latter verb implies personal experience. Note the change in number in **circumstat** and **cogant.** The questions are put by the individuals comprising the **vulgus.** Decline **vulgus**: p. 230, foot note.—**Rebus**: "the facts" they hear from the merchants.—**Auditionibus**: "the hearsays."—**In vestigio**: see Vocab. under **vestigium.—Quorum ... poenitere necesse est**: "of which they are bound to repent at once": **eos poenitere** is the subject of **necesse est,** literally, "of which that they repent is necessary."—**Plerique**: scil. **viatores.—Ficta respondeant**: depending on **cum**: see Vocab. under **fictus.**

Chapter VI.—Qua ... cognita: the relative serves as the connecting link of the two chapters: "now as he knew this custom": see note on **quae contumelia** (Nepos, Them., Chap. I).—**Ne ... occurreret ... proficiscitur**: note that **proficiscitur** is a historic present, and has the force of a secondary tense in sequence: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—**Ea ... facta**: scil. **fuisse.—Uti ... discederent ... quae postulassent**: p. 305, 2.—**Fore parata**: **fore** with a perf. part. pass. in indirect represents a fut. perf. in direct.—**Qua spe**: "and by hope of this": cp. **hoc metu** (Caes., B. V, Chap. XIX).—**Clientes**: "dependents" on certain persons belonging to patrician families of Rome who acted as **patroni** or counsellors in the law courts for the **clientes.** Hence perhaps our present meaning. Caesar means that the Treveri were the protectors of the Eburones and

Condrusi.—Ea quae cognoverat: the relative is merely explanatory to **ea**, and not a part of Caesar's thoughts; hence, the indicative: p. 307, 13, (*a*), (*b*).—**Imperato**: "levied": abl. absolute. What two meanings has **impero**?

Chapter VII.—Quibus in locis: Caesar often repeats the antecedent in the relative clause.—**Haec**: here refers to what comes after: "as follows."—**Neque priores . . . inferre**: in direct speech we should have: **nos Germani neque priores . . . inferimus.—Lacessantur**: a reported speech generally depends on an historical tense and the subjunctives are usually imperfect or pluperfect. Here Caesar uses the present or perfect subjunctive **(possederint)** as more vivid.—**Quin . . . contendant**: "still (they say) they do not decline to fight, if they are attacked."—**Quin**: p. 294, 7.—**Resistere neque deprecari**: the infinitives are explanatory of **consuetudo**, and might have been replaced by **ut** with the subjunctive: p. 293, 3.—**Attribuant . . . patiantur**: what would these be in direct narration?: p. 306, 3.—

Chapter VIII.—Quae visum est: scil. **respondere**: literally, "which it seemed good to reply."—**Si . . . remanerent**: the tense is due to **respondit**: p. 307, 8. The succeeding present subjunctives give vividness to the narrative.—**Verum**: "fair," "just."—**Qui . . . potuerint**: the perfect gives vividness and includes the present: "since they (hitherto) have not been capable, and are not (now) capable": **qui** causal: p. 298, 5.—**Tantae praesertim: praesertim** strengthens a previous statement by adding a fresh reason: "which can be granted rightly, and that too, to so vast a horde."

Chapter IX.—Post diem tertium: "the third day from that time": "the next day but one," as the Romans reckoned inclusively.—**Propius se**: see note on **propius Tiberi** (Nepos, Hannibal, Chap. VIII).—**Ne . . . quidem**: *i.e.*, no more than their other demands.—**Aliquot diebus ante**: abl. of difference: so also with **post**: p. 283, 7; 284, 3.—**Interponi**: "was introduced": **interponere** means, "to throw an obstacle in the way": cf. **hoc decreto interposito**: "this decree having put an end to the discussion."

Chapter X.—Mosa . . . influit: the reading in the text is Kraner's suggestion. At present both the Meuse and the Rhine flow into the German Ocean, and are connected by the Waal. The Meuse can be said to flow into the Rhine only by regarding the Meuse when joining the Waal as "flowing into the Rhine."—**Insulam . . . Batavorum**: the word **Batavi** still exists in the form **Betuwe** (meaning "good meadow"), a name applied to one of the islands in the Rhine.—**Ex Leopontiis**: "in the country of the Leopontii": the name of the people is put here, as we often find in Caesar, for the country. The source of the Rhine is in Mount St. Gothard.—**Longo spatio**: "after a long distance": abl. abs.—**Citatus fertur**: "flows with a swift stream."—**Sunt qui . . . existimantur**: note the **indicative with sunt qui,** referring to a definite antecedent. Distinguish in

meaning the expressions **sunt qui credunt** and **sunt qui credant**: p. 296, 5, (*a*).—**Piscibus . . . ovis . . vivere**: see note on **frumento vivunt** (Caes., B. IV, Chap. I).—**Capitibus**: here **caput** is "the mouth" of a river: other writers use it in the sense of "the source."

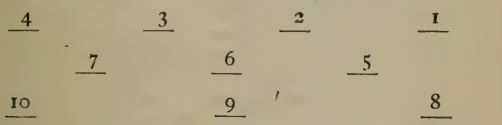
Chapter XI.—**Amplius . . . millibus**: abl. of extent or difference: p. 283, 7; 286, 3. Note that **amplius, plus, minus** in such cases have no influence on the construction.—**Ut . . . constitutum**: see Caes., B. IV, Chap. IX.—**Uti . . . praemitteret**: the construction is **uti praemitteret (nuntios) ad eos equites qui antecessissent agmen**: the **qui** clause may be either a purpose relative clause (p. 294, 5), or a consequence relative clause (p. 296, 5).—**Pugna prohiberet**: p. 282, 1.—**Potestatem faceret**: see Vocab. under **potestas**.—**Fidem fecisset**: "would give them assurance": note that the verb either agrees with the nearest nominative or the expression **principes ac senatus** may be taken together as equivalent to a noun of multitude.—**Quae . . . ferretur**: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—**Daret**: equivalent to imperative **da** in direct narration: p. 306, 3.—**Eodem illo pertinere**: "pointed in that same direction": see Vocab. under **pertineo**.—**Eodem illo pertinere** is explained by the substantival clause **ut**.—**Qui abessent**: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—**Convenirent = convenite** of the direct: p. 306, 3.—**Mittit**: scil. **nuntios**: note the historical present as seen in the sequence of the subsequent verbs: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—**Qui nuntiarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Et . . . sustinerent**: scil. **hostes**: "and to hold the enemy in check."—**Quoad . . . accessisset**: p. 306, note.

Chapter XII.—**At**: see note on **at** (Nepos, Them., Chap. III).—**Ubi primum**: p. 298, 2.—**Quorum . . . quinque millium numerus**: note the double genitive after **numerus**: for **quinque millium**: p. 280, 4.—**Cum . . . haberent**: p. 297, 4.—**Octingentos**: see note on **amplius . . . millibus** (Caes., B. IV, Chap. XI).—**Quod ii . . . redierant**: p. 297, 3.—**Nihil timentibus nostris**: **nihil** may be taken as either the object of **timentibus**, or as an emphatic **non**.—**Indutiis**: dat. of purpose: p. 279, 12.—**Rursus resistentibus**: scil. **nostris**: "and when our men had come once more to a halt."—**Consuetudine sua** : = **ex consuetudine sua**: "according to their custom."—**Subfossis . . deiectis**: these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate in time: "after stabbing our horses from beneath, and, in consequence, unhorsing many of our men."—**Deiectis**: scil. **de equis**.—**Prius . . . quam . . . venissent**: the object of the Romans would be to reach the main body of the army: p. 299, 8.—**Interficiuntur**: historical present.—**Genere natus**: p. 282, 3.—**Quoad potuit**: p. 298, 3.—**Cecidisset**: distinguish from **cecidisset**.—**Id**: "this mishap."

Chapter XIII.—**Neque iam**: "no longer."—**Sibi**: p. 279, 11.—**Qui . . . intulissent**: dependent clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2: so **augerentur . . . reverteretur**.—**Summae dementiae esse**: "was the height of madness," predicate genitive: p. 279, 2.—**Quantum . . . auctoritatis**: p. 280, 3.—**Essent consecuti**: p. 291, 1.—**Nihil spatii = nihil temporis**: p. 280, 3.—**Ne . . . praetermitteret**: explanatory of **consilio**: "not to let pass a battle day," *i.e.*, a favorable chance for bringing on a battle.—**Pugnae** may be either (1) a genitive like **tempus committendi proelii**, or (2) a dative of purpose.—**Quod**: explaining **res**; "the fact that."—**Postridie**

eius diei mane: "early next day."—**Postridie = posteri die**: a locative of time.—**Simul . . . simul = et . . . et**: "both . . . and."—**Sui purgandi causa**: "to clear themselves." Notice that though **sui** is plur., **purgandi** is sing.—**Quod . . . commisissent**: "for having contrary to what had been agreed upon and to what they themselves had asked, begun a battle on the day previous": the subjunctives are those of oblique narration, representing what the Germans said: p. 305, 2. With **contra atque**: cf. **alter ac.** We should have expected **contra id quod esset dictum.**—**De indutiis fallendo impetrarent**: "that they might obtain their object in regard to the truce by deception": this final clause depends on **venerunt**, and is in apposition to **sui purgandi causa**, which is equivalent to an **ut**-clause. —**Oblatos**: scil. **fuisse.**

Chapter XIV.—**Acie triplici instituta**: "drawing up his men in a triple line." The whole legion was so arranged in three lines that intervals of the first line were covered by the second. The first line consisted of four cohorts, the second of three and the third of three. Each interval was equal to the front of a cohort. The men stood usually ten deep, so that a cohort presented a front of between thirty and forty men, according to the number in a legion. The cohorts were arranged thus:



Cohorts 1, 2, 3, 4 would first engage the enemy, and if they failed, or were tired, 5, 6, 7 would advance through the intervals and take their place, while the first line would reform and get breath. The third line was held in reserve and only brought into action if the first two lines proved unsuccessful.—**Millium**: scil. **passuum**: an omission for the sake of euphony, and only used with the form **millium.**—**Prius . . . quam . . . possent**: the subjunctive implies Caesar's *purpose* in making the march: p. 299, 8.—**Discessu suorum**: scil. **principum**: "by the withdrawal of their chiefs."—**Perturbantur**: equivalent to **perturbantur dubitatione**: "were distracted with doubt": an historic present as shown by sequence of tense.—**Ne . . . an . . . an**: for **utrum . . an . . . an.**—**Uno loco**: for omission of **in**, see note on **multis locis**, B. IV, Chapter IV.—**Puerorum mulierumque**: "consisting of women and children": genitive of definition: p. 281, 8.

Chapter XV.—**Suos**: their wives and children.—**Ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni**: either where the Waal (which flows into the Meuse) leaves the Rhine, or where the Waal joins the Meuse.—**Fuga desperata**: Cicero uses **desperare fugam**; Caesar always **desperare de fuga** except in the ablative absolute.—**Ex tanti belli timore**: "freed from the alarm of so serious a war"; or concessive, "great though the alarm of the war had been."—**Quadringentorum . . . millium**: gen. of description.—**Apud eum = in castris**: "with him."

Chapter XVI.—**Iustissima**: "most valid."—**Quod** explains **illa**: "namely that."—**Suis . . . voluit**: "he wished them to have fears for the

safety of their own dominions as well."—**Timere** may take a dative of the person or thing for the safety of which fear is entertained.—**Quoque**: *i.e.*, as well as make others fear for their safety.—**Accessit quod**: "there was added the fact that": p. 293, 2.—**Qui . . . postularent**: p. 294, 5.—**Intulissent**: after the virtual oblique narration implied in **postularent**: p. 305, 2.—**Dederent**: **ut** is often omitted after verbs of *command*.—**Cur . . . postularet?**: "Why should he demand that anything should be under his rule or authority?"—**Imperii . . . potestatis**: scil. **esse** = "belong to." The former refers to *military* authority, which was practically unlimited outside the city; the latter is *official* power delegated to one by virtue of his office.—**Quod . . . premerentur**: the subjunctive of oblique narration introduced by **orabant**: "because (as they alleged) they were being hard pressed": p. 307, 11.—**Si . . . prohiberetur**: "if he was prevented from doing so by being engrossed with political affairs": with **prohibeo** we have **quominus, ne** or the infinitive as here: p. 294, 6.—**Transportaret**: *i.e.* (**Ubii orabant ut**) **exercitum transportaret**: "(the Ubii asked that) he would merely lead his army across the Rhine," *i.e.*, make merely a military demonstration.—**Id . . . futurum**: "that this would be enough to aid them (for the present), and to give them hope for the future."—**Sibi** = **Ubiis.**—**Ad**: "as regards."—**Opinionem eius exercitus**: **exercitus** = objective genitive to **opinionem**: "the opinion that others had of his army."—**Nomen atque opinionem** = "prestige."—**Ariovisto pulso et . . . facto**: translate the participles by nouns; "by the defeat of Ariovistus and the occurrence of the very recent battle."—**Opinione et amicitia populi Romani**: **populi Romani** is objective genitive to **opinione** and subjective to **amicitia**: "by the reputation the Roman people had and the friendship they had for the Roman people."—**Tuti**: passive in meaning from **tueor**: occasionally deponent verbs have perf. participles in a passive sense.

Chapter XVIII.—**Diebus decem quibus**: "in ten days from the time that timber began to be collected": abl. of time within which: p. 284, 2. **Coepta erat**: p. 146, 4.—**Quibus . . . petentibus**: "to whose request for peace and friendship": = **quibus quum peterent.**—**Fuga comparata, hortantibus iis**: these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate; the latter depends on the former: "had made preparations for flight owing to the advice of those of the Tencteri and Usipetes."—**Finibus suis excesserant**: **excedo** may take either acc. or abl., or abl. with **ex.**—**In solitudinem ac silvas**: a hendiadys: "into the uninhabited forest."

Chapter XIX.—**Succisis**: "cut down and destroyed": it was now some time before harvest. Caesar did not wish so much to use the corn as to prevent the Ubii from obtaining it.—**Uti . . . demigrarent**: depends on the idea of *ordering* contained in **nuntios dimisisse**: "telling them to": p. 292, 1. Translate this into direct narration.—**Hunc**: "that this was the rendezvous."—**Delectum**: here is "a place for holding a levy," a rendezvous. Usually it means "a levy."—**Medium . . . regionum**: "that lies almost in the centre of the districts that the Suebi held."—**Quarum rerum causa**: "for which." Note the repetition of the antecedent with the relative.—**Ut . . . liberaret**: these clauses are in apposition to **omnibus rebus his.**—**Satis . . . profectum**: scil. **fuisse**; "that enough had been successfully accomplished."

Chapter XX.—Exigua . . . reliqua: abl. abs.: "when but little of the summer was left."—**Ad septentriones vergit**: see Vocab. under **vergo**.—**Quod . . . intellegebat**: p. 297, 3.—**Si . . . deficeret**: so **adisset, perspexisset, cognovisset**: p. 305, 2.—**Magno . . . adisset**: "he thought it would be of great advantage to him merely to have visited the island": the clauses **si, adisset, perspexisset, cognovisset** are subjects of **fore**.—**Sibi usui**: p. 279, 12.—**Quisquam . . . quicquam**: p. 132, 3.—**Contra Gallias**: the divisions of Gaul: **Belgica, Celtica, Aquitania**.—**Incolerent**: p. 291, 1. So also **haberent, uterentur, essent**.

Chapter XXI.—Priusquam . . . faceret: "before he made the attempt," "before running the risk": p. 299, 8.—**In Morinos**: see note on **ex Lepontiis**, B. IV, Chap. X.—**Inde**: the country of the **Morini**: see Vocab. under **Morini**.—**Qui polliceantur**: p. 294, 5.—**Dare**: there is usually a future infin. with an accusative of a noun or pronoun with verbs of *promising*, etc., p. 289, 4.—**Ut . . . permanerent**: "to adhere to that policy."—**Commium**: the Atrebates were defeated at the Sambre (B. II, 23). Some escaped and settled in Berkshire. Commius was probably selected owing to the fact that being king on the continent he would have more influence over his countrymen in Britain.—**Magni . . . habebatur**: p. 280, 5.—**Huic . . . civitates**: the order is **imperat huic** (ut) **adeat civitates quas possit (adire)**: for the omission of **ut**, see note on **dederent**, B. IV, Chap. XVI.—**Possit**: virtual oblique.—**Fidem sequantur**: "be loyal to": literally, "support the protection of (*i.e.*, given by) the Roman people."—**Quantum**: neut. sing. adj. with partitive genitive = "as much of opportunity as," etc. Translate: "as far as he had an opportunity."—**Qui . . . auderet**: causal: "inasmuch as he did not dare": p. 298, 5.—**Revertitur . . . renuntiat**: historical presents, as seen by the sequence in **perspexisset**: p. 290, **2**, at foot of page.

Chapter XXII.—Dum . . . moratur: p. 299, 4.—**Qui . . . excusarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Superioris temporis**: p. 280, 4.—**Quod . . . fecissent**: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—**Populo Romano**: dative, "against the Roman people": probably in imitation of the Greek *μάχεσθαί τινι*.—**Seque . . . pollicerentur**: construe **legatique venerunt qui pollicerentur se facturos (esse) ea quae imperasset**: the pluperfect of the indirect corresponds to the fut. perf. of the direct narration: "whatever you shall have ordered us to do, we will do."—**Has . . . occupationes**: "this business consisting of such trifles": p. 281, 8.—**Britanniae** = **bello Britannico**: "to his expedition against Britain."—**Quibus** refers to the hostages: **eos** to the Morini.—**In fidem**: see Vocab. under **fides**.—**Quod . . . existimabat**: "which amount he supposed was enough": we should have expected **quas**, but **quod** is attracted into the gender and number of **satis**, used here as an indeclinable noun.—**Quod . . . habebat**: "all the war ships he had": partitive genitive.—**Ab millibus passuum octo**: "eight miles off": distance is expressed in Caesar by accusative, ablative, or ablative with **ab** as here.—**Quominus** = **ut eo minus**: p. 294, 6.

Chapter XXIII.—Tempestatem: "weather," good or bad, according to the context.—**Tertia vigilia**: the night was divided into *four* watches. Caesar started (with the infantry) from *Port Itius*, which some say was Boulogne; others, Wissant. The **portus superior** was Ambleteuse. He

landed on the 27th of August, probably at Deal.—**Solvit**: scil. **naves**: "he set sail."—**Cum . . . esset administratum**: "since this was somewhat slowly carried out."—**Id** refers to the embarkation of the cavalry.—**Hora diei circiter quarta**: about 9.45 a.m., as the first hour at this season was at 5.3 a.m. and sun-set at 7.—**Expositas**: here for **collocatas, instructas.**—**Ita** join with **continebatur**: "was so closely bounded by precipitous mountains."—**In litus**: "to the beach," "to the water's edge." The cliffs of Dover answer the description.—**Ad egrediendum**: scil. **ex navibus**: "for disembarking."—**Dum . . . convenirent**: idea of *expectation* is implied: p. 299, 6.—**Monuitque . . . administrarentur**: the first and second **ut** = "as": the third is closely connected with **quae**; hence **ut quae** = **quippe quae**, so that **ut** must be understood with **administrarentur**: "and he enjoined upon them that everything should be carried out at the slightest hint and at the right time, as the mode of warfare, and, most of all, the marine service required, subject as it was to sudden and uncertain changes": for the omission of **ut** see note on **dederent** (B. IV, Chap. XVI).—**Aperto ac plano litore**: see note above on **tertia vigilia.**

Chapter XXIV.—**At**: see note on Them., Chap. III.—**Quo genere**: scil. **militum**: p. 283, 10. Tacitus (Agr. 12), however, says: **in pedite robur**: **quaedam nationes in curru proeliantur.**—**Prohibebant**: a *conative* imperfect: "tried to prevent."—**Quod . . . poterant**: p. 297, 3.—**Militibus**: join with **disiliendum erat**: "the soldiers had to leap down."—**Autem**: the order of the clauses is inverted; **cum illi**, "whereas they (the Britons)" should come first and should be answered by **militibus autem**: "the soldiers on the other hand."—**Ignotis locis, impeditis manibus**: abl. abs.: "in ignorance of the locality, and with hands encumbered."—**Ex arido**: "from the dry land," "standing on dry ground."—**Omnino**: with **imperiti**: "totally unpractised in this kind of warfare": p. 281, 9.—**Non . . . utebantur**: "did not show the same spirit and eagerness as they had been accustomed to display in engagements with foot soldiers." The Romans had not before this been trained to fight while wading in the water or against warriors mounted on chariots.

Chapter XXV.—**Inusitatior**: "somewhat novel."—**Motus ad usum expeditior**: "and their movement in actual service less difficult," *i.e.*, than those of the merchantmen. The war ship (**navis longa**) though longer than the merchantman (**navis oneraria**) was not so wide, and could be more easily handled because it was of lighter burden. It was fitted with oars as well as sails.—**Ad latus apertum**: "on the right flank of the enemy": the shield protected the left side.—**Usui nostris**: p. 279, 12.—**Paulum modo**: "only a little."—**Atque** at the beginning of a new sentence is rare, and usually makes a strong contrast between what follows and what precedes: "and then."—**Qui . . . aquilam ferebat** : = **aquilifer**: "the eagle bearer." The eagle (**aquila**) was the standard of the Roman legion, as the **signa** and **vexilla** were the standards of the cohorts and centuries.—**Nisi vultis** = **si non vultis.**—**Praestitero**: "I intend to perform" = (**quidquid accidet**), **praestitero**: "(whatever happens) I shall have performed."—**Inter se**: "each other," the Latins have no reciprocal pronoun corresponding to the Greek *ἀλλήλους*.—**Hos . . . conspexissent**: "and when those on board the nearest ships had been the first to see

them": with **ex navibus**, cp. **ex equis pugnare**: "to fight on horseback."

Chapter XXVI.—**Nostri tamen . . . hostes vero**: the clauses are inverted: see note on **autem**, B. IV, Chap. XXIV.—**Atque alius alia ex navi**: after **atque** supply **quod** from the previous clause: "and further, because some from one ship and some from another."—**Aliquos singulares**: "some isolated men."—**Ubi . . . conspexerant**: "whenever they saw": in *iterative* action, the pres., imperf., and future of the principal clause have respectively the perf., plupf., and fut. perf. in the subordinate clause. Note the force of the imperfects.—**Ab latere aperto**: see Caesar, B. IV, Chap. XXV, note on **ad latus apertum**.—**Plures**: agrees with **hostes** and in contrast to **paucos**.—**Quos conspexerat**: "whomever he saw": see note above on **ubi conspexerant**.—**Submittebat**: give the force of impf.—**Suis copiis consecutis**: "and when all their comrades had come up to them."—**Neque . . . potuerunt**: "and yet were not able."—**Hoc . . . defuit**: "this was the only thing that Caesar lacked to maintain his previous good fortune."

Chapter XXVII.—**Simul atque . . . receperunt**: p. 298, 2.—**Ex fuga**: "after the flight."—**Obsides daturos**: scil. **se esse**.—**Imperasset**: p. 305, 2.—**Supra**: see B. IV, Chapter XXI.—**Demonstraveram**: perf. more usual.—**Praemissum**: scil., **fuisse**.—**Cum . . . deferret**: "since he was bearing the commands of Caesar in the character of ambassador": p. 297, 4.—**Ut ignosceretur**: scil. **multitudini ab eo**: "that the common people would be pardoned by him": p. 278, 4.—**Quod . . . intulissent**: "of their having waged war against him": virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Ultro**: "of their own accord."—**Arcessitam**: "as they had to be brought."

Chapter XXVIII.—**His rebus**: "on these terms," or "by these means."—**Post diem quartum quam**: **post** is regarded as governing **diem**, but really belongs to **quam**, forming **postquam**. The regular construction would be **quarto die postquam**.—**Superiore portu**: probably Ambleteuse, north from Boulogne.—**Leni vento**: abl. abs.—**Solverunt**: scil. **ancoras**: "set sail."—**Sui . . . periculo**: "peril to themselves."—**Cum complerentur**: "when they were nevertheless getting filled with water in spite of the fact that they dropped their anchors."—**Tamen** opposes **ancoris iactis**.—**Adversa nocte**: "in the face of night."

Chapter XXIX.—**Nocte**: night of August 30th, 55 B.C.—**Qui dies**: regularly the construction would be: **quo die luna consuevit**, etc., the highest or spring tides occur a day after new moon and a day after full moon.—**Incognitum**: in the Mediterranean there are no tides or very slight ones at certain points. One would suppose that Caesar's soldiers would have observed the tide on the west coast of France, the previous year, when they were fighting the Veneti.—**Exercitum transportandum curaverat**: see Vocab. under **curo**.—**Quae . . . deligatae**: "which were riding at anchor."—**Funibus . . . amissis**: "owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors, and the rest of their tackling": causal abl. absolute. The abl. absolute is often equivalent to a causal clause.—**Id quod . . . accidere**: "as was unavoid-

able."—**Quod**: acc. subject of **accidere**; the phrase **quod accidere** is subject of **necesse est**.—**Quibus possent** = **ut eis possent**: "on which they could be conveyed home": consequence clause: p. 296, 5. —**Usui**: p. 279, 12.—**Omnibus constabat**: "it was agreed by all": dative of indirect object. We also find **inter omnes constare**.—**Hiemari oportere**: "that winter had to be passed."—**In hiemem**: "to last till winter."

Chapter XXX.—**Principes**: subject of **duxerunt**.—**Hoc . . . quod**: "for the reason that": p. 293, 2.—**Hoc**: abl. of means.—**Etiam angustiora**: "even narrower" than usual.—**Optimum . . . producere**: "thought the best thing to do was to renew the war, to keep our men from corn supplies and to prolong the campaign to the winter."—**Factu**: p. 175.—**His superatis . . . interclusis**: conditional abl. absolute: "if these were defeated and prevented from returning" = **Si superati essent . . si interclusi essent**.—**Reditu**: abl. of separation: p. 282, 1.—**Suos . . . deducere**: "to call back their men" from the interior to the sea-coast.

Chapter XXXI.—**Ex eventu navium**: "from the accident to his vessels": objective genitive: p. 281, 7.—**Ex eo, quod**: "from the fact (namely) that": p. 293, 2.—**Quod accidit**: "which actually did occur": for the indicative see p. 307, 13 (a).—**Subsidia**: "resources."—**Cotidie**: said of daily repetition: **in dies, in dies singulos, in diem**, said of daily increase or decrease.—**Quae . . . naves earum** = **earum navium quae**: antecedent expressed in relative clause.—**Cum . . . administraretur**: either impersonal or with **res** understood as subject.—**Reliquis . . . effecit**: literally: "he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed with the rest": "he made sailing possible with the rest."—**Navigari**: impersonal.

Chapter XXXII.—**Dum . . . geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**Frumentatum**: p. 289, 1. Caesar had with him in Britain the 7th and 10th legions.—**Interposita**: "having arisen."—**Hominum**: "inhabitants."—**Ventitaret**: frequentative: "were coming to and fro."—**Portis**: what were the names of the gates of a Roman camp?—**In statione**: "on sentry duty."—**Quam consuetudo ferret**: "than was usual": **ut** consecutive is sometimes omitted after **quam**: p. 296, 5 (c).—**In ea parte . . . quam in partem**: the antecedent repeated in the relative clause.—**Id quod erat**: "the truth," "what really was the fact." See note, Chap. XXXI, on **quod accidit**.—**Aliquid novi . . . consilii**: "some new design": partitive genitive: p. 280, 3. —**Cohortes**: with **iussit**.—**In stationibus**: see **in statione** above.—**In stationem succedere**: see Vocab. under **statio**.—**Nam quod**: "for since": **nam** is to be taken with **deliturerant** and **quod** with **erat**.—**Incertis ordinibus**: abl. abs.: "since their lines were broken": see **ordo** in Vocab. —**Circumdederant**: scil. **nostros**.

Chapter XXXIII.—**Ex essedis**: "on war chariots": cp. **ex equo pugnare**.—**Pugnae** = **pugnandi**.—**Per omnes partes**: *i.e.*, up and down between the two armies.—**Ipso terrore equorum**: "by the very terror caused by their horses": subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Ordines**: scil. **hostium**.—**Cum . . . insinuaverunt**: "whenever they work their way": note the iterative use of **cum**: see note on **ubi . . . conspexerant**, B. IV, Chap. XXVI.—**Turmas**: refers to the divisions of the British **horse**.—

Illi: the warriors, though some take it to mean the retainers (**clientes**): cp. Tacitus (Agr. 12): **Auriga honestior**: **clientes propugnant**.—**In declivi ac praecipiti loco**: "when the ground is sloping and even steep": since the verb **esse** has no pres. part. the prepositional abl. abs. (abl. + prep.) is used for it.—**Brevi**: scil. **tempore**: "in an instant."

Chapter XXXIV.—**Quibus rebus**: either (1) causal ablative, "owing to these facts," "wherefore"; (2) ablative of means with **perturbatis**: "to our men confused by these attacks from the fact that the mode of fighting was new."—**Namque**=Greek *καὶ γάρ*: "and (this was evident) for," etc. —**Quo facto**: concessive abl. abs.: "though this happened."—**Ad lacessendum**: scil. **hostes**: "for skirmishing with the enemy."—**Quae ... continerent**: consecutive relative: p. 296, 5.—**Quanta ... daretur**: "what a splendid opportunity was presented of securing booty and of freeing themselves for ever."—**Liberandi**: sing., though **sui** is plur.—**Daretur**: subjunctive: p. 291, 1, and p. 307, 11.—**His rebus**: "by these representations," referred to in the previous sentence.

Chapter XXXV.—**Idem**: subject of **fore** and explained by the clause **ut ... effugerent**: "that they (the Britons) would escape owing to their speed." They had greater mobility than the Romans.—**Diutius**: join this with **non**: "they could no longer withstand."—**Quos tanto spatio ... potuerunt**: "and pursuing them so far as their strength and speed allowed."—**Quos**=**et eos**.—**Cursu et viribus**: abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5. —**Occiderunt**: scil. **nostri milites**. Distinguish in meaning **occiderunt**.

Chapter XXXVI.—**Numerum obsidum duplicavit**: = **duplicem numerum obsidum imperavit**: hence **his** is a dative.—**Quem ... imperaverat**: see Book IV, Chap. XXVII.—**Propinqua die aequinoctii**: causal abl. abs. The date of the equinox was September 24th. As Caesar landed August 27th and left about September 24th, we can see how stubbornly the Britons must have fought, as he got no further than the shore.—**Infirmis navibus**: a causal abl. abs.—**Hiemi ... subiciendam**: scil. **esse**: "that his voyage might not be exposed to a storm."—**Eosdem ... portus**: see note on **tertia vigilia** (B. IV, Chap. XXII).

Chapter XXXVII.—**Ex navibus**: refers to the **duae onerariae** referred to at the end of Chap. XXXVI.—**Proficiscens**: "in the act of setting out"=**cum proficisceretur**.—**Non ita magno**: "with not so very large a number": this use of **ita** is confined to negative sentences.—**Si nollent**: dependent clause of oblique narration after **iusserunt**: p. 307, 11. **Orbe facto**: in cases of extreme danger the Romans formed a circle with their baggage in the centre while the soldiers faced the enemy. We should say "forming a square."—**Suis auxilio**: p. 279, 12.—**Amplius horis**: the ordinary construction would be **horas**: see note on **amplius ... millibus**, B. IV, Chap. XI.

Chapter XXXVIII.—**Siccitates**: the plural may refer to successive periods or to the dryness in different localities.—**Quo se reciperent non haberent**: "did not know where to retreat": with this meaning of **habeo** compare that of the Greek *ἔχω*: *οὐκ εἶχον ὅποι τράποιντο*. Note that **quo se reciperent** would be a deliberative subjunctive in direct=**quo nos recipiamus?** "to what place are we to retreat?"—**Quo perfugio ...**

fuerant usi: **quo** is attracted into the case of **perfugio**: "which (*i.e.* the swamps) they had used as a refuge."—**Omnino**: "in all."—**Ex litteris**: "in accordance with Caesar's despatch."—**Supplicatio**: either a thanksgiving for national success as here or a day of humiliation for national disaster.

BOOK V.

Chapter I.—**In Italiam** := **in Galliam Cisalpinam**: Italy Proper did not till 27 B.C. include *Liguria*, *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Illyricum*, though as here it often was applied to all the country south of the Alps. Caesar usually spent his winters at Lucca or Ravenna.—**Consuerat** := **consueverat**.—**Imperat (ut) curarent**: note the historic present **imperat** shown by the sequence of tense.—**Possent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Quam quibus** := **quam (eas naves) quibus**.—**In nostro mari**: the Mediterranean.—**Atque id**: scil. **facit**.—**Propter crebras commutationes**: refers to the varying currents in the channel.—**Ad onera**: scil. **transportanda** from the **transportandam** following.—**In reliquis . . . maribus**: the different parts of the Mediterranean went under various names.—**Actuarias**: "as rowing vessels," note that **impero** can take an inf. if that inf. is pass. What would be the regular construction? p. 292, 1.—**Usui**: p. 279, 12.—**Conventibus**: Caesar as proconsul held *assizes* or *courts of justice* in the chief cities of Northern Italy.—**Qui doceant**: p. 294, 5.—**Paratos satisfacere** := **paratos ad satisfaciendum**: the inf. with **esse paratos** is on the analogy of **velle**, which is equivalent to **paratos esse**.—**Fecerint**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Qui . . . aestiment . . . constituant**: p. 294, 5: **litis aestimatio** in criminal law is the assessment of the amount of damages a convicted person has to pay.

Chapter II.—**Citeriorem Galliam**: otherwise called **Gallia Cisalpina.**—**Ad exercitum**: wintering in Belgium (Book IV, Chap. XXXVIII).—**Singulari militum studio**: abl. abs.—**Cuius**: attracted into the case of the antecedent: **quod** would be regular.—**In summa . . . inopia**: prepositional abl. abs.: see note on **in praecipiti ac declivi loco** (B. IV, Chap. XXXIII); "though they were in the greatest need of all kinds of materials."—**Neque . . . possint**: "and they were almost ready to be launched in a few days": literally, "and there was not much short of that point but that they might be launched." We should expect **ut** instead of **quin**: p. 293, 1, A.—**Deduci**: see Vocab. under **deduco**.—**Huic rei**: "for carrying out this object," *i.e.*, collecting the fleet at *Portus Itius*.—**Expeditis**: "in fighting trim," *i.e.*, without heavy baggage.—**Ad concilia**: *i.e.*, the assembly of the Gallic tribes which Caesar held at Samarobriva (*Amiens*).

Chapter III.—**Alter**: "the latter," *i.e.*, Cingetorix.—**In officio**: see Vocab. under **officium**.—**Ab amicitia . . . defecturos**: see Vocab. under **deficio**.—**Gererentur**: dep. clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Cogere**: depends on **instituit** at the end of the sentence.—**Per aetatem**: might mean that they were too old or too young.—**In silvam . . . abditis**: **abdo** with **in** and accusative involves the idea of removal as well as concealment: "having been removed to the Ardennes wood and concealed there."—**Quoniam . . . non possent**: Caesar is not stating their real motive,

but what they alleged to be their motive : p. 297, 3.—Note the meaning of **consulere** with a dative: see Vocab. under **consulo.**—**Sese . . . noluisse** : the inf. depends on the notion of *saying* contained in **legatos mittit.**—**Quo facilius** : p. 294, 4.—**Laberetur** : "would fall away from their allegiance," "would revolt."

Chapter IV.—**Dicerentur . . . deterreret** : p. 291, 1.—**Nominatim** : "personally," in the summons : the selection of the rest would be left to Indutiomarus.—**Consolatus** : "reassured him" in regard to the safety of his son and relatives who were to accompany Caesar to Britain.—**Principibus . . . convocatis hos** : note the irregularity for **principes . . . convocatos** without the redundant **hos.**—**Quod = namque id.**—**Cum . . . tum** : "both . . . and."—**Merito eius** : "as a reward for (by reason of) his service" : p. 281, 7. — **Eius** : Cingetorix. — **Se** : Caesar. — **Magni interesse** : p. 282, 14.—**Qui . . . fuisset** : subjunctive of causal relative : p. 298, 5 ; and of oblique narration : p. 305, 2 : "and since he had already been unfriendly disposed towards us."—**Inimico . . . animo** : abl. of quality : p. 284, 12.—**Hoc dolore** : "at this grievance."

Chapter V. — **Equitatus** : the nobility who served as cavalry.—**Numero** : abl. of respect : p. 284, 13.—**Perspexerat** : "he had observed."—**Obsidum loco** : "as hostages."

Chapter VI.—**Magni animi, magnae . . auctoritatis** : p. 280, 4.—**Accedebat huc quod** : "to this was added the fact that," "there was the further consideration that": p. 293, 2.—**Huc : = ad hoc . . . neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa** : see Vocab. under **deprecor** : "and they did not dare to send envoys to Caesar to contradict this or to beg for mercy at his (Caesar's) hands."—**Omnibus . . . precibus** : "by all kinds of entreaties."—**Navigandi** : objective genitive depending on **insuetus** : p. 281, 7.—**Timeret . . . diceret** : the reasons given by Dumnorix were not regarded by Caesar as real reasons : p. 297, 3.—**Quod . . . diceret = quod religionibus impediretur, ut dicebat** : "because (as he said) he was prevented by religious scruples." Perhaps because Britain was the centre of Druidism.—**Territare** : historical inf.—**Non . . . fieri** : **dixit** omitted before oblique narration.—The clause **ut . . . spoliaretur** is the subject of **fieri** : so also in the next part of the sentence the clause **ut . . . necaret** is in apposition to **consilium.**—**Interponere** : the historical inf.—**Ex usu** : see Vocab. under **usus.**—**Communi consilio** : cf. **publico consilio** : see Vocab. under **consilium.**

Chapter VII.—**Caesar** : subject of **statuebat.**—**Quod . . . tribuebat** : so **quod . . . videbat** below : p. 297, 3.—**Quibuscumque rebus posset** : virtual oblique : p. 307, 11.—**Longius** : "too far."—**Prospiciendum** : scil. **statuebat** : "he made up his mind that he should adopt measures."—**Temporis = anni.**—**Dabat operam** : see Vocab. under **opera.**—**Milites peditesque : = pedites equitesque** ; the cavalry in a legion numbered 300, the infantry 4,200.—**Omnium impeditis animis** : "when the attention of all was taken up" with the embarkation.—**Retrahique imperat** : see note on **actuarias** (B. V, Chap. I).—**Si vim faciat neque pareat** : virtual oblique : p. 307, 11.—**Pro sano** : "as a sane man."—**Qui . . . neglexisset** : see note on **qui . . . fuisset** (B. V, Chap. IV).

Chapter VIII.—**Portus**: see note on **tertia vigilia** (B. IV, Chap. XXIII).—**Pro tempore et pro re**: "as time and circumstances demanded."—**Pari numero . . . quem . . . reliquerat**: instead of **quem** we should have expected **atque** or **ac**: "with the same number of cavalry as he had left": Caesar took half of his whole force of cavalry with him.—**Aestu**: the ebb tide carrying the ships from the shore.—**Eam partem insulae**: see note on **aperto ac plano littore** (B. IV, Chap. XXIII).—**Annotinis**: "those of the year before": in Chap. I he calls them **veteres**.—**Sui . . . commodi**: either a phrase governed by **causa** understood, "for the sake of his own convenience," or a descriptive genitive depending on **quas**.—**Quisque**: *i.e.*, merchants or the like.—**Amplius octingentae**: note that **amplius, plus, minus** have no influence on the construction: see on **amplius . . . millibus**, B. IV, Chap. XI.—**Superiora**: "farther up the country."

Chapter IX.—**Consedissent**: p. 291, 1.—**Qui . . . essent**: p. 294, 5.—**Praesidio navibus**: p. 279, 12.—**De tertia vigilia**: **de** with a word of *time* originally means, "starting from" a point: hence "after the third watch was set."—**Navibus**: "for his ships," dative of remote object with **metuo, timeo**.—**Quod . . . relinquebat**: p. 297, 3.—**Ut videbantur**: "apparently": note the personal use of **videor**.—**Testudine facta**: see Vocab. under **testudo**.—**Fugientes**: acc. after **prosequi**: **eos** governed by **vetuit**.—**Quod . . . ignorabat . . . volebat**: p. 297, 3.—**Munitioni castrorum**: "for the construction of the camp": cf. **castra munire**, "to encamp."

Chapter X.—**Postridie eius diei**: literally, "on the day following that day": **postridie**=**posteri die**, a locative of time: **eius diei**: genitive of description: (see note, B. IV, Chap. XIII).—**Aliquantum itineris**: p. 280, 3.—**Extremi**: "the rear of the enemy." Others take it to mean "the rear of the expeditionary force" of Caesar. In that case **iam in conspectu** means "still in sight of Caesar," who remained behind in the camp.—**Qui nuntiarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Subsisterent . . . possent**: subjunctives of dep. clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.

Chapter XI.—**Resistere**: "halt."—**Coram perspicit**: "he in person sees."—**Sic ut**: literally, "to the extent that": cf. use of **tantum**.—**Magno negotio**: "with great trouble."—**Fabros**: "ship carpenters"; a corps of **fabri**, "wrights," skilled in mechanical arts, was attached to each legion, under a **praefectus fabrum**.—**Quam plurimas posset**: virtual oblique: as many as Labienus thought he could build: p. 307, 11.—**Iis legionibus**: "with the aid of those legions": abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5.—**Quae sunt apud eum**: not an integral clause of oblique narration: p. 307, 13, (*a*).—**Multae operae ac laboris**: p. 280, 4.—**Subduci**: see Vocab. under **subduco**.—**Ne . . . intermissis**: "not even the night time making any interruption in the continuance of the labor of the soldiers."—**Eodem**: "to the same position," *i.e.*, to the camp by the river.—**Summa . . . administrandi**: "the supreme command in, and conduct of, the war."—**Communi consilio**: "by common consent": cf. **publico consilio**.—**Circiter . . . octoginta**: *i.e.*, from near Deal, where he probably landed.

Chapter XII.—**Quos**:=**et eos**: the subject of **proditum (esse)** is the clause **quos natos (esse) in insula**: "and they state that the tradition is

that they were indigenous," literally, "born in the island itself."—**Pars**: scil. **incolitur**.—**Iis nominibus civitatum**: = **nominibus earum civitatum**: "by the names of those states."—**Quibus ... ex civitatibus**: for the repetition of the antecedent with the relative, see note on **quibus in locis** (B. IV, Chap. VII).—**Aere**: "bronze," a mixture of copper and tin and different from brass, a mixture of copper and zinc.—**Taleis ferreis**: "iron bars."—**Plumbum album**: "tin": Caesar here reverses the facts.—**Praeter fagum atque abietem**: probably Caesar did not meet with these, and hence denied their existence. They are certainly plentiful now in Britain.—**Animi voluptatisque causa**: "for amusement and pleasure."—**Loca**: see note on **locis frigidissimis** (B. IV, Chap. I).

Chapter XIII.—**Inferior**: scil. **angulus**: this is Land's End, off the coast of Cornwall.—**Alterum**: scil. **latus**.—**Dimidio minor**: Great Britain is said to contain 84,000 square miles: Ireland 36,000 square miles.—**Pari spatio transmissus**: literally: "of the same interval of space across as from Gaul to Britain": **transmissus** is a genitive depending on **pari spatio**, abl. of description: p. 284, 12.—**Mona**: the Isle of Man answers the description, though Anglesey is called **Mona** in Tacitus.—**Subiectae**: "adjacent." He probably refers to the Hebrides, Orkney, and Shetland islands off the coast of Scotland; but is, of course, wrong with regard to their position.—**Bruma**: a contraction for **brevima** = **brevissima**: scil. **dies**: 21st December.—**Ex aqua**: "by the water clock": (**clepsydra**), made on the principle of the sand-glass.—**Ut ... opinio**: "as their belief is."—**Angulus**: *i.e.*, at Kent.

Chapter XIV.—**Lacte et carne vivunt**: **vivo** takes the construction of **vescor**: abl. of means.—**Hoc**: scil. **vitro**: "thereby," "by this."—**Horridiore ... aspectu**: abl. of quality: cf. **capillo ... promisso**: p. 284, 12.—**Deni duodenique**: "companies of ten or twelve": he probably refers here to the pre-Aryan race of Britain. Join **inter se** with **communes**: "common to one another."—**Quo**: literally "whither," "to whose house." Translate "by whom."—**Deducta est**: "was led home as a bride": cf. **ducere uxorem in matrimonium**.

Chapter XV.—**Ut**: consecutive: "with the result that." Note that the perfect subjunctive expresses a single fact: p. 295, 2.—**Compluribus interfectis**: *i.e.*, of the Britons.—**Insecuti**: *i.e.*, **nostri milites Britannos cupidius insecuti**.—**Imprudentibus nostris**: "while our men were off their guard."—**In statione**: see note on **in statione**, B. IV, Chap. XXXII.—**Subsidio**: "as a reinforcement": p. 279, 12.—**His primis**: a regular system of promotion prevailed in the Roman army, and the first cohort contained the most experienced veteran soldiers.—**Novo genere pugnae**: the light armed infantry of the Britons, armed with only broadsword and targe, and the charioteers were more mobile than the legionary soldiers.—**Tribunus militum**: there were six to each legion, each having under him ten centurions. See Vocab. under **tribunus**.

Chapter XVI.—**Quod ... possent ... auderent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11: the feelings of the soldiers, not of Caesar, are represented.—**Cedentes**: scil. **hostes** governed by **insequi**.—**Illi**: *i.e.*, the Britons.—**Cederent ... desilirent ... contenderent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Dispari ... proelio**: "in an unequal mode of fighting"; when

the Roman ranks were broken, the Britons were more effective soldiers owing to their greater mobility: cf. note on **novo genere pugnae** (B. V, Chap. XV).—**Equestris ... ratio**: "whereas when the fighting was between cavalry, the danger was equalized whether they were retreating or pursuing."—**Cedentibus et insequentibus**: scil. **Britannis**: p. 278, 6.—**Rari magnisque intervallis**: "scattered and with wide intervals between the detachments."—**Exciperent**: "relieved."—**Integri et recentes**: "the unwounded and fresh."

Chapter XVII.—**Lenius**: "with less energy."—**Sic uti ... non absisterent**: "so vehemently that they did not abstain from attacking the companies and legions"—**Subsidio**: ablative: p. 278, foot note.—**Praecipites...egerunt**: "drove in headlong flight."—**Sui colligendi**: "of recovering themselves," "of rallying."—**Ex hac fuga**: "after this rout."—**Summis ... copiis**: "with their full strength."

Chapter XVIII.—**Uno omnino loco**: "at one ford and no more."—**Alteram**: "opposite."—**Cum capite ... exstarent**: "though they had only their heads above water."—**Capite**: abl. of difference: p. 283, 7.

Chapter XIX.—**Contentionis**: "of rivalry."—**Itinera nostra servabat**: "dogged our march."—**Ex via**: "from the high road"; the imperfects express repeated action.—**Magno periculo nostrorum equitum**: subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Hoc metu**: see note on **qua spe** (B. IV, Chap. VI).—**Relinquebatur ut**: "the only thing left to do was that Caesar": p. 293, 1, top of page.—**Neque...discedi...pateretur**: "should neither allow any wide departure from the main column of the legions."—**Discedi**: an impersonal infinitive.—**Et tantum...noceretur**: "and that so much injury should be inflicted upon the army by way of devastating the fields and causing conflagration." Note the impersonal use of **noceretur**: p. 278, 4.—**Quantum...poterant**: "as the legionary soldiers were able to effect by their exertions on the march," literally, "by their exertions and march" (hendiadys).

Chapter XX.—**Civitas**: the Trinobantes inhabited Essex and the southern part of Suffolk. Their chief town was Camalodunum (now Colchester), afterwards a Roman colony.—**Caesaris fidem secutus**: "having accepted the protection of Caesar," said of the inferior. The superior was said **recipere in fidem**.—**Ipse**: "while he himself."—**Ab iniuria Cassivellauni**: "from injury on the part of Cassivellaunus": subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Qui praesit...obtineat**: p. 294, 5.

Chapter XXI.—**Ab...prohibitis**: "secured from all wrong-doing on the part of the soldiers": subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Cenimagni**: see Vocab. for the position of these tribes.—**Convenerit**: "have mustered": dependent clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2; part of the news given to Caesar.—**Cum...munierunt**: "whenever they fortify": see note on **ubi...conspexerant**: B. IV, Chap. XXVI.

Chapter XXII.—**Dum...geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**His**: the petty kings of Kent.—**Castra navalia**: see Vocab. under **castra.**—**Multum aestatis**: p. 280, 3.—**Extrahi**: "be wasted on delays."

Chapter XXIII.—Deductis: see Vocab. under **deduco.**—**Duobus commeatibus:** "in two relays": p. 283, 5.—**Quae...portaret:** "such as carried": consecutive relative: p. 296, 5.—**Et prioris commeatus:** *i.e.*, "both those of the first relay after landing their troops."—**Prioris commeatus:** genitive of description: p. 280, 4.—**Quas:** supply **eae** before **quas** in apposition to **quae**: the **inanes** are (1) the first relay; (2) those built by Labienus.—**Aequinoctium:** about September 21st.—**Secunda ...vigilia:** "at the beginning of the second watch," about 9 p.m.

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE.

BASED ON NEPOS AND CAESAR.

N.B.—No exercise should be attempted until the text has been mastered. The exercises on Nepos should be done orally.

Exercise I.

Themistocles, Chapter I.

1. Neocles, the father of Themistocles, married a lady of Halicarnassus. 2. A lady of Halicarnassus married[1] Neocles, the father of Themistocles. 3. None of his countrymen can be considered superior to him. 4. In early youth he neglected his property. 5. His property was neglected by him. 6. Did he not devote himself to public affairs? 7. Let us begin from the beginning of his life. 8. He transacted many important affairs. 9. Many important affairs were transacted by them. 10. This reproach was not removed by Themistocles without great exertion. 11. He became so great that no one was considered equal to him. 12. He was so careless of his property that his father disinherited him. 13. He lived a dissolute life, and was disinherited by his father. 14. He was so ready in speaking that he often appeared in private trials.

[1] *Nubo* (with dative, p. 278, foot note).

Exercise II.

Themistocles, Chapter I.

1. He had great vices and great virtues. 2. His virtues were more numerous than his vices. 3. In serving his friends, he served himself. 4. He soon began to speak in the courts. 5. He explained in words very easily the measures which he saw to be necessary. 6. Could he not conjecture very truly what was about to be? 7. He was found to be a man of the greatest energy. 8. He judged that energy was necessary for the transaction of business. 9. Will he not devote himself to his friends in early youth? 10. Hence it happened that the Athenians thought that no one had ever been born equal to him.

Exercise III.

Themistocles, Chapter II.

1. The people elected Themistocles general in the war. 2. They built a fleet of one hundred vessels. 3. This fleet was built by them with the money which came in from the mines. 4. When he had built this fleet, he pursued the pirates. 5. The fleet was of great service to Greece during the Persian war. 6. It consisted of two hundred ships. 7. When the city was abandoned, the people put all their possessions on board of their ships. 8. After this report was brought to Athens, the citadel was committed to the elders. 9. The fleet of the Persians consisted of war ships and transports. 10. The messengers who were sent to Delphi brought the following reply. 11. The Athenians were more skilful in naval battles than the other Greeks. 12. The number of the ships with which the Persians crossed the sea was twelve hundred.

Exercise IV.

Themistocles, Chapter II.

1. The king of Persia carried on war against Greece by land and sea. 2. War was carried on by the king against Greece. 3. The Athenians sent men to Delphi to consult the priestess. 4. What shall we do? 5. They asked what they should do. 6. The priestess gave an answer, but no one knew what it meant. 7. Themistocles ordered them to leave the city and put all their goods on board of their ships. 8. The elders will protect the citadel, but the rest will go on board of the ships. 9. He persuaded them to obey the command of the god. 10. He persuaded them that all their property should be removed to Salamis. 11. The

elders moved to the citadel to protect themselves. 12. Their plan was to abandon the city to the Persians. 13. Themistocles said that their ships were the wooden walls of which the god spoke.

Exercise V.

Themistocles, Chapter III.

1. We are opposed to this plan, but they are in favor of it. 2. The Athenians decided to carry on war by land and sea. 3. Leonidas, King of Sparta, was sent to seize the pass of Thermopylae. 4. The Lacedaemonians seized the pass to prevent the barbarians from advancing into Greece. 5. Men were sent along with Leonidas to prevent the advance of the enemy. 6. The Greek fleet of three hundred vessels engaged the Persian fleet at Artemisium. 7. The two fleets then moored nearer the island of Salamis to meet the attack of the Persians. 8. Our fleet will be stationed between Euboea and Greece. 9. They left Artemisium to avoid being surrounded by the forces of the king. 10. We did not dare to depart for fear that the enemy would surround us with all their forces.

Exercise VI.

Themistocles, Chapter III.

1. The result was that the Athenians did not remain at Artemisium. 2. There is danger that the enemy will surround them. 3. If they had remained there, the enemy would have surrounded them. 4. If they remain there, they will all perish. 5. There was a danger that they would be defeated in this battle. 6. Had the Persian fleet sailed round the island of Euboea, they would have surrounded the Athenian fleet. 7. They were threatened by danger from two sides. 8. The result was that they decided to sail to the city. 9. Had they not withstood the Persians at the pass, we should all have perished. 10. The object of Themistocles was to reach Athens. 11. Had they fought with all their fleet, they would have defeated the Persians.

Exercise VII.

Themistocles, Chapter IV.

1. After taking Thermopylae, the king will destroy the city with fire. 2. Themistocles advised them to protect themselves. 3. I advised him not to destroy our homes with fire. 4. You will be a match for the forces of the king if they are all scattered. 5. He will advise his comrades to remain where they are. 6. As the enemy are in flight, I advise you not

to remain here but to pursue them. 7. When the army of the king was defeated by Themistocles, the Persians had at once (*statim*) to withdraw from Greece. 8. I do not believe that there is any treachery. 9. Has not Themistocles himself sent me a faithful slave? 10. A messenger came by night to tell the king the designs of the Greeks. 11. He will come from Themistocles who commands their fleet, and the king will believe that the Greeks will be defeated.

EXERCISE VIII.

Themistocles, Chapter IV.

1. He said to the king that the city would be destroyed by fire. 2. "We shall all perish," said he, "if we remain in this place." 3. He said that they would all perish if they remained in that place. 4. The king was not influenced by the words of the Persian commander. 5. A faithful slave was sent to say that the Greeks were in flight. 6. "You will finish the war," said he, "if you defeat us now." 7. They said that he would finish the war if he defeated them. 8. If we attack the enemy we shall crush them. 9. He said that if they attacked the enemy they would crush them. 10. He engaged the enemy in battle in a place so unfavorable that they were not able to extend their line. 11. The place was favorable to us but unfavorable to them. 12. He said that he could not influence the king. 13. They were so terrified by the flames that they would not remain.

EXERCISE IX.

Themistocles, Chapter V.

1. The object of the king was to conquer Greece. 2. Though Greece had been liberated, the Greeks were afraid that the king would return. 3. His forces were so great that he could easily have conquered us. 4. He was informed by Themistocles that the bridge would be destroyed. 5. He is afraid that we will return. 6. The bridge which is built over the river will be broken down within ten days. 7. You did not return though you promised to do so. 8. The king of Persia had a very great fleet. 9. Was not the king defeated in battle by the Athenians? 10. Do you think that Europe will succumb to Asia? 11. His foresight was such that none of the Athenians can be compared to him.

EXERCISE X.

Themistocles, Chapter VI.

1. This harbor, as it was small, the Athenians did not use. 2. They built another harbor to protect the city. 3. He surrounded the city with walls

so high that they protected the city. 4. They declared that it was unnecessary to build such high walls. 5. The walls that had been built could not protect any city. 6. The man was sent to say that the walls were not being built. 7. He had no sufficient reason for saying this. 8. He said in our presence that he would send an ambassador to declare that the walls were not being built. 9. By this victory he will gain such glory that none can be called his equal. 10. He knew that ambassadors would be sent by the enemy to deny this. 11. He gained such pre-eminence by his victory that he was easily the first man in Athens.

Exercise XI.

Themistocles, Chapter VI.

1. He carried out his plans without sparing any one. 2. In carrying out his plans no one was spared. 3. The result was that they undertook to build a wall. 4. Since all knew that the walls were being built by the Athenians, why did he deny the fact? 5. He instructed all to build walls high enough to keep out the enemy. 6. The result was that their walls protected them. 7. After the walls began to be built, the enemy sent ambassadors to the Athenians. 8. He alone went as ambassador to order the Athenians to desist. 9. When you have not forbidden us to build, shall we desist from the work? 10. The result was that all, whether slave or freeman, desisted from building the walls.

Exercise XII.

Themistocles, Chapter VII.

1. It is right that you should send men in whom you have confidence. 2. They said that it would not be right to send men in whom they had no confidence. 3. Whenever he went to the magistrates, he requested them to hold him as a hostage. 4. "Do not," said he, "let the ambassadors of the enemy go till I am sent back." 5. We have, according to the common rights of all nations, protected our homes with walls. 6. That you may the more easily protect your city, you have surrounded it with walls. 7. The fleet of the king has often suffered shipwreck near the city. 8. You are doing wrong, since you do not take into consideration what will be of advantage to all Greece. 9. If you wish to recover your own ambassadors, send me back again to Athens. 10. He wished to protract the time as long as possible.

Exercise XIII.

Themistocles, Chapter VIII.

1. They condemned him for treachery in his absence. 2. Ambassadors were sent to accuse him of treachery. 3. They will take refuge at the court of the king as he is our friend. 4. The king received them under his protection because he had been himself a suppliant. 5. He promised to give the captain of the ship a gift when he reached Ephesus. 6. The captain did not allow anyone to disembark till he had landed Themistocles. 7. After he had ordered Themistocles to consult for his own safety, he landed him at Ephesus. 8. He knew that it was unsafe to land at the island of Naxos, as there was an Athenian army there. 9. As you have made me this promise, I will tell you who I am. 10. If you save me from my enemies, I will show my gratitude. 11. When they reached the house the king had fled.

Exercise XIV.

Themistocles, Chapter IX.

1. He said that he had done much harm to the king. 2. He had informed the king that the bridge would be destroyed. 3. The object of the enemy is to destroy the bridge. 4. He was informed that the enemy intended to surround him. 5. My object in doing this is to free you from fear. 6. He will tell the king to receive you as a friend. 7. Do you know that you will have in me a good friend of your king? 8. Everybody knows that I have been driven from Greece because I am a friend of the king. 9. He talked over the matter with me after he learned that I had returned home. 10. When you come here, stay at my house.

Exercise XV.

Themistocles, Chapter X.

1. He will devote himself to literature for a year. 2. It is said that he was so learned in the Persian tongue that he spoke it more readily than many a Persian. 3. It will be said that he received presents from the king. 4. The king promised to give him a city from which he might obtain bread. 5. Another city was given him to supply him with wine. 6. There are some who say that he died of poison. 7. Did he take poison because he could not make good the promises he had made to the king? 8. If you are willing to adopt my plans, I will supply you with forces to crush the Greeks. 9. As I have made this promise to you, I will make it good. 10. There are some who say that he was buried in Attica. 11. Others say

that it was not lawful to bury any one accused of treason in Attica, and that he was buried at Magnesia.

Exercise XVI.

Aristides, Chapter I.

1. Why do you consider me worthy of punishment? 2. I asked him why he considered me worthy of punishment. 3. Although he was the only man among them surnamed the Just, he was condemned to exile. 4. The citizens restored him to his native land six years after he was expelled. 5. We can easily see how much Themistocles surpassed him in ability. 6. It is said that Aristides asked a citizen why he was being condemned to exile. 7. When they were asked what crime Aristides had committed, they replied that he was surnamed the Just. 8. I am not pleased with this man because he is called the Just. 9. The punishment for such a crime was exile for ten years. 10. He knew that he could not check an excited populace.

Exercise XVII.

Aristides, Chapter II.

1. The battle was fought before he returned. 2. We shall all participate in the battle. 3. Before the supreme command was transferred to Aristides, the Athenians defeated a large army of the barbarians. 4. The result will be that the supreme command will be transferred (use *futurum esse ut*) to the Athenians. 5. He performed many illustrious acts in that war, but none was more illustrious than this. 6. In consequence of the victory, the Athenians became the leaders of the Greeks. 7. The result of this was that he was defeated by us. 8. Almost all the states of Greece joined the Athenian alliance. 9. When the battle was fought, they selected him as general. 10. Before that time the supreme power was in the hands of the Lacedaemonians.

Exercise XVIII.

Aristides, Chapters II, III.

1. This man was chosen to repel the barbarians. 2. They asked him to determine how many ships each state should contribute. 3. The allies contributed yearly a large amount of money to the common treasury. 4. What place do you wish to be the treasury? 5. They afterwards transferred it from Delos to Athens. 6. His poverty was so great that he left no money to his children. 7. Though he was in charge of important

business he died in poverty. 8. How many ships have you built? 9. His daughters will be maintained at the public expense. 10. Must we choose such a one as leader? 11. Order them to raise two hundred talents.

Exercise XIX.

Hannibal, Chapter I.

1. Hannibal surpassed all other commanders in valor as much as the Romans surpassed all other nations. 2. He was vanquished by the envy of his own countrymen. 3. We do not doubt that he almost vanquished Rome. 4. Even after his countrymen exiled him, he never ceased to hate us. 5. If he had not been a great leader he would not have defeated you so often. 6. Does he not need help from others? 7. His hatred against the Romans was so great that it never left him. 8. Though he fought for fifteen years in Italy, he was never defeated by us. 9. Will you drive a man of such valor from the country, my countrymen?

Exercise XX.

Hannibal, Chapter II.

1. No one doubted that he was a powerful king. 2. Do not conceal it from them. 3. Tell him that you have bribed Hannibal to be our friend. 4. They had been sent by the Romans to discover the disposition of the king. 5. Prepare war against Rome and make me your leader. 6. I am afraid that he has other views. 7. When they went to the king at the appointed time, they told him that they could never be the friends of Rome. 8. There is no doubt they will do this to no purpose. 9. I shall always be of the same mind as I am now.

Exercise XXI.

Hannibal, Chapter III.

1. Will he set out with his father for Spain? 2. After the death of his father, he commanded the cavalry. 3. When Hasdrubal was killed Hannibal became commander of the whole army. 4. Do you think that he can take it by storm? 5. Within three years all the tribes of Spain were subdued by him. 6. After raising three very large armies, he crossed the Alps, a feat which no commander had ever performed before him. 7. Leaving one army in Spain, and sending another to Africa, he led a third into Italy. 8. After defeating the Alpine tribes who attempted to obstruct his march, he built a road across the mountains. 9. He defeated all the nations whom he engaged in battle.

Exercise XXII.

Hannibal, Chapter IV.

1. When the Romans first met him in battle they were defeated. 2. Scipio was wounded in the battle fought near that city. 3. Hannibal met the Romans a second time in battle and defeated them. 4. Two Roman consuls were killed by him in the same year. 5. After crossing the Apennines he was attacked with a disease of the eyes (of one of his eyes), of which he never afterwards had the proper use. 6. It is said that he was carried in a sedan chair. 7. Do you think that anyone ever routed so many Roman generals? 8. The consul of the previous year was defeated by him in battle and fled. 9. After crossing the Alps, he routed one consul at Ticinus, and both in the following year at Trasimenus. 10. After defeating two armies, he seized the mountain passes.

Exercise XXIII.

Hannibal, Chapter V.

1. Shall we now set out for Rome? 2. We shall be resisted by no one. 3. Will he dupe our general again? 4. Have you heard how he extricated himself? 5. So terrified were the Romans that no one left the camp. 6. All know how great a general he is. 7. He has defeated all our generals. 8. Whenever he pitched his camp, no one dared to oppose him. 9. He met no resistance after the battle of Cannae. 10. Not many days after this battle, he ambushed and defeated another army.

Exercise XXIV.

Hannibal, Chapter VI.

1. He will be recalled from Italy to carry on war in Africa. 2. When the two leaders met they could not agree upon terms of peace. 3. As it was impossible to agree, the Carthaginians had to fight. 4. I am afraid they have ambushed our army. 5. As the resources of the country are exhausted, I wish to make peace. 6. Collecting an army, he met the Romans at Zama. 7. Within two days his army marched to Hadrumetum. 8. By making peace now, I shall be stronger by and by (say, *in a short time*). 9. If I escape now, I shall engage them again when I can. 10. He collected another army from the soldiers who had escaped.

Exercise XXV.

Hannibal, Chapter VII.

1. Let us send envoys to demand his surrender. 2. These wars were carried on by the Romans for many years. 3. Ambassadors were sent

from Carthage to Rome to sue for peace. 4. The ambassadors thanked the Romans because they had brought the war to an end. 5. After the war was over, they recalled him. 6. Being elected chief magistrate, he showed the same diligence in peace as he had previously displayed in war. 7. They begged the Romans to return their hostages. 8. After making this request we returned home. 9. Two men are elected annually at Carthage to govern the country. 10. The new imposts will supply money to pay the Romans.

Exercise XXVI.

Hannibal, Chapter VIII.

1. Antiochus was persuaded by Hannibal to set out for Italy. 2. If the Romans had attacked Carthage with a fleet of five ships, the city would have been taken. 3. When he learned that Hannibal was approaching the river, he marched to meet him with a large army. 4. If he had been punished in the same way, he would never have undertaken this war against us. 5. Despairing of success, he set sail for Italy, but was killed soon after by his slaves. 6. Would he ever have formed this plan had he known that we would desert him? 7. In carrying out his plans, he was willing to obey me, and I will never desert him. 8. Though he was defeated in battle, he escaped in safety from the field (*acies*). 9. No one will ever persuade him to desert the city of Carthage.

Exercise XXVII.

Hannibal, Chapter IX.

1. Hannibal was afraid that the Cretans would surrender him to the Romans. 2. When he came to Crete, he considered what he would do. 3. When he was in great danger, he formed the following plan. 4. I never thought that they would take my money from me. 5. He knew that the Cretans would carry off the gold if they were able. 6. Let them find out, if they can, where I have deposited it. 7. I will pretend that the gold has been deposited in this temple. 8. Do you suppose the Cretans will believe you? 9. They will carry away this money unless we prevent it. 10. The fame of Cretan avarice has gone forth to all the earth.

Exercise XXVIII.

Hannibal, Chapter X.

1. When he reaches Pontus he will win over all the tribes of that great country. 2. All through his life he had no object but to make war on

Rome. 3. He knew that it was impossible to gain a victory over the king by arms alone. 4. In winning over these tribes, his object was to collect a large army. 5. Is not the enemy superior both in men and in ships? 6. This done, he ordered the fleet to attack. 7. I will take care that you know in what ship the king is. 8. If you kill the king you shall have a great reward. 9. He said that if they killed the king they should have a great reward. 10. Calling the marines together, he told them that he would crush the enemy by stratagem. 11. Take the king prisoner, but do not kill him.

Exercise XXIX.

Hannibal, Chapter XI.

1. Both sides launched their vessels, and the battle began. 2. The marines did not know where the king was. 3. Tell us when we shall attack their fleet. 4. I kept wondering what he found in the letter. 5. The king did not hesitate to open the letter. 6. There can be no doubt that he will be unable to withstand our attacks. 7. They could not understand why the whole fleet attacked the ship of the king. 8. Do you think that he will rout the enemy by such a stratagem? 9. By seeking your own safety you have vanquished your fleet. 10. He said that he was seeking the king in order to give him the letter.

Exercise XXX.

Hannibal, Chapter XII.

1. Hannibal happened to be at that time at the court of Prusias. 2. When the ambassadors were dining with the consul, mention was made of him. 3. So long as this man lives, he will be our enemy. 4. Seize him, if you can; you will easily find out where he is. 5. The boy happened to see the envoys coming. 6. He ordered him to find out if the doors were all beset. 7. O that we may find him! 8. Let us beg the king to surrender our enemy. 9. O that we had sent an envoy to them. 10. When the boy returned, he told Hannibal that all the doors of the house were beset. 11. He knew then that he must surrender or die.

Exercise XXXI.

Hannibal, Chapter XIII.

1. It is not agreed whether he died in the year 183 B.C. or not. 2. There are some who say that he died in the consulship of Claudius and Fabius. 3. He died at the age of seventy, and in the same year as Scipio.

4. He wrote several books of his campaigns in Asia. 5. It is said that these books were written in Greek. 6. Hannibal employed two Greeks as instructors. 7. It is impossible to decide which of the two is the better general. 8. Though occupied with such important affairs he had time to write books. 9. We can easily see by comparing the deeds of these two that Hannibal was a greater general than Scipio.

Exercise XXXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter I.

1. Next year a large number of Germans crossed the Rhine. 2. For several years the Suebi had harassed them and prevented them from tilling their lands. 3. The men who serve in the field are supported by those who remain at home. 4. No one is allowed to remain longer than a year in one place. 5. They spend a large part of their time in hunting. 6. The boys are not trained to any duty and they do nothing against their will. 7. On account of this daily exercise they become men of extraordinary strength. 8. They have no clothing except the skins of the animals they capture in the chase. 9. Even in the coldest weather they bathe in the rivers. 10. They are so powerful that they send forth every year from home a hundred thousand armed men.

Exercise XXXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter II.

1. All the booty they take in war they sell to the merchants, for they import nothing. 2. The Gauls take especial delight in imported horses, while those of the Germans are small and deformed. 3. Caesar tells us that the Germans often leap from their horses in battle. 4. To render these horses more active, they train them daily. 5. They train their horses to remain in one place, so that the riders may be able to find them where they leave them. 6. To prevent the people from becoming effeminate, they do not import wine. 7. They wish to have some one to whom they may sell what they can export. 8. The animals they use at home are small. 9. Do not think that any one uses a saddle. 10. They think that nothing is more disgraceful than to flee from the battle.

Exercise XXXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter III.

1. It is said to be their special glory to have extensive territory. 2. We must make them weaker than ourselves. 3. After they had driven their

enemies from the territory (*abl. abs.*), they made them tributary. 4. They are more civilized than the people of the other states. 5. Though they often attempted to expel us from our lands, they were unable to do so. 6. If they had been more civilized, would they have been weaker? 7. The river Rhine is the boundary on one side; on the other, the lands of the Suebi. 8. This nation is the most civilized of all the Germans. 9. Are they not rather weaker than their neighbors? 10. Though the most powerful nation of all Germany, they did not wish a neighboring nation near them. 11. They did not expel a neighboring tribe, but made it subject.

EXERCISE XXXV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IV.

1. For several years we have withstood them. 2. Driven from our homes we have been wandering about Germany for three years. 3. They prevented us from crossing by placing forces on each side of the river. 4. He pretended to be going home, but returned within a few days. 5. After seizing our city they expelled us before our forces arrived. 6. After proceeding a journey of many days, they were informed that you had crossed the river. 7. Tell us if they have completed the work in one night. 8. He learned that they intended to cross the river and occupy these villages the rest of the winter. 9. They seized our ships and crossed the river that night. 10. They were so alarmed at his approach that they returned home.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter V.

1. What have you heard of *(de)* this matter? 2. I asked him what he had heard of the matter. 3. From what district do you come? 4. I asked him from what district he had come. 5. I must not answer you according to your wishes. 6. He compelled the man to repent of his act. 7. Do they listen to every traveller who visits them? 8. They are fickle in forming their plans and very eager for change. 9. Do not be the slave of hearsay. 10. These idle tales often influence them in forming their plans.

EXERCISE XXXVII.—*(Review.)*

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters I-V.

1. The people of this tribe were eager for hunting. 2. They live on flesh and milk, are clothed *(vestio)* with skins, and even in winter bathe in their rivers. 3. They do not allow the merchants to bring wine into the

country because they believe it enfeebles the constitution. 4. The horses that the Germans employ are small. 5. We buy them at a high price. 6. After devastating the lands of their neighbors they made them tributaries. 7. After wandering throughout Germany for three years, they came to a land which the Menapii inhabited. 8. So alarmed were they at the approach of the Germans that they stationed guards to prevent them from crossing. 9. The Germans had no ships, and therefore could not cross the river. 10. Pretending to return home, they suddenly turned, fell upon the Menapii, and seized their ships.

Exercise XXXVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VI.

1. On learning that ambassadors had been sent to him by the enemy, he set out for the camp. 2. To avoid meeting the enemy, he marched more quickly than usual. 3. They said that they had been induced to cross the Rhine by the Gauls, who had sent ambassadors to them. 4. They declared that everything they had in the camp was in the hands of the enemy. 5. After levying a troop of cavalry from them, he decided to carry on war with the enemy. 6. On his arrival there, he ascertained that the chiefs whom Caesar had summoned had assembled. 7. Several ambassadors came to Caesar to ask him why he was carrying on war against them. 8. On his arrival at the army he was informed that the Germans had been induced to make war upon him. 9. After the departure of the ambassadors from the camp, he induced the soldiers to undertake the war against the Germans. 10. Caesar found out that the Germans were withdrawing from the Rhine into the territory of the Condrusi. 11. He decided to summon the chiefs to calm the feelings of the Gauls. 12. He soon had to face a severer war than he expected.

Exercise XXXIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VII.

1. Corn began to be collected. 2. He began to pick out cavalry. 3. While Caesar was advancing, deputies met him from the German army. 4. They said that they could be useful friends to the Romans, if Caesar would allow them to hold lands in that place. 5. The Germans have waged war on the Roman people for many years. 6. No one makes war on us without being defeated. 7. Do not refuse to give us lands. 8. No one can conquer the Suebi in war, for they are the bravest men in the world. 9. We can easily defend ourselves if we are assailed by others. 10. We have never been the first to make war on others, still we do not refuse to assert our rights, if we are attacked.

Exercise XL.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VIII.

1. If you remain in this place, there will be no friendship between you and me. 2. It is not right for those who cannot protect their own lands to seize those of others. 3. There are no vacant lands in Gaul on which you can settle. 4. If you are willing, you will be allowed to settle in the territory of the Ubii. 5. The ambassadors have come to my camp to complain of the wrongs done by you. 6. Why do you complain of the wrongs done by the Ubii and not ask aid from me. 7. If he had complained of wrongs done by us, would he have asked aid from us? 8. If he had seized the lands of others, he would now possess them. 9. You will not be allowed to hold lands in Gaul, especially since you cannot protect them with your arms. 10. You may, if you wish, settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose deputies have come to my headquarters to seek my aid.

Exercise XLI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters IX and X.

1. We shall report to our people what you have asked. 2. When you have deliberated on these matters, return to our camp. 3. Do not move your camp nearer our lines. 4. You will never be able to obtain this request from me. 5. Our cavalry had been sent a few days before across the river to plunder. 6. This river divides into several branches and forms many islands, which are inhabited by savage tribes. 7. This river rising in the Alps flows a long distance in a rapid course. 8. After forming this island, it flows for about eighty miles before it empties into the ocean. 9. When the deputies did not gain their request, they returned to their camp. 10. He suspected that the cavalry that had gone across the Meuse to collect forage several days before would soon return. 11. Caesar says that the inhabitants of these islands live on fish.

Exercise XLII.—*(Review.)*

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters VI–X.

1. On his arrival at the army, he learned that the enemy had been ordered to leave the Rhine. 2. After collecting a supply of corn, he set out against the Germans, who were a few days' march from his camp. 3. We have not been the first to make war upon you; still, we never decline to fight if we are attacked. 4. We can be serviceable to the Romans, if they are willing to be friends with us. 5. Allow us to retain the lands we

have already won with the sword. 6. The Suebi are the only ones in the world to whom we are willing to yield. 7. Not even the gods are a match for the Suebi. 8. The envoys said that they would ask him not to advance nearer. 9. This river, after receiving a tributary from the Rhine, forms many large islands, inhabited by fierce tribes whose diet consists of fish and eggs of birds.

Exercise XLIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XI.

1. He sent forward envoys to tell the soldiers not to fight. 2. When the deputies were returning, they met Caesar on the march. 3. We beg of you to wait till we shall send word to the Ubii. 4. He said that the cavalry would soon return, if an opportunity was granted them. 5. Caesar, knowing the reason why the delay was asked for, told the deputies to meet him next day. 6. I asked you to settle the matter within the space of three days. 7. I order you to hold out as long as you can, if the enemy attack you. 8. Do not attack them, but hold out until I come. 9. Since a delay of three days has been granted, I shall not advance any further to-day. 10. I shall not advance more than four miles to-day, but to-morrow assemble to hear my demands.

Exercise XLIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XII.

1. As soon as the enemy caught a glimpse of us, they were thrown into disorder. 2. We were five thousand in number, though they were only eight hundred. 3. We had no fear of the enemy on that day, for they had asked for a truce. 4. After stabbing many of our horses, they put our cavalry to flight. 5. The brave Piso came to the rescue of his brother, who was surrounded by the enemy. 6. He inspired such terror that our men did not stop till they reached their camp. 7. The enemy attacked our lines so quickly that they threw our men into confusion. 8. We did not think that they would attack us, as they had asked for an armistice a little before. 9. In this battle Piso, while rescuing his brother from peril, was thrown from his horse and killed. 10. As soon as his brother noticed that Piso had fallen, he rushed forward against the enemy and was slain.

Exercise XLV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIII.

1. We will neither hear the ambassadors nor accept their terms. 2. He ordered all the forces after they were led out of the camp to follow him at

once. 3. It is the height of folly to listen to terms from men who have once been guilty of treachery. 4. Caesar decided to wait till the Gauls formed their plans. 5. When a number of the enemy came to the camp to apologize for their conduct, he seized them at once. 6. He started at once with all his forces against the enemy, after he had seized their deputies. 7. They tried to secure a truce by treachery, but Caesar ordered them to be seized because they had attacked him the day before. 8. When all these matters were arranged, it luckily happened that the enemy came in great numbers to the camp. 9. The Romans knew what prestige they had gained by this battle. 10. No opportunity should be granted the Gauls to form new plans.

Exercise XLVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIV.

1. After covering a distance of eight miles, he reached the camp of the enemy. 2. He gave the enemy no time to form their plans or to take up arms. 3. He reached the camp of the enemy before they knew that he was coming. 4. They did not know whether they should defend the camp or seek safety by flight. 5. When Caesar came to the camp of the enemy, the Germans were so alarmed at his sudden arrival that the women and children took to flight. 6. While the cavalry was pursuing the enemy, the rest of the soldiers burst into the camp and quickly put to rout those who had taken up arms to defend themselves. 7. So terrified were the enemy that they did not stop till they had crossed the Rhine. 8. Caesar sent forward the cavalry to make an attack against the enemy.

Exercise XLVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XV.

1. When the Germans heard the shouts in the rear, they threw away their arms. 2. After they have thrown away their arms, they will fly to the river. 3. When they saw that a large number of their comrades had fallen, they despaired of their own safety. 4. When they reached the river, many of them plunged in and perished. 5. Many who plunged into the river were drowned in the strong current. 6. Our soldiers to a man returned to our camp in safety, though the loss of the enemy was very great. 7. So many of the Germans were now killed that the rest threw down their arms in despair. 8. Rushing out of the camp they plunged into the river, where they were overwhelmed by the force of the current. 9. When the Germans said they feared the cruelty of the Gauls, Caesar allowed them to remain with him.

Exercise XLVIII.—(*Review.*)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XI-XV.

1. He sent forward cavalry to devastate the lands of the enemy. 2. He gave them an opportunity of sending ambassadors to Rome. 3. You shall have the same terms as were proposed by Caesar. 4. I sent a man to order the soldiers to throw away their arms. 5. They did not desist from flight till they came in sight of our camp. 6. When his brother saw him fall in battle, he rushed against the enemy. 7. We ought to hear the envoys, and listen to the terms they propose. 8. When these matters had been arranged, the Germans came to our camp for the purpose of clearing themselves of this charge. 9. We could not find out what the Germans were intending to do in regard to this matter. 10. When they reached the river many threw themselves headlong into it and perished in the current.

Exercise XLIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVI

1. The Germans were easily influenced to cross the Rhine. 2. Caesar thought that when the barbarians learned the power of the Roman people, they would be anxious for their own safety. 3. He sent messengers to demand the surrender of those who had taken part in the war. 4. They earnestly prayed him to bring aid to them, because they were attacked by their enemies. 5. Unless you unite your forces with those of the Gauls, you will not defeat your enemies in battle. 6. Caesar decided to cross the Rhine in order that the Germans, who had come into Gaul, might fear for their own interests. 7. On the arrival of the deputies, they said that they did not think that Caesar had any right to claim authority across the Rhine. 8. They thought that the friendship of Caesar would be of great help to them in future, if they could obtain it.

Exercise L.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVIII.

1. Caesar led his army across the Rhine on the eighteenth day after he began to build the bridge. 2. When he had completed the bridge, he left soldiers at both ends to protect it. 3. When the ambassadors of the enemy asked him to grant them peace, he ordered them to bring hostages to him. 4. He urged the barbarians to hide themselves in the woods. 5. When the enemy asked for peace, he told them that they must obey him. 6. After leaving all their lands, they hid themselves in the woods, to which

they had carried all their goods. 7. When he had led his army across the river, ambassadors came from the enemy to ask him for peace. 8. When the deputies arrived from several states, he promised them peace and friendship.

EXERCISE LI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIX.

1. When the enemy heard that the bridge had been built over the river, they sent messengers in every direction to order their friends to move everything from the towns. 2. When he had delayed a few days in this district, he found out that the enemy had departed to their homes on learning that the Romans had built a bridge. 3. When this was done, those who could bear arms met together in the territory occupied by the Suebi, and there awaited the return of the Romans. 4. When the bridge was built, the enemy urged the women and children to take refuge in the woods. 5. He afterwards went into the territory of the Ubii, whom he had promised to free from the oppression of the Suebi. 6. The place selected by them was about the centre of the district which the enemy held. 7. Caesar thought that he had fully accomplished the objects of his expedition, when he had inspired the Germans with fear and protected the Ubii from wrong. 8. After taking vengeance on the Sugambri and spending in all eighteen days across the Rhine, he returned to Gaul.

EXERCISE LII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XX.

1. Since Caesar was not able to find out from the Gallic traders the nature and extent of the island, he decided to visit it in person. 2. If he reached the coast of Britain, he would be able to discover the harbors that were suitable for mooring his war vessels. 3. The Gallic traders who alone were accustomed to go there, had not been able to tell him anything about the inhabitants of the island. 4. He therefore decided to go to the island personally to get a knowledge of the customs and institutions of the people. 5. He decided to go to Britain to prevent the inhabitants from sending aid to the Gauls. 6. Can the merchants tell us anything about this district?

EXERCISE LIII.—(*Review.*)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XV-XX.

1. As he learned that the Germans could easily be induced to enter Gaul, he decided to bridge the Rhine and carry on war against them. 2. When the deputies of the Germans came to our camp, they told Caesar

that they did not think that he had any jurisdiction across the Rhine. 3. After the completion of the bridge many deputies came from the states bordering on the Rhine, asking him to make peace with them. 4. After tarrying a few days in that district, to cut down the grain, he advanced against the Ubii. 5. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons had supplied aid to the Gauls. 6. Knowing nothing personally of the extent of the island, he resolved, even if little of the summer remained, to go and find out what manner of people dwelt on it.

Exercise LIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXI.

1. Before he set out for Britain, he ordered his lieutenant to cross the channel in a war ship. 2. He instructed his lieutenant to explore the sea coast of Britain, and to report to him the character and size of its harbors. 3. The lieutenant soon returned since he did not dare to entrust himself to the savages. 4. When he advised the ambassadors of the enemy to give hostages and obey the commands of the Roman people, they said that they would execute all his orders. 5. When he was assembling his fleet with the intention of crossing the channel, the inhabitants of Britain, learning of his design through traders, sent deputies to him. 6. After five days the lieutenant returned to Caesar and told him all he had learned of the sea coast of the island.

Exercise LV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXII.

1. The Morini excused themselves for making war on the Romans on the ground that they were savages. 2. Very opportunely deputies came to Caesar from the Morini, while he was collecting his ships to convey his troops. 3. They said that they had made war on the Roman people because they were unacquainted with our custom. 4. Caesar promised to take them under his protection. 5. Caesar had no desire to carry on war against the Gauls, for he wished to cross as quickly as possible to Britain. 6. The wind prevented the eighteen ships, in which the cavalry were being transported, from reaching the harbor. 7. When they had promised to execute all his orders, and had collected a large force of cavalry, Caesar set sail with the seventh and tenth legions and a fleet of eighty ships. 8. After giving his lieutenant an army to lead against the enemy, he decided to hold the port with a sufficient garrison.

Exercise LVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIII.

1. He waited at anchor till he obtained weather suitable for sailing. 2. He decided to wait at anchor till the other ships, which had set sail from the upper port, should arrive. 3. He advised his soldiers to carry out all his instructions promptly and according to command. 4. We must wait till the weather is favorable for embarkation. 5. When he had obtained a place suitable for disembarkation, he moored his ships along the shore. 6. When the cavalry had embarked on the vessels that he had collected in the harbor, Caesar gave the signal for sailing. 7. Finding the enemy ready to hurl their weapons from the steep cliffs upon him as he landed, he decided that he must wait till the rest of the army arrived. 8. Then he weighed anchor, and with favorable wind and tide he proceeded to a more open place on the coast.

Exercise LVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIV.

1. The barbarians sent their cavalry ahead to prevent our men from disembarking. 2. We could not land because the water was so shallow that the ships could not approach the shore. 3. We were compelled to form our line among the waves because the ships had to be brought to in deep water. 4. When we leaped down from the vessels into the water, the enemy spurred on their horses down to the shore, and hurled their darts at us. 5. Our men were so terrified by the enemy that they did not show the same spirit that they were accustomed to exhibit in battles. 6. When the savages heard of Caesar's plan, they sent their cavalry and charioteers ahead to prevent his landing. 7. The enemy, who were thoroughly familiar with the ground, advanced into the water to meet us.

Exercise LVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXV.

1. The war ships advancing a short distance from the transports were moored on the right of the enemy. 2. When the enemy were dislodged by the arrows of our men, they withdrew from their position. 3. The eagle-bearer ordered the men to leap down from the ships into the water if they did not wish to let the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy. 4. Do not permit such a disgrace, my comrades. 5. The form and appearance of the Roman galleys were so unusual to the barbarians that they fell back in

alarm when Caesar moored his vessels on their right flank. 6. When the standard bearer saw that the soldiers were hesitating, he charged them not to betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. With a loud voice, he declared that he at any rate would do his duty to his country, and leaping into the water he advanced against the enemy.

Exercise LIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXVI.

1. As our men disembarked singly, they rallied round any standard they met. 2. When we saw that our men were disconcerted, we sent assistance to them. 3. We were unable to overtake the retreating enemy for we had no cavalry in the army. 4. The enemy, as they knew the ground, could attack our men *en masse* as they disembarked singly from their ships. 5. We were not able to follow the enemy very far, for the cavalry had been prevented from crossing by the wind. 6. As soon as the men who had taken up their position on shore formed in line, they made a fierce attack on the enemy.

Exercise LX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter I.

In this tribe no one is allowed by law to remain longer than a year on his own land, and private property is, therefore, a thing unknown amongst them. One half of the population till the land, and the other half serve in the army. Those who remain at home this year to till the land, serve in the field next year. In this way systematic training in war is never relaxed. The inhabitants of this state are of gigantic stature, live on flesh and milk, and are clothed with the skins of the animals they capture in the chase—a sport in which they spend a great portion of their time. Every day the young men are trained (*exerceo*) in exercises which render them so hardy that even in the depth of winter they wear only the scanty covering of skins, and bathe in the rivers. To such a pitch of bodily strength have they brought themselves that they are regarded the most warlike of all the Germans.

Exercise LXI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter II.

The inhabitants of this state prohibit by law the importation of wine, because they believe it weakens the body and renders men effeminate. Traders, in fact, are seldom permitted to enter their boundaries, and then rather to purchase the booty captured from the enemy than to sell any-

thing to the natives. They do not take pride in the expensive horses of which the Gauls are so fond, but the native horses, though small and unshapely, are still capable of great exertions, owing to their daily training. All the inhabitants ride without saddles, quickly dismount to fight on foot, while the horses stand still and afford a ready refuge in case their riders are hard pressed by the enemy. In this way the cavalry often escape from the field in safety, and owing to their superior training they exhibit great daring even against great odds.

Exercise LXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter III.

The inhabitants of those states of Germany bordering on the Rhine are more civilized than those of the other states of that nation, owing to the fact that they trade with the merchants and conform to the habits of the Gauls, who dwell on the opposite bank of the river. Most of the states are small, but that of the Ubii is larger and more highly civilized than the others. The Suebi made repeated attempts to dispossess the Ubii of their lands, but though they were unsuccessful in this, they merely made them weaker than they were before, while permitting them to retain possession of their own lands. All the Germans consider it a mark of the greatest distinction to have extensive tracts of waste lands on the side of their neighbors, for they fancy in this way they can protect their lands against their enemies.

Exercise LXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IV.

Although the Usipetes withstood the attack of the Suebi for several years, they were finally driven from their lands by their enemies. Wandering about Germany for the space of three years, they came to a district inhabited by the Menapii, who occupied lands on both sides of the Rhine. In consternation at the approach of such a host, the Menapii posted a guard on the east side of the river to prevent the Usipetes from crossing. The Usipetes tried by every possible means to cross the river, but were unable to do so owing to the scarcity of boats and the vigilance of the Menapii, who had sentinels stationed along the river. The Usipetes had, therefore, recourse to the following stratagem. Pretending to return home, they advanced three days in that direction ; then turning suddenly round, they surprised the Menapii, who were caught napping, cut them to pieces, captured the ships of the latter, crossed the river and seized their property before the rest of their countrymen could come to the aid of the Menapii. In this way, they maintained themselves in this district during the rest of the winter.

Exercise LXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter V.

When our soldiers came to a town of the Gauls, the inhabitants often compelled them to stop, even against their will, and to tell all the news they had heard from the people through whose lands they had passed. Often, too, when merchants came into the towns of the Gauls, the common folk surrounded them and asked them such questions as the following: "Where do you come from?" "What news do you bring?" "Have you heard anything of the enemy?" After receiving replies on these points, the Gauls formed their plans, but such slaves were they to idle rumours that they often changed their plans as soon as they had formed them: so fickle are they in disposition. Often the merchants told them things without any foundation, for every one knows that the Gauls can be entrusted with no secret. Caesar, therefore, gave instructions to the merchants to tell nothing that was transpiring in the Roman camp, for he was well aware that if this were done, the enemy would quickly mass their forces.

Exercise LXV.—(*Review.*)

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters I-V.

Of all the German tribes, the Suebi are the most warlike, for they have adopted the following custom in regard to war. Every year they put into the field a hundred thousand men, who are maintained by those that remain at home. Those that serve in the field this year, remain at home next year. In this way neither the tillage of the soil nor the practise of war was interfered with. The people have no private land, live on flesh and milk, are clothed with skins, and spend the greater part of their time in the chase. By this daily exercise they become hardy, and even in the dead of winter they are accustomed to bathe in the rivers. They prohibit the importation of wine, for, as they maintain, the constitution is weakened and the people are rendered effeminate by its use. Rarely do they allow even the traders to come into their country, and then only to sell them the spoil they have taken in war. When travellers come to a town of this people, everybody crowds around them and asks them all sorts of questions, but travellers invent answers, for they never entrust a secret to the Gauls, who are so fickle that they often undertake important enterprises on the vaguest rumors.

Exercise LXVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VI.

Caesar had the suspicion that the Gauls would follow their usual practise, and he ascertained, on his arrival at headquarters, that his suspicions were

well founded. The Gauls had sent delegations to the several states of the Germans, and everything was ready for a war against the Romans. Anxious to avoid facing two powerful enemies at one time, he summoned a council of the Gallic chiefs, addressed them in kind words, and assured them that he was their friend. Though he had found out from his soldiers that the Gauls had acceded to all the demands of the Germans, and that the Germans had been induced by them to leave the Rhine and to enter Gaul to liberate it from the power of Rome, he concealed these facts from the deputies that were sent to him. At once he raised a detachment of cavalry and made preparations for war against the Germans.

Exercise LXVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VII.

At once Caesar selected his cavalry, and began his march to the spot where he had heard the Germans were encamped. After marching several days, he met the enemy, who sent an embassy to him. One of the ambassadors spoke as follows: "We have not been the aggressors in this war, and we have always followed the traditions of our ancestors, never to attack a nation unless it first attacks us; if, however, we are attacked we never shrink from battle, and we never ask our foes for quarter. We came into Gaul on the invitation of the Gauls themselves. To you, Romans, we can be of service, but you ought to allow us either to retain the lands we have obtained by right of conquest, or to assign us other lands in Gaul. The Suebi alone are a match for us in arms, for there is no other people in the world whom we cannot defeat."

Exercise LXVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VIII.

It is not fair that you should seize the lands of others since you are not able to protect your own borders. There are no unoccupied lands in Gaul, and, therefore, it would be impossible to give lands to so large a number of people without doing wrong to others. So long as you remain on this side of the Rhine you and I cannot be friends, for it would not be right that my friends, the Gauls, should be without protection against the wrongs committed by the Germans. You may, if you wish, settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose ambassadors are in my camp complaining of the wrongs done by the Suebi. They have asked my aid in this war against the Suebi.

Exercise LXIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IX.

The ambassadors of the Germans who came to the Roman camp requested that a delay of three days be given them to discuss the proposals

of the Roman commander. They told Caesar that all his proposals had to be laid before their people. If this time were given for discussing the proposals, they would return to his headquarters, and they requested, in the meantime, that he would not advance any further into their territory. Caesar knew well the reason why this delay was asked for. The enemy had few cavalry with them, for the greater part of the horse had been sent across the Meuse for the purpose of obtaining fodder, and they were waiting for its arrival. On its arrival, there was no doubt but that the Germans would attack the Roman camp. This was the reason why the delay was asked for by the Romans.

Exercise LXX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter X.

The Rhine is a river of Germany, which takes its rise in the Alps, and for a long distance it flows with a rapid current through the lands of several states. It divides, as it approaches the sea, into several branches, and forms large islands which are inhabited by a fierce and barbarous people, who live chiefly on fish and the eggs of birds. It receives a tributary called the Meuse, which has its cradle in the Vosges Mountains, and flows into the Rhine about eighty miles from the sea. The Waal, also, is a tributary of the Rhine. The island of the Batavi is formed by the junction of the Meuse and Rhine. The Vosges Mountains begin in the territory of the Gauls, but extend to the frontiers of Germany, and in these mountains several rivers take their rise.

Exercise LXXI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XI.

After these days, according to agreement, the ambassadors met Caesar on his arrival at a place about twelve miles from their own encampment. When Caesar did not grant their demands, they earnestly begged him that he would not advance further into their lands. They also entreated him to send some of his officers in advance, to keep his soldiers in check and to prevent them from making an attack against their people. They further requested him to allow them an opportunity to send ambassadors to their neighbors, for they said that if their neighbors would accede to their demands they also themselves would accept the proposals Caesar made. Caesar knew well that the object of this proposal was to gain time until the cavalry, which the enemy had been waiting for, should arrive. He told the envoys that he should advance four miles further to get water,

and bade as many as possible on the next day to assemble at headquarters, but he sent orders to his advanced guard not to attack the enemy till he should be on the field in person.

Exercise LXXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XII.

The enemy, as we have said, had sent most of their cavalry across the Meuse, and these had not yet returned. They, therefore, had not more than eight hundred cavalry in camp, while our men numbered five thousand. When our men were least of all expecting it, the enemy made a vigorous attack on them, and at once threw our ranks into confusion. According to their custom they dismounted, stabbed our horses, unhorsed the riders, drove the rest in flight and made such havoc that the advanced guard of our cavalry did not stop till they came up with the main body of the infantry. Among those who fell in this skirmish was Piso, a man most valiant. He met his death in an attempt to rescue his brother, who had been surrounded by the enemy.

Exercise LXXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIII.

At the very time when the Germans were sending ambassadors and suing for peace, they treacherously, without provocation, made an attack on the Roman lines. From what Caesar knew of the fickleness of the Gauls, he realized what the effect of defeat would be. He considered it would be the height of folly to wait till the enemy were reinforced by the arrival of their cavalry, and he thought it wise to allow the enemy no time to perfect their plans. Calling a council of war, he gave orders to his officers to bring on the battle early next day. Even then the Germans exhibited the same treacherous spirit as they had on the day before, for they came in numbers to the Roman camp for the purpose, as they alleged, of clearing themselves of the charge of beginning a battle. Caesar, ordering the arrest of all the deputies, then left the camp, and commanded his cavalry to follow closely the main body of the infantry.

Exercise LXXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIV–XV.

Caesar, by the rapidity of his march, gave no time to the enemy to form their plans, for he covered the distance of eight miles, which lay between his camp and the enemy, before they were aware of his advance. On his arrival, therefore, they were utterly at a loss what to do. On his arrival,

indignant at the treachery the enemy had displayed the day previous, Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a general attack on the camp of the Germans. When once the Romans entered the camp, they began an indiscriminate massacre of the enemy. Some of the latter retreated to the baggage waggons, where they held out a short time; others took to flight, and in their haste they threw away their arms and military standards. Many of the Germans did not stop in their flight till they reached the river Rhine, and in their attempts to swim across perished in the stream. Our men, however, returned to the camp without much loss.

Exercise LXXV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVI.

When Caesar noticed that the Germans were easily induced by the Gauls to cross the Rhine and to make war on the Roman people, he resolved to lead his forces across the river to make the Germans understand the extent of the power of the Roman army. Another reason was this, that a part of the Germans who had as yet refrained from taking part in the war, had formed a junction with those who had crossed the river. When Caesar demanded the surrender of the aggressors in this war, they sent the following reply: "If you consider it wrong for the Germans to cross the Rhine, why do you claim any power in our territory?" When the Ubii sent ambassadors to you, and earnestly implored you to send aid to them, nothing would have prevented you from doing so, had you been in Gaul at that time. Your army has such a name and reputation that even the most distant tribes of Germany feel protected by your alliance with it.

Exercise LXXVI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XVIII, XIX.

The bridge across the Rhine was built with such speed that the whole work was completed within ten days, from the time that the timber began to be collected from the neighboring district. When our army crossed, many chiefs came to the headquarters of Caesar to offer submission; others, however, left their lands and took all their effects to the woods. The lands of the latter Caesar caused to be devastated with fire and sword; but those of the inhabitants who were well affected, he willingly spared. When the Suebi, the most powerful of the German tribes, learned that the bridge had been built, they called a council of war, and resolved to collect as many men as possible to await the arrival of the Romans, and to fight a pitched battle in a central part of their territories. Caesar, however, did not march against them, for he considered that all the objects aimed at had

been attained. He had struck terror into the hearts of the Germans, he had wreaked vengeance on the Sugambri, and had saved the Ubii from attack. After cutting down the bridge, he returned to Gaul.

Exercise LXXVII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XX.

Caesar decided to visit Britain before winter set in, to prevent the Britons from assisting the Gauls. He thought it would be of advantage to ascertain the size of the island, the kind of the inhabitants, and the extent of their power, for almost nothing was known to Rome. Merchants had told him that if he visited it, he would find on the sea coast a people possessing ships and harbors. The ships they use both for visiting the localities that lie opposite the island, and for making war on their enemies. Their skill in war, accordingly, was considerable, and time would fail me to enumerate the wars they have carried on. They live under institutions which have been extolled by almost all who have investigated them, and no one has ever visited the island without learning something which proved of advantage to himself.

Exercise LXXVIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XX-XXI.

Roman merchants had occasionally touched at Britain, but they were unable to give any information as to the size of the island, the qualities of the harbors, the character or habits of the inhabitants. Caesar desired to look at these with his own eyes, and the fleet which had been used in the Venetic war[1] was ordered to assemble in the channel. He directed Caius Volusenus, an officer whom he could trust, to take a galley and reconnoitre the coast of the island, while he himself followed to Boulogne,[2] where his vessels were waiting for him. The gathering of the flotilla and the object had been reported to Britain, and envoys from various tribes were waiting there with offers of hostages and humble protestations. Caesar received them graciously, and sent back with them a Gaul surnamed Commius, whom he had made chief of the Atrebates, to tell the people that he was coming over as a friend, and that they had nothing to fear.

[1] *bellum Veneticum.* [2] *portus Itius.*

—*Froude's Caesar (Adapted).*

Exercise LXXIX.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XX-XXI.

When Caesar was on the point of setting out for Britain, he summoned from all sides traders, to ascertain the size of the island and the character

of the inhabitants that dwell there. From these he learned very little, for they were very chary of risking their lives among the barbarians who inhabited the island. He, therefore, selected Caius Volusenus, an officer in whom he had the greatest confidence, and commanded him to reconnoitre the island in a war-ship, as far as his opportunities would allow him to do so. When the officer had inspected the coast, he returned five days after his departure, and reported the results of his observations to Caesar. Summer had almost closed, and there was slight hope of finishing the campaign that year, as the winter in these northern climates sets in early. He mustered all the men-of-war he could, and proceeded with all speed to carry on war against the Britons.

Exercise LXXX.

Caesar, B. IV, XXII.

Volusenus had just returned to the camp after an absence of five days, unable to find anything of importance about Britain or its people. The ships that had arrived at port were unable to carry over more than two legions, but for Caesar's purpose they were sufficient. Leaving Sabinus and Cotta in charge of the rest of the army, he despatched Rufus to the coast to look after the vessels. The general, thinking that nothing should interfere with his design of crossing into Britain, also started at once for the port from which there was the shortest sea passage to Britain, and there he awaited for several days the arrival of the cavalry. But the latter did not come up till after Caesar left Gaul, for they were wind bound about eight miles, so that they could not reach the harbor from which they intended to sail.

Exercise LXXXI.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIII.

"I have called you together, officers, in order that I may convey my wishes to you personally. All arrangements are completed; the troops will embark during the present watch. As soon as wind and tide are favorable, I shall give you the signal for embarkation. Thereupon let all embark, weigh anchor, and set sail at once. When you have gone forward about seven miles, you will see a large island; there the ships of the enemy are stationed. Hem them in on all sides, and, if possible, let not a single man escape. Meantime let all await on the open shore till the signal is given."

Turn the above also into oblique narration.

Exercise LXXXII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XXIII-XXIV.

When he obtained fair weather, he set sail about midnight and reached Britain at 10 a.m. On his arrival at the island, many difficulties presented themselves to him. In the first place, the shore was not suitable for disembarkation, for it was so steep that the enemy could hurl from the cliffs their darts on our soldiers, who had taken up their position on the shore. Our ships, too, could be moored only in deep water owing to their size, and, therefore, the soldiers were compelled to leap down from their vessels into the water, form in line, and meet the onset of the enemy. Besides, the soldiers knew little of the locality, while the enemy knew every shoal. Under these circumstances our men did not exhibit the bravery that usually characterized them on such occasions.

Exercise LXXXIII.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XXIII, XXIV.

A council of war was called, and the general addressed his staff as follows: "I consider it a fortunate thing that we have had fair weather for the expedition; still you must not imagine that the campaign will be an easy one. I recognize the magnitude of the difficulties you will have to face. You will meet in battle the fiercest foe you have yet encountered—a foe, too, that knows every foot of the ground; you will need to disembark in deep water, where it will be difficult for you to keep your footing. Everything must be done punctually and simultaneously, for naval evolutions, even more than other evolutions of war, require instant despatch. The land we are approaching is almost unknown to you; of this, however, rest assured, the inhabitants are brave, and will stubbornly contest every foot of our advance. You will, therefore, have to stand your ground, and exhibit that bravery which you have so often displayed in former battles."

Exercise LXXXIV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXV.

The ships of war were moored on the right of the enemy, and by their unusual form caused dismay to the barbarians, for they had never seen vessels so large. The vessels were then rowed forward, and the soldiers, along with the artillery, were sent ashore to dislodge the enemy from their position which they had taken up on the heights. When the Britons saw our men advancing, some of them came to a halt, others retreated. At first our men hesitated to leap down from the vessels, on account of the

depth of the water, but the standard-bearer of the tenth legion, after uttering a prayer for the success of the enterprise, advanced against the foe. "Let us not," said he, "betray the eagle to the enemy, for this would be disgraceful to a Roman." Then all, with a cheer, leaped down from the ships and advanced against the enemy.

Exercise LXXXV.

Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXVI.

The difficulty of disembarkation was very great, owing to the depth of water. Our men could not obtain a firm foothold, nor could they rally round their own standard, for they disembarked not in a body, but singly. The enemy, on the other hand, knew every foot of the ground, and, with their horses at full speed, attacked our men, who were hampered in their movements by the waves and by the heavy weight of their armor. Caesar at once despatched some ships manned with soldiers to the aid of the landing party. As soon as they reached the shore they attacked and put the enemy to flight. They were unable, however, to advance very far, owing to the want of cavalry, which latter had not made the island, owing to the storm.

Exercise LXXXVI.

Over this river there was a bridge, and beside the bridge the general resolved to post a garrison at once. He put in charge of this garrison a member of his staff *(legatus)*, with instructions that it was of the utmost consequence to the safety of the country to hold out as long as possible. But the enemy were indignant that we should have the audacity to pitch a camp right in the heart of their country ; and mustering their forces to the number of twenty thousand men, they proceeded at once to assault the place. The garrison held out with difficulty ; nevertheless they did hold out ; and after several days the enemy, losing hope of making a capture, withdrew from the field.

—Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1892.

Exercise LXXXVII.

Caesar determined to cross over to Britain, because the Belgians of South Britain had sent help to their kinsmen in Gaul, with whom he was fighting. So he set sail to Britain with a small army. When the Britons, who were watching for him, saw his fleet draw near the shore, they came down and kept the Romans from landing, till a brave standard-bearer leapt from a galley into the water among the Britons. When the Roman soldiers saw him in the midst of their foes they followed him to save the standard, and at last made good their landing, and drove the Britons up

into the country. Then Caesar marched through most of the people of Kent, fought several battles and forced the tribes near him to give hostages and sue for peace. But he was not able to profit by his success. He was afraid of the bad weather in the channel, for it was getting late in the year, so he went back to Gaul.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1894.*

Exercise LXXXVIII.

The spring had not yet passed when the Roman armament sailed for Britain. Caesar took with him five legions and an equal *(par)* number of cavalry, the usefulness of which had been proved in the late expedition. These legions were left under Labienus to provide for the security of Gaul. The landing was effected, without opposition, at the same spot as in the previous summer; and Caesar, leaving two cohorts to protect his naval station, repaired with the main body to a spot not far from the shore, where he constructed a camp to which he might retreat in case of defeat. This, it is thought, is the foundation of the famous *(celeber)* station of Rutupiae, whose ruins attest to this day the greatness of Roman military works.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1895.*

Exercise LXXXIX.

Having finished the German war, Caesar resolved, for many reasons, that he must cross the Rhine, a very broad, deep, and rapid river, which divides Gaul from Germany. His strongest reason was that seeing the Germans were easily induced to make inroads into Gaul, he wished to show them that the Romans had both the power and the courage to carry the war into their country. Accordingly he made the necessary preparations, and caused a bridge to be constructed over the river, by which to transport his troops. —*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1895.*

Exercise XC.

Before the task was completed, a deputation of chiefs arrived, bringing word that their warriors were encamped in good numbers about eight miles distant, and desiring our general to appoint the time and place for a council. He ordered them to meet him on the next day near his camp. In the morning the little army moved in battle order to the place of council, and at the appointed hour the deputation appeared. The orator declared that the war had arisen without any fault of theirs; they desired that there should be peace between us and his people; and to show their good will, at once delivered eighteen prisoners whom they had brought with them, promising that we should receive the rest as soon as they could collect them.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1897.*

VOCABULARY.

LATIN-ENGLISH.

ABBREVIATIONS.

The references in the Vocabulary are to the pages and sections of this book and to the chapters of Nepos and Caesar. Thus: 82, 5=page 82, § 5; N. T. 3=Nepos, Themistocles, Chapter III; N. A.=Nepos, Aristides; N. H.=Nepos, Hannibal; C. iv, 2=Caesar, Book IV, Chapter II.

abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
cf.	compare.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
dat.	dative.
defec.	defective.
dem.	demonstrative.
dep.	deponent.
dim.	diminutive.
distrib.	distributive.
F.	feminine noun.
gen.	genitive.
impers.	impersonal.
indecl.	indeclinable.
indef.	indefinite.
interrog.	interrogative.
intr.	intransitive.
irreg.	irregular.
M.	masculine noun.
N.	neuter noun.
num.	numeral.
ord.	ordinal.
p.	page.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
perf.	perfect.
pl. or plur. . .	plural.
prep.	preposition.
pro.	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
sc.	scilicet (one may understand).
sing.	singular.
sup.	superlative.
tr.	transitive.
v.	verb.

The quantity of vowels long or short by position and of diphthongs (which are all long) and of final short syllables, is not given.

VOCABULARY.

A.

a, ab, prep. with abl. (**a** only before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants); from (85, 2; 156, 4; 158, 2); by (71, 2); **puer a ianua**, the door-keeper, porter (N. H. 12); **a pueris**, from boyhood (C. iv, 1); **a suis finibus**, on the side of their territories (C. iv, 3); **a Suebis**, on the side of the Suebi (C. iv, 3); **ab millibus passuum octo**, eight miles off (C. iv, 22); **ab aperto latere**, on the exposed flank (the right side) (C. iv, 26); **a Pirustis**, on the side of the Pirustae (C. v, 1).

ab-do, -dĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, v. tr., hide.

ab-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -ductum, v.tr., lead away, withdraw.

ăb-ĕo, -īre, -īvi (-ĭī), -ĭtum, v.intr., go away.

ab-hinc, adv., ago; **abhinc decem annos** or **abhinc decem annis**, ten years ago (82, 5).

ab-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v.tr., throw away.

ăb-ĭēs, -ĭētis, F., a fir-tree, spruce.

abs-cēdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, v.intr., go away, leave off.

absen-s, -tis (pres. part. of **absum**), adj., absent.

ab-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭti, v.intr., desist; **ab signis legionibusque non absistere**, not to stop short of the standards of the legions (C. v, 17).

ab-solvo, -solvĕre, -solvī, -sŏlūtum, v.tr., acquit.

abs-tĭnentĭ-a, -ae, F., disinterestedness.

ab-sum, -esse, -fŭi, v.intr., be absent, distant from; **abesse a bello**, to take no part in war; **abesse decem millia passuum**, to be ten miles off; **neque multum abesse quin**, to be not far from (C. v, 2).

ac (used before consonants); another form of **atque** (used before vowels), which see.

ac-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessi, -cessum, v.intr., go towards, reach; **accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus**, all the ships reached Britain (C. v, 8); impers., **accēdit, -cēdĕre, -cessit**, it is added; **accessit etiam quod**, there was also added the fact that (C. iv, 16); **accedebat huc ut**, to this was added the fact that (C. v, 16).

ac-cĕlĕro, -cĕlĕrāre, -cĕlĕrāvi, v. intr., hasten towards.

ac-ceptus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **accipio**, used as an) adj., agreeable to.

accerso, see **arcesso**.

ac-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdī, happen; usually impers.; **accīdit, accīdĕre, accīdit**, it happens; **opportunissime res accidit**, an opportunity most favorably was presented (C. iv, 13); **opportune accidisse arbitratus**, thinking that this had happened fortunately (C. iv, 22); **accidit ut**, it happened that (C. iv, 29).

ac-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdī, -cīsum, v. tr., cut into.

ac-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, ceptum, v.tr., receive; **id accipere**, to hear this (N. H. 2).

ac-commŏdo, -commŏdāre, -commŏdāvī, -commŏdātum, v. tr., fit to.

ac-cūrātē, adv., carefully.

ac-cūrāt-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. of **accuro**, used as an) adj., careful.

ac-curro, -currĕre, -currī, -cursum, v. intr., run to.

ac-cūso, -cusāre, -cusāvī, -cusātum, v. tr., accuse, blame.

ācer, -ris, -re, adj., keen, sharp, severe (comp., **acrior**; sup., **acerrimus**).

ăcĭ-ēs, -ēī, F., edge, line of battle; **aciem instruere**, to draw up a line of battle; **aciem constituere**, to draw up a line (of ships) (N. H. 11).

ac-quĭesco, -quĭescĕre, -quĭēvī, -quĭētum, v. intr., repose in death, sleep one's last sleep.

ācrĭter, adv., fiercely, keenly (comp., **ācrĭus**; sup., **ācerrĭme**); **acriter pugnatum est**, a keen battle was fought; **acerrime occupari**, to be very actively employed (N. H. 7).

actŭārĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., impelled by oars, furnished with oars.

ăc-us, -ūs, F., a needle, pin.

ăc-ūtus, -ūtă, -ūtum, adj., sharp, keen.

ăd, prep. (with acc.), to, against, towards, near to, at, besides; **ad voluntatem**, to suit their wishes; **ad laborem ferendum**, as regards enduring fatigue (c. iv, 2); **ad extremum**, at last (c. iv, 4); **ad haec**, in reply to this (c. iv, 8); **ad pristinam fortunam**, to complete his former good fortune (c. iv, 26); **ad diem**, on the right day, punctually (c. v, 1); **ad Cantium**, opposite Kent (c. v, 13); **ad solis occasum**, at sunset (c. v, 8); **ad hunc modum**, in this way.

ad-aequo, -aequāre, -aequāvī, -aequātum, v.tr., make equal.

ad-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, v.tr., add.

ad-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v.tr., lead to, bring to (of persons), induce; **in suspicionem regi adducere**, to bring under the suspicion of the king (N. H. 2).

ăd-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum, v.tr. and intr., approach, visit, reach.

ădĕō, adv., to this point, so, such, to that degree.

ad-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v.tr., treat, visit with; **morbo adfectus**, attacked with disease; **supplicio (poenā) adficere**, punish.

ad-fligo, -flīgĕre, -flixī, -flictum, v.tr., dash down, damage; **navem adfligere**, to damage a vessel (c. iv, 31).

ad-hĭbĕo, -hĭbēre, -hĭbŭī, -hĭbĭtum, v.tr., summon, call in, admit; **adhibitis principibus maioribusque natu**, summoning the chiefs and elders (c. iv, 13).

ad-huc, adv., to this place, thus far, as yet.

ad-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw to, throw up; **in litus telum adici poterat**, a dart could be thrown to the water's edge (c. iv, 23); **aggerem ad munitiones adicere**, to throw up a mound against the fortifications (c. v, 9).

ăd-ĭgo, -ĭgĕre, -ēgī, -actum, v.tr., drive in, hurl to.

ăd-ĭmo, -ĭmĕre, -ēmī, -emptum, v.tr., take away, deprive of.

ăd-ĭpiscor, -ĭpiscī, -eptus sum, v.tr. dep., attain to, acquire, obtain.

ăd-ĭtus, -ĭtūs, M., approach, landing-place; **mercatoribus est aditus**, merchants go there (c. iv, 2).

ad-iungo, -iungĕre, -iunxī, -iunctum, v.tr., join to, add.

ad-iŭvo, -iŭvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, v.tr., aid, help, assist.

Admēt-us, -ī, M. Admetus, king of the Molossi, a people of Thrace. He protected Themistocles when a suppliant. Thucydides (i, 136) says that Themistocles took the son of Admetus in his arms and seated himself as a suppliant at the hearth, adding that the step he adopted was the strongest mode of entreaty known in the country. The historian also adds that Admetus was at variance with Themistocles.

ad-mĭnister, -mĭnistrī, M., a servant, assistant.

ad-mĭnistr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., do, manage; **cum paulo tardius administratum esset**, when this was done somewhat slowly (c. iv, 23); **rempublicam administrare**, to carry on the government.

ad-mīror, -mīrārī, -mīrātus sum, v.tr. dep., wonder at, admire.

ad-mitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, v.tr., allow, permit; **facinus admittere**, to commit a crime; **dedecus admittere**, to be guilty of a disgrace (c. iv, 25).

ad-mŏdum, adv., very much, greatly; with numbers, fully, at least.

ad-mŏnĕo, -mŏnēre, -mŏnŭī, -mŏnĭtum, v.tr., advise, warn, remind.

ăd-ŏlescens, -ŏlescentis, M., a youth.

ăd-ŏlescentĭ-a, -ae, F., youth.

ăd-ŏlesco, -ŏlescĕre, -ŏlēvī, -ultum, v.intr., grow up, reach adult age.

ăd-ŏrĭor, -ŏrīrī, -ortus sum, v.tr. dep., rise up against, attack, assail.

ad-plĭco, -plĭcāre, -plĭcāvī (-plĭcŭī), -plĭcātum (-plĭcĭtum), v.tr., lean against; **ad societatem Atheniensium se applicare**, to attach themselves to an alliance with the Athenians (N. A. 2). (Also written **applico.**)

Adrumēt-um, -ī, N., Adrumetum, a city of Africa Propria, south of Carthage. (See **Hadrumetum.**)

ad-sĭdŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., incessant, unbroken, diligent.

ad-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, -stĭtum, v.intr., stand near or by.

ad-spectus, -spectūs, M., look, appearance.

ad-suēfăcĭo, -suēfăcĕre, -suēfēcī, -suēfactum, v.tr., accustom.

ad-suēfact-us, -ă, -um, adj., accustomed to; **Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti**, they have become familiar with the Gallic customs (c. iv, 3).

ad-suesco, -suescĕre, -suēvī, -suētum, v.tr., accustom to (acc. of person and abl. of thing).

ad-sum, -esse, -fūī, v.intr., be present, near; aid.

ad-trĭbŭo, -trĭbŭĕre, -trĭbŭī, -trĭbūtum, v.tr., assign, show.

adŭlescens, see adŏlescens.

adŭlescentia, see adolescentia.

ad-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v.tr., reach.

ad-ventus, -ventūs, M., arrival.

ad-versārĭus, -versārĭă, -versārĭum, adj., opposed, hostile.

adversārī-us, -ī, M., an enemy.

ad-vers-ŭs, -ă, -um, adj., turned to, opposed to, unfavorable; nocte adversa, in the teeth of night, or in a foul night (C. iv, 28).

adversus, prep. (with acc.), opposed to, over against.

ad-verto, -vertĕre, -verti, -versum, v. tr., turn to; animum advertere, to notice.

ad-vŏlo, -vŏlāre, -vŏlāvī, -vŏlātum, v. tr., fly to, hasten to.

aed-es, -is, F., a temple; in plural, a house or temples.

aedĭfĭcĭ-um, -ī, N., dwelling, house.

aedĭfĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., build.

Aedŭ-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Aedui, a tribe of Gaul (*France*).

Aedŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., Aeduan.

Aegāt-ēs, -ĭum, F. pl., the Aegates, islands in the Mediterranean, west of Sicily.

aeg-er, -ră, -rum, adj., sick (comp. aegrĭor; sup., aegerrimus).

Aegīn-a, -ae, F., Aegina, an island in the Saronic gulf, west of Athens.

aegr-ē, adv., with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.

aegrōt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.intr., be sick.

Aegypt-us, -ī, F., Egypt, a country of north-eastern Africa.

Aemĭlĭ-us, -ī, M.: (1) Lucius Paulus Aemilius, a Roman consul who fell at Cannae, a village of Apulia, a district of Italy, 216 B.C.; (2) Lucius Aemilius Paulus: according to some Hannibal died in his consulship, 182 B.C.

ăēnĕ-us, -ă, -um, adj., made of bronze or copper.

aequāl-is, -e, adj., of the same age (with dative).

aequāl-is, -is, M., a contemporary.

aequē, adv., equally, in an equal degree.

aequĭnoctĭ-um, -ī, N., the equinox, either 21st March or 21st September; in Caesar, the latter.

aequĭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., equal.

aequĭt-as, -ātis, F., evenness; animi aequitas, contentment.

aequ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make equal.

aequ-us, -ă, -um, adj., equal, fair; aequum est, it is only fair (N. T. 7).

āĕr, āĕris, M., air, mist.

aerārĭ-um, -ī, N., treasury; in aerario reponere, to deposit in the treasury (N. H. 7).

aes, aeris, N., bronze, copper; money; aes alienum, debt (literally, money belonging to another).

aest-as, -ātis, F., summer; mediā aestate, in the middle of summer; extremā aestate, at the end of summer; primā aestate, at the beginning of summer; aestatem consumere, to spend the summer (C. v, 4).

aestĭmātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., value, valuation, esteem.

aestĭm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., value, think, reckon; litem aestimare, to assess the amount of damages (C. v, 1).

aest-us, -ūs, M., tide.

aet-as, -ātis, F., period of life, life; haec aetas, the present moment (N. H. 2).

af-fĕro, -ferre, attŭlī, allātum, v. tr., bring to, assign, report, announce.

af-fĭcĭo, see adficio.

af-fĭrmo, -firmāre, -firmāvī, -firmātum, v. tr., assert, declare.

af-flicto, -flictāre, -flictāvī, -flictātum, v. tr., damage, wreck.

af-flīgo, -flīgĕre, -flixī, -flictum, v. tr., damage; navem affligere, to damage a vessel (C. iv, 31).

Afrĭc-a, -ae, F., Africa.

Afrĭc-us, -ī, M. (properly an adj., with ventus understood); the south-west wind, still called Africo by the Italians.

Ăgămemn-on, -ŏnis, M., Agamemnon, king of Mycenae in Greece, and commander of the Greek forces at Troy.

ăg-er, -rī, M., a field, land; pl., lands, territories.

ag-ger, -gĕris, M., a mound.

ag-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., go against, assail, attack.

ag-grĕgo, -grĕgāre, -grĕgāvī, -grĕgātum, join to; **se aggregare** (military term), fall in (C. iv, 26).

ag-men, -mĭnis, N., an army on the march; a column.

ăgo, ăgĕre, ēgī, actum, v. tr., move, go, do, drive; **hiemem agere**, to pass the winter; **gratias agere**, to return thanks; **id agitur**, this is the object (N. T. 5); **est actum de nobis**, it is all over with us.

ăgrĭcŏl-a, -ae, M., a farmer.

ăgrĭcultūr-a, -ae, F., agriculture.

āĭo, v. tr., defective, say yes, assert, say (see page 275).

ălăc-er, -ris, -re, adj., active, quick, impetuous.

ălăcrĭt-as, -ātis, F., dash, haste; **alacritate uti**, to show dash (C. iv, 24).

alb-us, -ă, -um, adj., white; **album plumbum**, tin (C. v, 12).

alc-es, -is, F., the elk.

Ălexand-er, -rī, M., Alexander, the Great, king of Macedonia; born 356 B.C., died 323 B.C.

ălĭas, adv., at another time, elsewhere; **alias...alias**, at one time...at another time.

ălĭēn-us, -ă, -um, adj., belonging to another; another's; strange, foreign, hostile; **aes alienum**, debt (another's money); **alieno loco**, on unfavorable ground; **alienum tempus**, an unfavorable time (C. iv, 34).

ălĭo, adv., elsewhere.

ălĭquamdĭu, adv., for some time; for a while.

ălĭquando, adv., at some time or other; occasionally, at last.

ălĭquanto, adv., somewhat, considerably, rather.

ălĭquant-us, -ă, -um, adj., considerable, some; **aliquantum itineris**, some distance (C. v, 10).

ălĭqui, -quae, -quod, indef. pro., some one, any one.

ălĭ-quis, -qua, -quid, indep. pro., some one, any one; **aliquid temporis**, some time.

ălĭquot, indef. indeclinable pro., some, several.

ălĭter, adv., otherwise.

ălĭ-us, -ă, -ud (for declension see p. 27), pro., another, other, different; **alius ...alius**, one...other; **alii...alii**, some...others; **alius alia ex navi**, one from one ship, another from another (C. iv, 26).

Allŏbrŏg-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Allobroges, a tribe of Gaul.

ălo, ălĕre, ălŭī, ălĭtum or **altum**, v. tr., rear, nourish; **publice alere**, to maintain at the public expense.

Alp-ēs, -ium, pl. F., the Alps.

Alpĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., Alpine; in pl. **Alpici, -ōrum**, Alpine tribes.

alt-er, -ĕra, -ĕrum, adj., one of two; **alter...alter**, the one...the other; **alteri...alteri**, the one party...the other party.

altĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., heighth, depth.

alt-us, -ă, -um, adj., high, deep; **in alto**, on the deep.

ăma-ns, -ntis, adj., loving; as a noun: a lover.

Ambĭān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Ambiani, a tribe of north-eastern Gaul, from which the modern town, Amiens, takes its name.

amb-ĭo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ītum, v. tr., go around, canvass.

Ambĭvārĭt-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Ambivariti, a tribe on the Mosa (*Meuse*).

amb-o, -ae, -o, adj., both.

ambŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., walk.

āmentī-a, -ae, F., madness, folly.

āmīcē, adv., friendly.

āmīcĭtĭ-a, -ae, F., friendship: **amicitiam facere**, to form an alliance (C. iv, 16).

āmīc-us, -ă, -um, adj., friendly.

āmīc-us, -ī, M., a friend.

ā-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsi, -missum, v. tr., lose.

ăm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., love.

ămoen-us, -ă, -um, adj., beautiful (of scenery).

amphŏr-a, -ae, F. [Gk. ἀμφορά fr. ἀμφί, φέρω, to carry on both sides], a two handled jar; **summa amphora**, the top of the jar (N. H. 9).

amplē, adv., abundantly; comp. **amplius**, more.

amplĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., greatness.

amplĭus, neut. comp. of adj., **amplus**, more, further. Often used with numerals without any influence on the construction: **amplius duo millia passuum**, more than two miles.

ampl-us, -ă, -um, adj., large, noble, distinguished; **amplissimo genere**

natus, born of a most illustrious family (c. iv, 12).

an, interrogative participle, whether, or (p. 291, 5).

Ancālīt-ēs, -ĭum, pl. M., the Ancalites, a British tribe in Berkshire and Oxfordshire.

an-ceps, -cĭpĭtis, adj., two-fold; **anceps periculum**, a danger in front and rear (N. T. 3).

ancŏr-a, -ae, F., an anchor; **navem tenere in ancoris**, to keep a ship at anchor (N. T. 8); **ancoram tollere**, to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23); **in ancoris exspectare**, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23); **ancoram iacere**, to cast anchor (c. iv, 28); **ad ancoras naves deligare**, to ride at anchor (c. v, 9).

ancill-a, -ae, F., a hand-maid, servant.

angŭl-us, -ī, M., a corner.

angustē, adv., narrowly, closely.

angustĭ-ae, -ārum, pl. F., defile, strait (of sea).

angust-us, -ă, -um, adj., narrow, contracted.

ănĭm-a, -ae, F., life, soul; **animam deponere**, to relinquish his life (N. H. 1).

ănĭm-adverto, -advertĕre, -adverti, -adversum, v. tr., notice.

ănĭm-al, -ālis, N., an animal.

ănĭm-us, -ī, M., mind, soul, spirit, courage; **nunquam destitit animo**, he never ceased in his heart (N. H., 1); **magni animi**, of great courage (c. v, 6); **animis impeditis**, when the attention of all was engaged (c. v, 7); **animi voluptatisque causā**, for recreation and amusement (c. v, 12).

annon, interrog. particle, or not (in the second member of a direct question, p. 130, 6).

annotīn-us, -ă, -um, adj., of the year before.

ann-us, -ī, M., a year.

annŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., a year's; **annuum tempus**, a year's time (N. T. 9).

ans-er, -ĕris, M., a goose.

ante, (1) adv., previously, before; **paucis ante diebus**, a few days before; (p. 182, 3); (2) prep. with acc. only; before, in front of, in advance of. For **ante quam** see **antequam**.

antēā, adv., previously, before, once.

ante-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. tr., precede, surpass; **agmen antecedere**, to head the line (c. iv, 11).

ante-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum, v. tr., excel, prefer.

ante-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., prefer.

antequam, conj., before (p. 201, 5).

ante-sto, -stāre, -stĭtī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., be preferred to.

Antĭŏch-us, -ī, M., Antiochus, surnamed the Great, king of Syria, reigned B.C. 233–B.C. 187. After conquering the greater part of Western Asia, he was induced by Hannibal to cross over to Europe, but was defeated at Thermopylae, 191 B.C., by the Romans. Next year he was defeated near Magnesia, in Lydia, and was compelled by the Romans to pay a yearly tribute of 2,000 tal. Being unable to pay this sum, he attempted to plunder the temple of Belus, in Susiana, which so incensed the inhabitants that they killed him and his followers, 187 B.C.

antīquĭt-as, -ātis, F., old times; antiquity.

antīqu-us, -ă, -um, adj., old, ancient.

antr-um, -ī, N., a cave.

Ap. = **Appĭus**, a Roman praenomen (see **nomen**).

ăpĕr-īo, -īre -ŭī, -tum, v. tr., open, show, reveal.

ăpertē, adv., openly.

ăpert-us, -ă, -um, adj., open, exposed, undefended; **loca aperta**, open country; **ab latere aperto**, on the exposed flank (on the right side) (c. iv, 26).

Ăpoll-o, -ĭnis, M., Apollo.

ap-pārĕo, -pārēre, -pārŭī, -pārĭtum, v. intr., attend, appear, be clear.

ap-păro, -pārāre, -pārāvī, -pārātum, v. tr., prepare, make preparations for, provide for.

appell-o, -āre, -āvī -ātum, v. tr., call.

ap-pello, -pellĕre, -pŭlī, -pulsum, v. tr., bring to land (of ships); in passive, call at, touch at.

Appennīn-us, -ī, M., the Apennines.

applĭco, see **adplico**.

Appĭus, a Roman praenomen (see **nomen**).

ap-porto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., to bring, carry to (a place).

ap-prŏpinqu-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat.), v. intr., approach, come near.

apt-us, -ă, -um, adj., fit, suitable

ăpud, prep. (with accusative); near, at, beside; **apud urbem**, near the city; **apud Artemisium**, at Artemisium (N. T. 3); **apud Caesarem**, at the headquarters of Caesar; **apud eos**, before them (N. T. 7).

Āpŭlī-a, -ae, F., Apulia, a district of south-eastern Italy.

ăqu-a, -ae, F., water.

ăquātī-o, -ōnis, F., fetching water, watering; **aquationis causā,** to obtain water (c. iv, 11).

ăquĭl-a, -ae, F., an eagle. As the eagle was the ensign of the legion, **aquila** came to mean a standard.

Ăquĭlei-a, -ae, F., Aquileia, a city in north-eastern Italy.

ăquĭlĭ-fer, -fĕrī, M., the eagle-bearer, the standard-bearer.

Ăquĭtān-us, -ī, M., an Aquitanian; an inhabitant of Aquitania, a district of south-western Gaul (*France*).

ār-a, -ae, F., an altar.

Ăr-ar, -ăris, M., the Arar (now the *Saone*), a tributary of the Rhodanus (*Rhone*).

ărātr-um, -ī, N., a plough.

arbĭt-er, -rī, M., judge; **dare arbitros,** to appoint arbitrators (c. v, 1).

arbĭtrī-um, -ī, N., a judgment, decision.

arbĭtr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., think, suppose, consider.

arb-or, -ŏris, F., a tree.

arcess-o, -ĕre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., send for, summon.

arc-us, -ūs, M., a bow.

Ardŭenn-a, -ae, F., the Ardennes, a forest of north-eastern Gaul which extended through the territories of the Treveri to those of the Remi (c. v, 3).

ardŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., steep.

argent-um, -ī, N., silver, money.

Arg-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., Argos, a city of Argolis, in the eastern part of the Peloponnesus.

Argos (only used in nom. and acc. sing.), N., see **Argi.**

argŭ-o, -ĕre, -ī, argūtum, v. tr., accuse of, charge with.

ārīd-us, -ă, -um, adj., dry. As a substantive, **aridum,** dry land; **ex arido,** on the shore (c. iv, 24).

ărī-es, -ētis, M., a battering ram.

Arĭŏvist-us, -ī, M., Ariovistus, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater part of the country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him, 58 B.C.

Arĭstīd-ēs, -ae, M., Aristides, an Athenian statesman, rival of Themistocles.

arm-ă, -ōrum, pl. N., arms; **in armis esse,** to bear arms (c. v, 3); **ab armis discedere,** to lay down arms.

armāment-um, -ī, N., tackle (of a vessel).

armātūr-a, -ae, F., armor; **levis armaturae milites,** light-armed soldiers (p. 130, 7).

armāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., armed.

armĭg-er, -ĕrī, -ĕrum, adj., armor-bearer.

arm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., arm; **regem armare,** to excite a king to arms (N. H. 10); passive, **armari,** to put on armor; **ad armandas naves,** for the equipment of the vessels (c. v, 1).

ăr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., plough.

ar-rĭpĭo, -rĭpĕre, -rĭpŭī, -reptum, v. tr., seize upon, devote oneself eagerly to.

ar-s, -tis, F., art, pursuit, stratagem.

Artaxerx-es, -is, M., Artaxerxes, king of Persia B.C. 465–B.C. 425. He was a son of Xerxes. During his reign Themistocles fled from Greece and took up his abode in Asia Minor.

art-ē, adv., tightly, closely.

Artĕmīsī-um, -ī, N., Artemisium, one of the promontories of Euboea.

artĭcŭl-us, -ī, M., little joint.

artĭfĭcī-um, -ī, N., mechanical art.

art-us, -ūs, M., joint.

arv-um, -ī, N., a ploughed field.

ar-x, -cis, F., citadel. In Nepos (Themistocles 2 and 4), **arx** means the Acropolis of Athens.

a-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., ascend, mount; **navem ascendere,** to embark.

a-scensus, -scensūs, M., ascent.

Asĭ-a, -ae, F., Asia.

a-spect-us, -ūs, M., appearance, look, sight.

asp-er, -ĕrā, -ĕrum, adj., rough, uneven, wild, fierce.

as-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry from.

assĭdŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., see **adsiduus.**

assisto, see **adsisto.**

assuesco, see **adsuesco.**

assuefacio, see **adsuefacio.**

astu, indeclinable neuter sing. (Gk. ἄστυ, city); the city, *i.e.*, Athens.

at, conj., but, yet.

āt-er, -ra, -rum, adj., black, dark.

Ăthēn-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Athens.

Ăthēnĭens-is, -e, adj., of Athens, Athenian.

atque (contracted **ac**; **atque**, before vowels, **ac**, before consonants), conj., and also, and even, and (stronger than **et**); **par atque**, the same as; **aliter atque**, different than; **contra atque**, otherwise than.

Atrĕb-as, -ātis, adj., Atrebatian.

Atrebāt-ēs, -ĭum, M., the Atrebates, a people of Belgic Gaul in the modern Artois or Arras (*Flemish Atrecht*).

Atrī-us, -ī, M., Quintus Atrius, an officer in Caesar's army, who was left on the south coast of Britain to look after the fleet while Caesar marched inland on his second expedition. B.C. 54.

ātrō-x, -cis, adj., dark, terrible.

Attĭc-a, -ae, F., Attica, a district of the south-eastern part of Northern Greece in which Athens was situated.

Attĭc-us, -ī, M., Titus Pomponius Atticus, a friend of Cicero.

at-tingo, -tingĕre, -tĭgī, -tactum, v. tr., touch on, border upon, reach; **Rhenum attingunt**, they border on the Rhine (c. iv, 3); **terram attingere**, reach land (c. v, 23).

at-tollo, -tollĕre, v. tr., raise.

attribuo, see **adtribuo.**

auct-or, -ōris, M., adviser, helper; **me auctore**, at my suggestion.

auctōrīt-as, -ātis, F., authority, influence, power, prestige.

auctumn-us (or **autumnus**), -ī, M., autumn.

audācī-a, -ae, F., boldness, daring.

audācĭter, adv., boldly.

audacter, same as **audaciter.**

aud-ax, -ācis, adj., bold, daring.

aud-ĕo, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep. v.tr. and intr., dare, be bold.

aud-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v.tr., hear.

audītī-o, -ōnis, F., hearing, listening; pl., **auditiones**, tales, rumors.

auferō, auferre, abstŭlī, ablātum, v.tr., carry away, remove (p. 154).

augĕo, augēre, auxī, auctum, v.tr., increase.

aul-a, -ae, F., a hall.

Aurēlĭ-us, -ī, M., Caius Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul, B.C. 200.

aurĕ-us, -ă, -um, adj., golden, of gold.

aurīg-a, -ae, M., a charioteer, driver.

aur-is, -is, F., an ear.

aur-um, -ī, N., gold.

Aurunculei-us, -ī, M., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of the lieutenants of Caesar in Gaul. He fell in an ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, B.C. 54.

aut, conj., or; **aut...aut**, either... or; occasionally used by Caesar for **neque** (B. iv, 1, 2, 20).

autem, conj., but, moreover, yet, also, now. (Never put first in a clause.)

autumnus, see **auctumnus.**

auxĭlĭ-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v.intr. dep. (with dat.), give help.

auxĭlĭ-um, -ī, N., aid, support; in plural, **auxilia**, auxiliary troops.

āvārĭtī-a, -ae, F., avarice, greed.

āvers-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **averto** used as an) adj., turned away.

ăvĭd-us, -ă, -um, adj., eager, covetous.

ăv-is, -is, F., a bird.

ăv-us, -ī, M., a grandfather.

B.

Baebĭ-us, -ī, M., Cneius Baebius Tamphilus, consul 182 B.C.

Balbus, see **L. Cornelius Balbus** under **Cornelius.**

barbăr-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., barbarians, a name first applied by the Greeks, then by the Romans, to the people of other nations.

barbăr-us, -ă, -um, adj., savage, barbarous.

Batāv-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Batavi, a people who inhabited the islands at the mouth of the Rhine, corresponding to the district of modern Holland.

bĕāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., happy, prosperous.

Belg-ae, -ārum, pl. M., the Belgae, a general name applied to a warlike people of north-eastern Gaul, from the Mosa (*Meuse*) to the Sequana (*Seine*), partly Celtic, partly Teutonic. The chief tribes were the Remi, Morini, Nervii, Suessiones.

bellĭcōs-us, -ă, -um, adj., warlike.

bell-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., be at war, war.

bell-um, -ī, N., war; **belli**, in war (p. 86, 3); **bellum populo Romano facere**, to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22).

bĕne, adv., well, prosperously ; comp., melius ; sup., optime.

bĕnĕfĭcī-um, -ī, N., kindness, favor.

bĕnĕvŏl-us, -ă, -um, adj., benevolent, kind ; comp., benevolentior ; sup., benevolentissimus.

bĭb-o, -ĕre, bĭbī, no sup., v. tr., drink.

Bibrŏc-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Bibroci, a tribe of Britain which occupied Berks, Sussex, Surrey and adjoining district.

bīdŭ-um, -ī, N., a space of two days.

bĭennĭ-um, -ī, N., a space of two years.

bīn-ī, -ae, -ă, distrib. num. adj., two each, two by two (p. 69, 8).

bīpĕdāl-is, -e, adj., two feet long or thick.

bis, adv., numeral, twice.

Bithȳn-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Bithyni ; a people who dwelt in Bithynia, a district between the Propontis (*Sea of Marmora*) and the Euxine (*Black Sea*).

Bithȳnĭ-a, -ae, F., Bithynia (see preceding).

Bithȳnĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., Bithynian ; see Bithyni.

bland-ĭor, -īri, -ītus sum, v. intr. dep., flatter (with dative).

Blith-o, -ōnis, see Sulpicius.

bŏn-ă, -ōrum, N. pl. of bonus ; goods, property ; bona publicare, to confiscate goods (N. H. 7).

bŏnĭt-as, -ātis, F., goodness, richness.

bŏn-us, -ă, -um, adj., good ; comp., melior ; sup., optimus.

bos, bŏvis, M. or F., an ox, cow ; pl., bŏves, cattle.

brāchĭ-um, -ī, N., arm.

brĕv-is, -e, adj., short, brief ; brevi (tempore), in a short time, soon.

brĕvĭt-as, -ātis, F., shortness.

brĕvĭter, adv., shortly, briefly.

Brĭtann-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., Britons.

Brĭtannĭ-a, -ae, F., Britain.

Britannĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., British.

brūm-a, -ae, F., the winter solstice ; Dec. 21st.

Brundūsĭ-um, -ī, N., Brundusium, a town in south-eastern Italy (now *Brindisi*).

Brūt-us, -ī, M., Brutus.

C.

C., an abbreviation for Caius, a Roman praenomen ; see Aurelius, Caesar, Claudius, Centenius, Flaminius.

cădo, cădere, cĕcĭdī, cāsum, v. intr., fall, be slain.

cādūcĕ-us, -ī, M., or cādūcĕ-um, -ī, N., a herald's staff.

caec-us, -ă, -um, adj., blind.

caed-es, -is, F., slaughter, murder.

caedo, caedĕre, cĕcīdī, caesum, v. tr., cut, kill, fell.

caelest-is, -e, adj., heavenly ; in the plural caelestes (supply dei), the gods of heaven.

cael-um, -ī, N., sky, heavens.

caerĭmōnĭ-a, -ae, F., rite, reverence, veneration, awe.

caerŭlĕ-us, -a, -um, adj., deep blue, sky-blue.

Caes-ar, -ăris, M., Caius (or Gaius) Julius Caesar, born 100 B.C., died 44 B.C. ; for Caius (or Gaius) a Roman praenomen ; see C.

călămĭt-as, -ātis, F., disorder, misfortune, defeat.

calc-ar, -āris, N., a spur.

căl-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, v. intr., be warm.

călĭd-us, -a, -um, adj., warm.

callĭdē, adv., skilfully ; comp., callidius ; sup., callidissime ; de futuris callidissime coniciebat, he was most skilful in forecasting the future (N. T. 1).

callĭdĭt-as, -ātis, F., skill, sagacity.

callĭd-us, -a, -um, adj., skilful.

Camill-us, -ī, M., Camillus, the deliverer of Rome from the Gauls in 389 B.C.

camp-us, -ī, M., plain, field ; campus Martius, a plain between the walls of Rome and the Tiber, where the elections were held and all kinds of athletic sports were practised.

căn-is, -is, M. or F., a dog.

Cannens-is, -e, adj., of, or belonging to Cannae, a village of Apulia, where the Romans were defeated by Hannibal, 216 B.C.

căno, cănĕre, cĕcĭnī, cantum, v. tr. and intr., sing.

Cantăb-er, -rī, M., a Cantabrian. The Cantabri were a mountain tribe of Spain dwelling in the Pyrennees.

Cantăbr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M. ; see Cantaber.

Cantĭ-um, -ī, N., Kent, a county in south-eastern England.

cant-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., sing.

cant-us, -ūs, M., song.

căp-er, -rī, M., a he-goat.

cap-esso, -essĕre, -essīvī, -essītum, v. tr., undertake the management of; **capessere rempublicam**, to take part in the administration of the state (N. T. 2).

căpill-us, -ī, M., hair; **esse promisso capillo**, to wear long hair.

căpĭo, căpĕre, cēpī, captum, v. tr., take; **captus misericordia**, overcome with pity (N. T. 8); **capere consilium**, to form a plan (N. H. 9); **portum capere**, to make the harbor (C. iv, 36); so **insulam capere** (C. iv, 26; v. 8).

capr-a, -ae, F., a she-goat.

captīv-us, -ī, M., a captive, prisoner.

capt-us, -ă, -um (perf. part. pass. of **capio**), taken, captured, charmed, influenced.

capt-us, -ūs, M., capacity, idea; **ut est captus Germanorum**, according to German ideas (C. iv, 3).

Căpŭ-a, -ae, F., Capua, the chief city of Campania, near the present village of *Santa Maria*.

căp-ut, -ĭtis, N., head; chief city; mouth of a river (C. iv, 10).

carc-er, -ĕris, M., a prison; in plur., barriers in a race-course.

cārē, adv., dearly, with affection.

cărīn-a, -ae, F., hull of a vessel, keel.

carm-en, -ĭnis, N., song.

car-o, -nis, F., flesh; **carne vivere**, to live on flesh (C. v, 14).

carp-o, -ĕre, -sī, -tum, v.tr., pluck.

carr-us, -ī, M., a waggon, cart.

Carthāgĭnĭens-is, -e, adj., of or belonging to Carthage, Carthaginian.

Carthāg-o, -ĭnis, F., Carthage, or Karthage, a city of Northern Africa which carried on war with Rome almost continuously from 264 B.C. to 146 B.C.

cār-us, -ă, -um, adj., dear, beloved, agreeable to.

Carvĭlĭ-us, -ī, M., Carvilius, a petty king of Kent (C. v, 22).

căs-a, -ae, F., a cottage.

căsĕ-us, -ī, M., cheese.

Cass-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Cassi, a British tribe that inhabited Hertfordshire.

Cassĭ-us, -ī, M., Caius Cassius Longus, one of the assassins of Caesar. He died 42 B.C., at Philippi.

Cassĭvellaun-us, -ī, M., Cassivellaunus, or Caswallon, the able commander-in-chief of the British army opposed to Caesar. His chief town was **Verulamium** (now *St. Albans*).

castell-um, -ī, N., a fortress.

Castĭc-us, -ī, M., Casticus, a chief of the Sequani, whom Orgetorix induced to seize the supreme power in his state.

castr-um, -ī, N., a hut, fort; in pl., **castr-a**, -ōrum, a camp; **castra ponere**, to pitch a camp; **castra munire**, to fortify a camp, to pitch a camp; **castra habere**, to be encamped (N. H. 5); **castra movere**, to advance; **castra navalia**, an encampment on the shore for protecting the fleet and the troops while landing; sometimes connected with the ships drawn up on land (C. v, 22).

cāsū, (abl. of **cāsus**, used as an) adv., by chance.

cās-us, -ūs, M., chance, accident.

cătēn-a, -ae, F., a chain.

Cătīlīn-a, -ae, M., Lucius Sergius Catiline, an ambitious and profligate Roman of Cicero's time.

caus-a, -ae, F., cause, reason, pretext; **causam interponens**, alleging as an excuse (N. T. 7); **in eadem causa**, in the same position (C. iv, 4); **multis de causis**, for many reasons (C. iv, 16).

causā, adv. (really abl. of **causa**, with the noun depending on it in the gen.), for the sake of, on account of; **meā causā**, for my sake; **frigoris depellendi causā**, for the purpose of warding off the cold.

căvĕo, căvēre, cāvī, cautum, v. tr. and intr., take precaution; **aliquem cavere**, to avoid any one; **in aliquem cavere**, to take means against one; **alicui cavere**, to take means for one's safety.

căv-um, -ī, N., a cave.

cēdo, cēdĕre, cessī, cessum, v. intr., go, yield; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating foe (C. v, 16).

cĕlĕbr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., celebrate.

cĕl-er, -ĕris, -ĕre, adj., swift; comp., **celerior**; sup., **celerrimus**.

cĕlĕrĭt-as, -ātis, F., swiftness, speed.

cĕlĕrĭter, adv., quickly; comp., **celerius**; sup., **celerrime**.

cēl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., conceal, hide.

cēn-a, -ae, F., dinner, feast.

Cĕnĭmagnī -ōrum, M. pl., the Cenimagni. The word Cenimagni is said to be a corruption for **Icenimagni**. They inhabited Norfolk and Suffolk, north of the Trinobantes.

censĕo, censēre, censŭī, censum, or **censītum**, v. tr., think, consider.

Centēnĭus, -ī, M., Caius Centenius, a Roman propraetor who fell in an engagement with Hannibal, 217 B.C.

centum, num. adj., indecl., hundred.

centŭrĭ-o, -ōnis, M., a centurion, a commander of a centuria, which at full complement numbered 100 men.

cerno, cernĕre, crēvī, crētum, v. tr., see, perceive.

certām-en, -ĭnis, N., conflict, battle, struggle.

certē, adv., at least, certainly.

cert-us, -ă, -um, adj., certain, fixed, true, **aliquem certiorem facere**, inform; **certior fieri**, to be informed; **certus locus**, a definite place; **certa dies**, a fixed day (C. v, 1).

cerv-us -ī, M., deer, stag.

(cētĕr-us), **-ă, -um** (nom. sing. not found), adj., rest.

Cethēg-us, -ī, M., see **Publius Cornelius Cethegus**, under **Cornelius**.

cĭb-us -ī, M., food, nourishment.

Cĭcĕro, -ōnis, M., Marcus Tullius Cicero, the most noted of Roman orators. He lived B.C. 106–B.C. 43.

cĭcōnĭ-a, -ae, F., a stork.

Cingĕtŏr -ix, -ĭgis, M., Cingetorix; (1) a Gaul attached to Caesar, and rival of Indutiomarus for the chieftainship of the Treveri (C. v, 3). (2) a British chief of Kent (C. v, 22).

cingo, cingĕre, cinxi, cinctum, v. tr., surround.

circā, adv. and prep. (with acc.); about, around, in the neighborhood of (see **circum**).

circĭter, adv. (with numeral adjectives); about, nearly.

circŭ-ĕo, see **circumeo**.

circŭĭt-us, -ūs, M., circumference, circuit.

circum, prep. (with acc.), around, in the neighborhood of; **circum Aquileiam**, in the neighborhood of Aquileia.

circum-clūdo, -clūdĕre, -clūsī, clūsum, v. tr., enclose.

circum-do, -dăre, -dĕdī, -dătum, v. tr, place around, surround; **urbem muro** (abl.) **circumdare**, or **urbi** (dat.) **murum circumdare**, to surround the city with a wall.

circum-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead around, draw around.

circum-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or **-ĭī**), **-ĭtum**, v. tr., go around, visit; **hiberna circumire**, to inspect the winter quarters (C. v, 2).

circum-fundo, -fundĕre, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr., pour around; in passive, surround, hem in, crowd around.

circum-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĕtī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., surround (p. 277, 7).

circum-sto, -stāre, -stĕtī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., stand around, surround (p. 277, 7).

circum-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr., surround (p. 277, 7).

cis, prep. (with acc.), on this side of.

cĭtāt-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **cito** used as an) adj., rapid, swift.

cĭtĕrĭ-or, -ōris, adj. (p. 59, 2), on this side, hither; **Gallia citerior**, Gaul on this (*i.e.*, the Roman) side of the Alps (*Northern Italy*), opposed to **Gallia ulterior**, Gaul beyond the Alps (*France*).

cĭtō, adv., rapidly, swiftly; comp., **citius**; sup., **citissime**.

cĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., urge on, hasten.

citrā, prep. (with acc.), on this side of, within.

cīvīl-is, -e, adj., civil; **bellum civile**, civil war.

cīv-is, -is, M. or F., citizen, native.

cīvĭt-as, -ātis, F., state, commonwealth: **e civitate eicere**, to banish (N. T. 8).

clād-es, -is, F., defeat, disaster.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., shout, exclaim.

clām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., call, shout; **clamatum est**, a shout was raised (p. 164, 2).

clām-or, -ōris, M., shout.

clandestīn-us, -ă, -um, adj., secret; **consilia clandestina**, privy counsels (N. H. 2).

clār-us, -ă, -um, adj., bright, clear, distinguished.

classiārī-i, -ōrum, pl. M., soldiers serving in the fleet, marines.

classiāri-us, -ā, -um, adj., belonging to the fleet.

class-is, -is, F., fleet.

Clastīdī-um, -ī, N., Clastidium (now *Chiasteggio*), a fortress on the Padus (*Po*), in Gallia Cisalpina. Nepos confuses the taking of this fortress with the battle of Ticinus, B.C. 218.

Claudī-us, -ī, M., Claudius; (1) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, born about 268 B.C., died 208 B.C., consul 222 B.C., 215 B.C., 214 B.C., 210 B.C., 208 B.C., in which year he was slain by Hannibal in battle at Venusia. He took Syracuse in 212 B.C. (2) M. Claudius Marcellus, son of No. 1, in whose year of office, 183 B.C., both Hannibal and Scipio Africanus died. (3) Appius Claudius, consul with Lucius Domitius, B.C. 54. He was brother of the infamous Clodius whom Milo murdered, and was a well known lawyer and politician of Rome.

claudo, claudĕre, clausī, clausum, v. tr., shut, close.

clēmentī-a, -ae, F., kindness, mercy.

clīen-s, -tis, M. or F., a dependant.

clīpĕ-us, -ī, M., a shield.

clīv-us, -ī, M., a slope.

Cn. = Cneius, see **Baebius**, Pompeius, Servilius.

Cnēi-us, -ī, M., see **Cn.**

cŏact-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **cogo** used as an) adj., forced; **hac necessitate coactus**, compelled by this necessity (N. T. 8).

coelum, see **caelum**.

cŏ-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum, v. intr., come together, assemble, meet.

coep-ī, -isse, v. defec. (p. 145), begin, began.

cŏ-ercĕo, -ercēre, -ercŭī, -ercĭtum, v. tr., check, restrain.

cōgĭtātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., a thinking, thought, reflection, meditation.

cōgĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., weigh well, ponder, think, plan.

cognātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., relationship, kindred.

cognōm-en, -ĭnis, N., a family name, a name. Each Roman had regularly three names, the praenomen, indicating the individual like our Christian name; the nomen indicating the **gens**, or clan, or tribe to which he belonged; the cognomen or family name. Caius (**praenomen**), Julius (**nomen**), Caesar (**cognomen**); an **agnomen** was often added for honor or character, as **Africanus** to **Scipio**, or **Iustus** to **Aristides**; hence **cognomine** (N. A. 1) = **agnomine**.

cōgnosco, cognoscĕre, cognōvī, cognĭtum, v. tr., know, learn, ascertain (p. 145, 2).

cōgo, cōgĕre, cŏēgī, cŏactum, v. tr. collect, compel, oblige; **equitatum cogere**, to collect cavalry (C. v, 3).

cŏhor-s, -tis, F., a cohort, the tenth part of a legion (see **legio**).

cŏhort-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., exhort, encourage animate, urge.

collābĕfact-us, -ā, -um, perf. part. of **collabefīo**.

collābē-fīo, -fīĕrī, -factus sum, v. pass., be supplanted.

collaud-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., praise, extol.

collēg-a, -ae, M., colleague, partner in office.

col-lĭgo, -lĭgĕre, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., collect, assemble.

coll-is, -is, M., a hill.

col-lŏco, -lŏcāre, -lŏcāvī, -lŏcātum, v. tr., station; **in matrimonium collocare**, or **collocare** alone, to give in marriage (N. A. 3); **in statione collocati**, stationed on guard (C. v, 15).

col-lŏquĭ-um, -ī, N., conversation, conference.

cŏlo, cŏlĕre, cŏlŭī, cultum, v. tr., till, cultivate; honor, worship.

cŏlōnī-a, -ae, F., settlement, colony.

cŏl-or, -ōris, M., color.

cŏm-a, -ae, F., hair.

cŏm-es, -ĭtis, M., companion (on a journey).

cŏmĭt-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v.tr. dep., attend, be a companion to.

commĕāt-us, -ūs, M., a coming and going; supplies; **duobus commeatibus**, by two relays (C. v, 23).

commĕmŏr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., make mention of, recall to mind, relate.

com-mendo, -mendāre, -mendāvī, -mendātum, v. tr., commit to protection, entrust.

commĭlĭt-o, -ōnis, M., fellow-soldier, comrade.

com-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., engage; **committere proelium cum hostibus**, to engage in battle with the enemy; in Nep. A. 1, commit a crime; **nihil his committere**, to entrust nothing to these (C. iv, 5).

Commĭ-us, -ī, M., Commius, a Gaul, chief of the Atrebates.

commŏdē, adv., correctly, profitably; **commodius verba dicere**, to speak more correctly (N. T. 10).

com-mŏdum, -mŏdī, N., convenience, profit; **quas sui quisque commodi fecerat**, which each had made for his own convenience (C. v, 8).

com-mŏdus, -mŏdă, -mŏdum, adj., convenient, favorable, fit, easy.

com-mŏror, -mŏrārī, -mŏrātus sum, v. dep. intr., delay, stay, remain.

com-mŏvĕo, -mŏvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v.tr., disturb, agitate, alarm.

commūnĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., share with, communicate, impart.

commun-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v.tr., fortify strongly.

commūn-is, -e, adj., common, general, affable, courteous; **classis communis**, the combined fleet (N. T. 3); **communi consilio**, after joint deliberation (C. v, 11).

commutātī-o, -ōnis, F., change.

commūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., change, alter, abandon.

compăr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., make ready, prepare; **copias comparare**, to collect forces; **re frumentaria comparata**, after collecting a supply of corn (C. iv, 7).

compăr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., compare.

com-pello, -pellĕre, -pŭlī, -pulsum, v.tr., drive in a body.

com-pĕrĭo, -pĕrīre, -pĕrī, -pertum, v.tr., find out, discover.

com-plĕo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, v.tr., fill completely; **naves militibus complere**, to man ships with soldiers (C. iv, 26).

com-plūres, -plura, adj. pl., very many, several.

com-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v.tr., settle; **bellum componere**, to make peace, to put an end to the war (N. H. 6).

comport-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., bring together, collect.

com-prĕhendo, -prĕhendĕre, -prĕhendī, -prĕhensum, v.tr., seize, arrest.

com-prŏb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., approve of, ratify.

cŏnāt-um, -ī, N., attempt.

cŏnāt-us, -ūs, M., attempt.

con-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. tr., yield, grant, allow; **Argos concessit**, he withdrew to Argos (N. T. 8).

con-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdī, no sup., v. intr., fall completely, fall together.

con-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdī, cīsum, v. tr., cut to pieces, rout utterly.

con-cĭlĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., win over, gain, reconcile.

concĭlĭ-um, -ī, N., a meeting, assembly; **habere concilium**, to hold a meeting (C. iv, 19).

con-cĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., urge forward, arouse; **risum concitare**, to excite laughter (N. H. 11).

con-clām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., shout, or cry out together.

con-curro, -currĕre, -currī, -cursum, v. intr., run together, rush; **eo concursum est**, a rush was made to that point; **in navem concurrere**, to charge a vessel (N. H. 10).

con-curs-us, -ūs, M., assembly, attack; **ex eo concursu**, from that collision (C. v, 10).

con-demn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., condemn, sentence.

con-dīcī-o, -ōnis, F., terms.

condĭtio, same as **condicio**.

condĭt-or, -ōris, M., founder of a city.

con-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, v.tr., found, establish, build.

con-dōn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., forgive, pardon.

Condrūs-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Condrusi, a people of north-eastern Gaul, on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*) in the district of the modern *Namur* and *Liège*.

con-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., bring together, hire.

con-fercĭo, -fercīre, -fersī, -fertum, v. tr., pack together; to cause to take close order; **legione conferta**, owing to the legion being in close order (C. iv, 32).

con-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī, collātum, v. tr., bring together, gather, collect; **se conferre**, to betake oneself; **facta conferre**, to compare deeds (N. H. 13).

confertus, see **confercio**.

confestim, adv., immediately; **confestim a proelio**, immediately after the battle.

con-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., do thoroughly; **bello confecto**, when the war was over (C. iv, 16); **rem**

conficere, to complete a matter (C. iv, 11); **itinere confecto**, after the march was made (C. iv, 14).

con-fīdo, -fīdĕre, -fīsus sum, semi-dep., v. intr., trust thoroughly (p. 278, foot note).

con-firm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., establish, cheer up.

con-fĭtĕor, -fĭtērī, -fessus sum, v. tr. dep., confess fully, avow.

con-fligo, -fligĕre, -flixī, -flictum, v. tr., strike; **proelio confligere**, to engage in battle (C. v, 15).

con-flŭe-ns, -ntis, M., of rivers; the confluence, the meeting of rivers (C. iv, 15).

con-fŏdĭo, -fŏdĕre, -fōdī, -fossum, v. tr., pierce through.

con-fŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum, v. intr., flee for refuge.

con-gĕro, -gĕrĕre, -gessī, -gestum, v. tr., carry or bring together, collect.

con-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum, v. tr., meet, charge; **inter se congredi**, to charge each other.

con-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iēctum, v. tr., throw together (at a point); **in fugam conicere**, to put to flight; **se in fugam conicere**, to betake oneself to flight (C. iv, 12); **culpam in aliquem conicere**, to cast the blame on some one (C. v, 27); **in vincula conicere**, to throw into prison (C. iv, 27); **de futuris callidissime conicere**, to forecast the future most skilfully (N. T. 1).

con-iunctim, adv., jointly in common.

con-iungo, -iungĕre, -iunxi, -iunctum, v. tr., unite, join.

coniūrātī-o, -ōnis, F., league; **facere coniurationem**, to form a league (C. iv, 30).

coniūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., form a league.

cŏn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., attempt; **conor ut faciam**, I attempt to do (p. 292, 1).

con-quīro, -quīrĕre, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, v. tr., seek after.

con-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., embark in, mount; **in navem conscendere**, to embark on a vessel (C. v, 7); **in equum conscendere**, to mount a horse.

con-scientī-a, -ae, F., consciousness, knowledge, feeling.

con-scisco, -sciscĕre, -scīvī (scīī), -scītum, v. intr., unite, agree.

conscĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., conscious, accessory to.

con-scrībo, -scrībĕre, -scrīpsī, -scriptum, v. tr., enrol, levy troops.

conscript-us, -ă, -um (perf. part. pass. of conscribo), usually in the phrase **Patres conscripti**, Conscript Fathers, *i.e.*, the Roman Senators, so called because their names were entered on the roll of the Senators.

con-secr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., consecrate.

con-sect-or, -ārī, -atus sum, v. tr., dep., follow after, pursue vigorously.

consedissent, see **consīdo**.

consens-us, -ūs, M., consent, agreement.

con-sentĭo, -sentīre, -sensī, -sensum, v. intr., agree, conspire.

con-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus (or **sĕquūtus**) **sum**, v. tr. dep., follow, overtake, gain, get; **id consequi**, to carry out this (N. H. 10).

con-sĕro, -sĕrĕre, -sĕrŭī, -sertum, v. tr., join together, unite, bring together; **proelium or pugnam or manum conserere**, to engage in battle.

con-serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., save, maintain.

con-sīdĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., examine carefully, consider.

con-sīdo, -sīdĕre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. intr., settle, halt; **copiae considunt**, the forces encamp (C. v, 9).

consĭlĭ-um, -ī, N., plan, design; wisdom, prudence; **capere consilium**, to form a plan (N. H. 9; C. iv, 13); **inire consilium**, to adopt a plan (C. iv, 5); **communi consilio**, after joint deliberation (C. v, 6); **publico consilio**, by a public plan (C. v, 1); **consilio instituto**, from carrying out his appointed plan (C. v, 4).

con-sīmĭl-is, -e, adj., very like, like in every particular.

con-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, -stĭtum, v. intr., stand, halt; consist of; **consistit in carne**, it consists of flesh; **in fluctibus est consistendum**, they had to keep their footing among the waves (C. iv, 24).

con-sōl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., console, comfort, cheer.

con-spect-us, -ūs, M., sight, appearance.

con-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., observe, see, perceive.

con-spĭc-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., see, get a sight of, espy.

constanter, adv., steadily, resolutely, uniformly.

constantĭ-a, -ae, F., firmness, constancy, resolution.

con-sterno, -sternĕre, -strāvī, -strātum, v.tr., cover with, cover over.

con-stĭtŭo, -stĭtŭĕre, -stĭtŭī, -stĭtūtum, v. tr., draw up, **aciem constituere**, to draw up a line of battle; **classem, navem, constituere**, to move a fleet, a ship; **die constituta**, on a set day; **portus constitutus est**, a port was made (N. T. 6); **domicilium constituere**, to fix his abode (N. T. 10); **his rebus constitutis**, when this was arranged (C. v, 5).

con-sto, -stāre, -stĭtī, -stātum, v. intr., be formed; impers. **constat**, it is admitted, it is certain (p. 162).

consuerunt = **consueverunt**.

con-suēsco, -suescĕre, -suēvī, -suētum, v. intr., become accustomed; in pass., be accustomed.

con-suētūd-o, -ĭnis, F., custom, habit; **ex consuetudine**, according to custom (C. iv, 32).

consueverant, see **consuesco**.

cons-ul, -ŭlis, M., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates chosen annually at Rome.

consŭl-āris, -āre, adj., of, or belonging to a consul, consular.

consŭl-āris, -āris, M., one of consular rank, one who had been consul.

consŭlāt-us, -ūs, M., the consulship, the office of consul.

consŭl-o, -ĕre, -ŭī, -ultum, v. tr., deliberate, plan; **alicui consulere**, to consult for one's benefit; **aliquem consulere**, to ask one's advice; **in aliquem consulere**, to take measures against one; **consulere sibi**, to look after himself (N. T. 8); **civitati consulere**, to take measures for the interest of the state (C. v, 3).

consulto, adv., on purpose, designedly; often **de consulto**; **consulto cedere**, to purposely retreat (C. v, 16).

consult-um, -i, N., decree, resolution, decision.

con-sūmo, -sūmĕre, -sumpsī, -sumptum, v. tr., spend, waste; **tempus consumere**, to waste time; **aestatem consumere**, to spend the summer (C. v, 4); **magna parte diei consumpta**, after a great part of the day had been spent (C. v, 9).

con-surgo, -surgĕre, -surrexī, -surrectum, v. intr., rise in a body, arise.

con-tāgĭ-o, -ōnis, F., contact.

con-temno, -temnĕre, -tempsi, -temptum, v. tr., despise, hold in contempt.

contemptus, perf. part. pass. of **contemno**.

con-tendo, -tendĕre, tendī, -tentum, v. intr., strive for, hasten to, push forward, fight; **apud eos contendit**, he maintained before them (N. T. 7); **in fines Sugambrorum contendit**, he marches into the territories of the Sugambri (C. iv, 18).

contentĭ-o, -ōnis, F., struggling; gaining a battle.

con-tent-us, -ă, -um, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4), content with.

con-test-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., invoke.

con-texo, -texĕre, -texŭī, -textum, v. tr., weave, bind together.

con-tĭcesco, -tĭcescĕre, -tĭcŭī, no sup.; v. intr., be silent.

contĭne-ns, -ntis (properly pres. part. of **contineo**, used as an) adj., with **terra** understood; literally, the uninterrupted land, the continent.

contĭnenter, adv., constantly, continually.

contĭnentĭ-a, -ae, F., self-restraint.

con-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum, v. tr., hold together, bound, restrain, hem in; **se continere**, to keep themselves together; **civitatem in officio continere**, to keep the state loyal (C. v, 3); **in officio continere**, to keep him loyal (C. v, 7).

con-tingo, -tingĕre, -tĭgī, -tactum, v. tr., touch, extend to, reach; impers., **contingit** (p. 182), it happens.

contĭnŭo, adv., immediately.

contĭnŭus, -ă, -um, adj., continuous.

con-tĭo, -tĭōnis, F., assembly; **in contionem populi prodire**, to appear before an assembly of the people (N. T. 1).

contrā, prep. (with acc. only), against, opposite to; **contra Gallias**, facing the divisions of Gaul (C. iv, 20).

contrā, adv., contrary to; **contrā atque esset dictum**, contrary to what has been said (C. iv, 13).

con-trăho, -trăhĕre, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., draw together, collect.

contrārĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., opposite, contrary.

contrōversĭ-a, -ae, F., dispute.

con-tŭmēlĭ-a, -ae, F., slight.

con-vălesco, -vălescĕre, -vălŭī, no sup. ; v. intr., grow strong, recover.

con-vall-is, -is, F., valley.

con-vĕho, -vĕhĕre, -vexī, -vectum, v. tr., carry together, convey.

con-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr. and intr., come together, assemble; with acc., interview, meet; **condiciones non convenerunt,** the terms were not agreed to (N. H. 6).

convĕnit, impers. v. intr. (with dat.), it becomes.

con-ventus, -ventūs, M., an assembly, assize; **conventum peragere,** to hold an assize (C. v, 1).

con-verto, -vertĕre, -verti, -versum, v. tr., turn, turn about; **in fugam convertere,** to turn in flight.

con-vinco, -vincĕre, -vīcī, -victum, v. tr., conquer completely; prove guilty, convict.

con-vŏco, -vŏcāre, -vŏcāvī, -vŏcātum, v. tr., summon, assemble.

co-ŏrĭor, -ŏrīrī, -ortus sum, v. intr. dep., of a storm; arise, spring up.

cōpī-a, -ae, F., abundance, plenty, quantity; pl., **copiae,** forces, supplies; **summis copiis,** with all his forces (C. v, 17); **copias instruere,** to draw up troops (C. v, 18).

cōpĭōs-us, -ă, -um, adj., well supplied, rich, wealthy.

cŏquo, cŏquĕre, coxī, coctum, v. intr., cook.

cōr, cordis, N., heart.

cōram, prep. (with abl.), face to face with, in presence of; **coram populo,** in presence of the people; **coram perspicit,** he sees in person (C. v, 11).

Corcȳr-a, -ae, F., Corcyra (now *Corfu*), one of the Ionian islands on the coast of Epirus and Acarnania.

Corcȳrae-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Corcyra, Corcyraean.

Cŏrinth-us, -ī, F., Corinth, the chief town of Achaia, a district on the northern part of the Peloponnesus.

Cornēlĭ-us, -ī, M., Cornelius, (1) Publius Cornelius Scipio, consul 218 B.C., killed in Spain 211 B.C. (2) Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus (son of No. 1), born about 234 B.C., died 183 B.C. He conquered Hannibal, at Zama, 202 B.C. (3) Lucius Cornelius Scipio Asiaticus (brother of No. 2), consul 190 B.C., defeated Antiochus. (4) Caius Cornelius Cethegus, consul 197 B.C., when Philip V. of Macedon was defeated by Flamininus at Cynoscephalae. (5) Publius Cornelius Cethegus, consul 181 B.C.

corn-ū, -ūs, N., horn, wing of an army.

cŏrōn-a, -ae, F., crown.

corp-us, -ŏris, N., body.

cor-rĭpĭo, -rīpĕre, -rīpŭī, -reptum, v. tr., seize violently, carry off.

cor-rumpo, -rumpĕre, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break in pieces, destroy, ruin, bribe (N. H. 2).

Cōr-us (or **Caurus**), **-ī,** M., the N.-W. wind.

cŏtīdĭān-us, -ă, -um, adj., daily.

cŏtīdĭē, adv., daily.

Cott-a, -ae, M., see **Aurunculeius.**

cras, adv., to-morrow.

crass-us, -ă, -um, adj., thick, coarse.

Crass-us, -ī, M., Marcus Licinius Crassus, surnamed **Dives** (the Rich), was a member of the First Triumvirate along with Caesar and Pompey (60 B.C.). He fell at Carrhae, 53 B.C., in a war against the Parthians.

crāt-is, -is, F., wicker-work, a hurdle.

crēb-er, -ră, -rum, adj., thick, numerous, frequent.

crē-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, v. tr. and intr., trust, believe, think, suppose (p. 164).

crē-mo, -māre, -māvī, -mātum, v. tr., burn.

crĕ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make, elect, choose, appoint (p. 90, 2).

cre-sco, scĕre, -vī, -tum, v. intr., increase, grow, grow up.

Crēt-a, -ae, F., Crete (now *Candia*), an island in the Mediterranean, south of Greece.

Crētens-is, -e, adj., of or belonging to Crete; in the plural, **Cretenses,** Cretans.

crī-men, -mĭnis, N., charge.

crī-nis, -nis, F., hair.

crŭcĭā-tus, -tūs, M., torture.

crūdēl-is, -ĕ, adj., cruel, hard-hearted.

crūdēl-ĭtas, -ĭtātis, F., cruelty, barbarity.

crūdēl-ĭter, adv., cruelly.

crus, crūris, N., leg.

cŭbīl-e, -is, N., a bed.

cŭĭus, gen. sing. of **quis** or **qui** (p. 126).

cŭĭusque, gen. sing. of **quisque** (p. 132).

cŭĭusvis, gen. sing. of **quivis** (p. 132).

cul-men, -mĭnis, N., height, summit, top.

culp-a, -ae, F., blame, fault; **culpam inicere,** to throw the blame upon (c. iv, 2); **culpam conicere,** to throw the blame (c. iv, 27).

culp-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., blame, find fault with.

cultūr-a, -ae, F., culture; **agri cultura** or **agricultura,** agriculture.

cult-us, -ūs, M., cultivation, mode of life, civilization.

cum, prep. (with abl.), with, along with; enclitic with **me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quibus,** as **mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quibuscum** (p. 105, 8).

cum (also written **quum**), adv., when, after, since, although (p. 203, 297, 4; 300, 9, 10); **cum...tum,** both...and; **cum** (or **quum**) **primum,** as soon as (p. 298, 2).

cunctātī-o, -ōnis, F., delay.

cunct-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., delay, hesitate, doubt.

cunct-us, -ă, -um, adj., all, altogether.

cŭpīdē, adj., eagerly.

cŭpīdĭt-as, -ātis, F., eagerness.

cŭpīd-us, -ă, -um, adj., desirous of (with genitive, p. 281, 9); **cupidus rerum novarum,** anxious for a change of government (c. v, 6).

cŭp-ĭo, -ĕre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ītum, v.tr., long for, wish, desire.

cūr, adv., why?, for what purpose?

cūr-a, -ae, F., care, anxiety.

Cūr-ēs, -ĭum, pl. F., Cures, a town near Rome.

cūrĭ-a, -ae, F., Senate house.

Cūrĭ-us, -ī, M., Curius, a Roman name.

cūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., care for; in Caesar always with acc. of object and gerundive part.; **exercitum transportandum curare,** to cause the army to be transported (c. iv, 29); **naves aedificandas curare,** to have ships built (c. v, 1).

curro, currĕre, cŭcurrī, cursum, v. intr., run; **curritur,** they ran (p. 164, 2).

curr-us, -ūs, M., chariot.

cur-sus, -sūs, M., a running (c. iv, 35); voyage; **tenere cursum,** to hold on their course (c. iv, 28; v, 5).

cur-vus, -vă, -vum, adj., crooked, bending, winding.

custōdī-a, -ae, F., guard, picket.

custōd-īo, -īre -īvī -ītum, v. tr., guard, watch.

cus-tōs, -tōdis, M., guard, watch.

Cȳrēnae-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the people of Cyrene, a town of Northern Africa.

D.

D.C. = **sexcenti,** six hundred.

Dāc-us, -ī, M., a Dacian. The Dacians occupied the south-eastern part of the modern kingdom of Austria.

damn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., condemn, pass sentence upon; **capitis damnare,** to condemn to death (p. 281, 12).

damn-um, -ī, N., loss.

Danŭbī-us, -ī, M., the Danube.

dătus, perf. part. of **do.**

dē, prep. (with abl.), of, from, concerning; **his de rebus certior factus,** being informed of these events (c. iv, 5); **de tertia vigilia,** after the third watch was set; **multis de causis,** for many reasons (c. iv, 16); **qua de causa,** and for this reason; **de oppidis demigrare,** to remove from the towns (c. iv, 19); **de improviso,** unexpectedly.

dē-a, -ae, F. (for declension, p. 6, 2), goddess.

dēb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v.tr., owe; ought (p. 162, 4, note).

dēbīl-ĭto, -ītāre, -ītāvī, -ītātum, v. tr., weaken, enfeeble, crush.

dē-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., retire, leave, depart from; **e vita decessit,** he died.

dĕcem, indecl. card. num., ten.

dē-cerno, -cernĕre, -crēvī, -crētum, v. tr., decide, determine; **cum hoc eodem decernit,** he fights a decisive battle with this same one (N. H. 4); **erant decreturi,** they intended to fight (N. H. 10).

dē-cert-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., fight earnestly, fight a pitched battle, decide by a battle.

dĕcet, dĕcēre, dĕcŭit, no sup., impers., it is becoming.

dĕcĭmus, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., tenth.

dē-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., catch, deceive, cheat.

dēclār-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make clear, announce.

dēclīv-is -ĕ, adj., sloping.

dĕcōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., adorn.

dēcrēt-um, -ī, N., decree, decision; **stare decreto**, to abide by a decision.

dē-curro, -currĕre, currī (or **cŭcurrī, -cursum**, v. intr., run down, hasten.

dĕc-us, -ŏris, N., ornament, honor.

dē-dĕc-us, -ŏris, N., disgrace; **dedecus admittere**, to commit a disgraceful act (C. iv, 25).

dē-dĭtĭ-o, -ōnis, F., surrender; **in deditionem accipere** (or **recipere**), to receive in surrender; **in deditionem venire**, to surrender.

dē-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, v. tr., give up, surrender; **totum se dedidit reipublicae**, he devoted himself wholly to public affairs (N. T. 1).

dē-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead away, bring down, withdraw; **navem deducere**, to launch a vessel; **uxorem deducere** (or **ducere**), to lead home a wife, to marry (C. v, 14); **suos deducere**, to withdraw their men (C. iv, 30).

dē-fectĭ-o, -ōnis, F., revolt, rebellion.

dē-fendo, -fendĕre, -fendi, -fensum, v. tr., defend, repel, guard.

dēfens-or, -ōris, M., defender.

dē-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum, v. tr., carry down or away; report, announce; **summum imperium ad eum deferre**, to confer the supreme command on him (N. H. 3); **paulo infra deferri**, to be carried a little farther down (C. iv, 36); **Caesaris mandata deferre**, to bear the orders of Caesar (C. iv, 27).

dē-fervesco, -fervescĕre, -fervŭī, no sup., v. intr., cool down.

dē-fess-us, -ă, -um, adj., grow weary, exhausted.

dē-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., fail, be insufficient, run short; **si tempus anni deficeret**, if the time of the year was insufficient (C. iv, 20); **ab amicitia populi Romani deficere**, to cast off the alliance of the Roman people (C. v, 3).

dē-fīgo, -fīgĕre, -fixī, -fixum, v. tr., fix, fasten, drive down.

dē-flāgr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., be burned down.

dē-flŭo, -flŭĕre, -fluxī, -fluxum, v. intr., flow down.

dē-form-is, -e, adj., ill-shaped, unsightly (C. iv, 2).

dē-fŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, fūgĭtum, v. intr. and tr., flee from, avoid.

dē-icĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw down, cast down; **de spe deiectus**, disappointed in hope: **magno suī cum periculo deici**, to be driven down with great danger to themselves (C. iv, 28).

dēinceps, adv., one after the other, in succession, in turns.

dēinde, adv., thereafter, afterwards, then, next.

dēlāt-us, see **dēfĕro**.

dē-lect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., delight, please (p. 278, foot note).

dē-lect-us, -ūs, M., a selection, levy of soldiers.

dē-lĕo, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum, v. tr., destroy, annihilate, wipe out.

dē-lĭbĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v, tr., weigh, consider; **re deliberata**, when they had considered the proposal (C. iv, 9).

dē-lĭg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fasten; **navem ad ancoram deligare**, to anchor.

dē-lĭg-o, -ligĕre, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., choose, select, levy.

dē-lītesco, -lītescĕre, -lĭtŭī, no sup., v. intr., lie hid, lie in ambush.

Delph-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., Delphi (now *Kastrí*), a city of Phocis, in Northern Greece, famed for its temple and oracle of Apollo.

Dēlĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Delos; Delian.

Dēl-us (or **Dēl-os**), -ī, F., Delos (now *Dili*), the central island of the Cyclades, noted for the temple of Apollo, which served as the treasury of the states that formed the Delian confederacy.

dē-mentĭ-a, -ae, F., madness; **summae dementiae esse**, to be the height of madness (C. iv, 13).

dē-mĕto, -mĕtĕre, -messŭī, -messum, v. tr., cut down, reap.

dē-mĭgr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., move from, depart from, emigrate.

dē-mĭnŭ-o, -mĭnŭĕre, -mĭnŭī, -mĭnūtum, v. tr., lessen, impair.

dē-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send down; **se animo demittere**, to lose heart.

dēmo, dēmĕre, dempsī, demptum, v. tr. take down or off, remove.

dē-monstr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show, state, mention; explain.

dē-mŏr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., delay, linger.

dēmum, adv., at length, at last.

dēnārī-us, -ī, M., denarius, a Roman coin worth about twenty cents.

dēn-ī, -ae, -ă, distrib. num. adj., ten each, ten apiece, by tens.

dēnĭquĕ, adv., at last, finally; in a word, in short.

den-s, -tis, M., tooth.

dens-us, -ă, -um, adj., thick, closely packed, crowded.

dē-nuntī-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., announce, declare, threaten, order.

dē-pello, -pellĕre, -pŭlī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive away, dislodge, turn aside; **ab eodem gradu depulsus est,** he was driven from his foothold by the same one (N. T. 5).

dē-pĕrĕo, -pĕrīre, -pĕrīvī (-pĕrĭī), no sup., v. intr., be lost, perish.

dē-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., lay aside, cast away; **animam deponere,** to relinquish his life; **spem deponere,** to give up hope (C. v, 19).

dē-pŏpŭl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., lay waste, plunder.

dē-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry off, remove.

dē-prĕc-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., beg for mercy; **neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa,** for the purpose of neither denying the fact nor of begging him for mercy (C. v, 6).

dē-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fight to the last, fight a pitched battle.

dē-rŏg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., withdraw, take away from, weaken.

dē-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., climb down, descend; **in Graeciam descendere,** to attack Greece (N. A. 1).

dē-sĕro, -sĕrĕre, -sĕrŭī, -sertum, v. tr., desert, leave.

dēsert-or, -ōris, M., deserter.

dē-sīdĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wish for, long for, want; **neque ulla omnino navis desideratur,** not a single ship is lost at all (C. v, 23).

dēsīdī-a, -ae, F., sloth, indolence, idleness.

dē-sĭlĭo, -sĭlīre, -sĭlŭī, -sultum, v. intr., leap down, dismount.

dē-sĭno, -sĭnĕre, -sīvī (-sĭī), -sĭtum, v. intr., leave off, cease, stop.

dē-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, -stĭtum, v. intr., leave off, give over, cease from; **proelio desistere,** to give up the battle; **sententia desistere,** to give up the notion.

dē-spēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., give up hope, despair; **rebus desperatis,** despairing of success (N. H. 8).

dē-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., look down upon, despise.

dē-spondĕo, -spondēre, -spondī, -sponsum, v. tr., promise in marriage, betroth.

dē-stringo, -stringĕre, -strinxī, -strictum, v. tr., draw a sword, unsheath.

dē-sum, -esse, -fŭī, v. intr., be wanting, fail, be lacking.

dē-sŭper, adv., from above.

dētĕr-ĭor, -ĭōris, adj., comp. (positive wanting), inferior, worse; superlative, **deterrimus.**

dē-terréo, -terrēre, -terrŭī, -terrĭtum, v. tr., frighten, frighten off, prevent; **deterrere ne** or **quin** (p. 185, 2).

dē-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum, v. tr., keep back, stop, delay, hinder.

dētrīment-um, -ī, N., injury, loss, damage.

dēturb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., cast down, drive away.

dĕ-us, -ī, M. (for declension, p. 13, 2), a god.

de-vinco, -vincĕre, -vīcī, -victum, v. tr., conquer, overcome.

de-volvo, -volvĕre, -volvī, -vŏlūtum, v. tr., roll down.

dē-vŏr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., devour.

dē-vŏvĕo, -vŏvēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, v. tr., devote.

dext-er, -ră, -rum, adj., right, on the right hand.

dextĕră or **dextrā** (with **manus** understood), adj., the right hand.

Dīān-a, -ae, F., Diana, the goddess of archery and hunting.

dĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., dedicate, devote, offer.

dīco, dīcĕre, dixī, dictum, v. tr., say, speak, tell, appoint; **causam dicere,** to plead a cause; **de quo ante ab nobis dictum est,** of whom we have made mention before (C. v, 6).

dictāt-or, -ōris, M., dictator, a Roman magistrate appointed only in seasons of emergency and invested with absolute

power during his term of office, which was not to exceed six months.

dict-um, -ī, N., word, order, command.

dī-es, -ēī, M. or F. (in sing.), M. (in pl.), day.

differo, **differre**, **distŭlī**, **dīlātum**, v. tr., spread, scatter; put off, delay; **inter se differre**, to differ from each other; **multum differunt**, they differ greatly (C. v, 14).

difficĭle, adv., with difficulty.

difficĭl-is, -e, adj., difficult; comp. **difficilior**; sup. **difficillimus**.

difficult-as, -ātis, F., difficulty, trouble.

dif-fīdo, -fīdĕre, -fīsus sum, v. intr., semi-dep. (for construction, p. 278, foot note); distrust.

dif-fundo, -fundĕre, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr., spread out, extend.

dĭg-ĭtus, -ītī, M., finger.

dignĭt-as, -ātis, F., splendor; **tribuere dignitatem**, to treat with respect (C. v, 7).

dign-us, -ă, -um, adj., worthy of, deserving (p. 64, 4).

dī-iūdĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., decide, determine.

dī-lect-us, -ūs, M., levy.

dilĭgen-s, -tis, adj., careful, attentive.

dilĭgenter, adv., earnestly, diligently.

dilĭgentī-a, -ae, F., diligence, care.

dī-lĭgo, -lĭgĕre, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., value, esteem, love.

dī-mĕtĭor, -mĕtīrī, -**mensus sum**, v. tr. dep., measure.

dī-mĭco, -mĭcāre, -mĭcāvī, -mĭcātum, v. tr., fight; **cum dimicaretur**, since the battle was fought (C. v, 16).

dī-mĭdī-um, -ī, N., middle, half; **dimidio minor**, half the size (C. v, 13).

dī-mĭdĭus, -mĭdĭa, -mĭdĭum, adj., half.

dī-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send away, let go, dismiss.

Dĭŏnȳsī-us, -ī, M., Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse.

dis (abbreviated **di-**), inseparable prefix; apart, asunder, in pieces.

dīs, dītis, adj., rich; comp., **ditior**; sup., **ditissimus** (p. 57, 4).

Dīs, Dītis, M., Pluto, god of the lower world.

dis-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., depart, withdraw, forsake; **ab armis discedere**, lay down arms; **discessit superior**, he came off victor (N. H. 1); **ab signis discedere**, to desert their standards (C. v, 16).

dis-cess-us, -ūs, M., departure.

discipl-īna, -īnae, F., learning, training, system.

discĭpŭl-us, -ī, M., pupil.

dis-clūdo, -clūdĕre, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. intr., keep apart, separate.

disco, **discĕre**, **dĭdĭcī**, no sup., v. tr. and intr., learn.

dis-crīmen, -crīmĭnis, N., risk, crisis, danger.

dis-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., drive asunder, scatter, rout; **domum disicĕre**, to raze a house (N. H. 7).

dis-pāl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., straggle, stray.

dis-par, -pāris, adj., unequal, unlike; **dispari proelio**, in an unequal contest (C. v, 16).

dī-spergo, -spergĕre, -spersi, -spersum, v. tr., scatter, disperse.

di-spersus, -spersă, -spersum (perf. part. pass. of **dispergo**, used as an) adj., scattered.

dis-plĭcĕo, -plĭcēre, -plĭcŭī, -plĭcĭtum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, foot note), displease.

dis-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., set in order, draw up (of forces).

dis-pŭtātī-o, -ōnis, F., discussion, debate.

dis-pŭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., treat of, investigate, discuss.

dis-sensī-o, -ōnis, F., disagreement.

dis-sentĭo, -sentīre, -sensī, -sensum, v. intr., differ in opinion, disagree.

dis-sīdĕo, -sīdēre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. intr., disagree; **dissidere ab eo**, to be at variance with him (N. H. 10).

dis-sĭmĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., unlike (with dat., p. 277, 2); comp., **dissimilior**; sup., **dissimillimus**.

dis-sĭmŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., disagree, conceal.

dis-solvo, -solvĕre, -solvī, -sŏlūtum, v. tr., break down; **pontem dissolvere**, to break down a bridge (N. T. 5).

dis-pāl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., wander about; be scattered.

dis-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum, v. tr., perplex, distract.

di-sto, -stāre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., stand apart, be separated.

dis-trĭbŭo, -trĭbŭĕre, -trĭbŭī, -trĭbūtum, v. tr., divide, assign, distribute.

district-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **distringo,** used as an) adj., occupied with, busy.

dĭū, adv., long, for a long time; comp., **diutius**; sup., **diutissime.**

dĭ-urn-us, -ă, -um, adj., by day.

dīvers-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **diverto** used as an) adj., in different directions; some one way, some another way.

dīv-es, -ĭtis, adj., rich; comp., **divitior**; sup., **divitissimus.**

Dīvĭc-o, -ōnis, M., Divico, chief of the Helvetii, who led an army against Cassius, B.C. 107, and headed an embassy to Caesar, B.C. 58.

dīvīdo, dīvīdĕre, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, v. tr., divide, separate.

dīvīn-us, -ă, -um, adj., divine; **res divina,** a sacrifice (N. H. 2).

dīvĭtĭ-ae, -ārum, pl. F., riches, wealth; **divitiis ornare,** to enrich (N. T. 2).

do, dăre, dĕdī, dătum, v.tr., give; **in fugam dare,** to put to flight; **manus dare,** to yield; **tempore dato,** at an appointed time (N. H. 2); **dare verba,** to deceive (N. H. 5); **dare vela ventis,** to set sail (N. H. 8); **dare operam,** to take pains (N. T. 7; C. v, 7); **dare arbitros,** to appoint judges (C. v, 1).

dŏcĕo, dŏcēre, dŏcŭī, doctum, v. tr., teach, inform, point out.

doct-or, -ōris, M., a teacher; **utī doctore,** to have as a teacher (N. H. 13).

doctr-īna, -īnae, F., teaching, learning, knowledge.

doct-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **doceo** used as an) adj., learned, experienced.

dŏlĕo, dŏlēre, dŏlŭī, dŏlĭtum, v. intr. and tr., grieve, be grieved.

dŏl-or, -ōris, M., grief, pain; **hoc dolore exardescere,** to be aroused through grief of this (C. v, 4).

dŏl-us, -ī, M., craft, fraud; **per dolum,** by deceit (C. iv, 13).

dŏmes-tĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., domestic; **bellum domesticum,** civil war (C. v, 9); **domesticae opes,** his own resources (N. H. 10).

dŏmĭcĭlĭ-um, -ī, N., abode; **domicilium constituere,** to fix his abode (N. T. 10).

dŏmĭnāt-us, -ūs, M., tyranny.

dŏmĭn-us, -ī, M., a master, ruler.

Dŏmĭtĭ-us, -ī, M., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul with Appius Claudius, B.C. 54. He was a staunch aristocrat, and brother-in-law of Marcus Cato. He fell at Pharsalia, B.C. 48, by the hand of Antony.

dŏm-o, -āre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v.tr., tame, subdue.

dŏm-us, -ūs (for declension, see p. 62,6), F., a house, home; **domi,** at home (p. 285, 3); **domum,** home (p. 285, 1); **domo,** from home (p. 285, 2).

dōnec, conj., till, until, while (p. 299, 5, 6).

dōn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., give, present.

dōn-um, -ī, N., gift, present.

dorm-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. intr., sleep, rest.

dōs, dōtis, F., marriage portion, dowry.

Drŭĭd-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Druids, priests of the ancient Gauls.

dŭbĭtātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., doubt, hesitation.

dŭbĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., doubt, hesitate.

dŭbĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain; **non dubium est quin,** there is no doubt that (p. 188, 6); **sine dubio,** undoubtedly.

dŭcent-ī, -ae, -ă, card. num. adj., two hundred.

dūco, dūcĕre, duxī, ductum, v. tr., lead, think; **in matrimonium uxorem ducere** or simply **uxorem ducere,** to marry (said of a man), (N. T. 1); **nubere viro** (said of a woman); **tempus ducere,** to spin out the time (N. T. 7); **poena dignum ducere,** to consider one worthy of punishment (N. A. 1).

dulc-is, -e, adj., sweet.

dum, conj., while, until (p. 298, 3; 299, 4, 5, 6); provided that (p. 202).

dummŏdo, conj., provided that, if only (p. 302, 7).

Dumnor-ix, -ĭgis, M., Dumnorix, chief of the Aedui and brother of Divitiacus. He was always hostile to the Romans, and was killed while trying to escape from Caesar (C. v, 7).

dŭ-o, -ae, -o (for declension, see p. 247), adj. pl., two.

dŭŏdĕcim, indecl. num. adj., twelve.

dŭŏdĕcīm-us, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., twelfth.

dŭŏdēn-ī, -ae, -ă, distrib. num. adj., twelve at a time, by twelves.

dŭŏdētrīginta, num. adj., twenty-eight.

dŭŏdēvīgintī, num. adj., eighteen.

dŭplex, dŭplĭcis, adj., two-fold, double; **duplex memoria**, a two-fold account (N. H. 8).

dŭ-plĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., double; **numerum obsidum duplicavit**, he demanded double the number of hostages (C. iv, 36).

dūrĭtī-a, -ae, F., hardness, hardship.

dūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., harden, make hard.

Dūrus, see **Laberius**.

dūr-us, -ă, -um, adj., hard, severe, difficult.

dux, dŭcis, M., leader, general, guide.

E.

ē (**ex** before consonants; **ex**, generally before vowels, sometimes before consonants), prep. (with abl.); from, out of, in accordance with, in consequence of, on; **una ex parte**, on one side (C. iv, 3); **ex equo**, on horseback; **ex itinere**, on the march (C. iv, 11); **ex litteris**, in accordance with the despatch (C. iv, 38); **ex usu**, of advantage (C. v, 6); **ex hac fuga protinus**, immediately after this defeat (C. v, 17); **duabus ex partibus**, on two sides (C. v, 21).

eā (properly abl. sing. fem. of **is, ĕa, id**, agreeing with **parte** or **via** understood), adv., there, on that side.

Eburōn-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Eburones, a Belgic tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine, dependents of the Treveri.

ē-dīco, -dīcĕre, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., speak out, make known, announce.

ē-disco, -discĕre, -dĭdĭcī, no sup., v. intr., learn by heart, commit to memory.

ēd-ītus, -ĭtă, -ĭtum, adj., high.

ĕdo, ĕdĕre, ēdī, ēsum, v. tr. (for conjugation, p. 274), eat.

ē-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, v. tr., set forth, publish, relate.

ē-dŏcĕo, -dŏcēre, -dŏcŭī, -doctum, v. tr., teach, instruct, inform, tell.

ē-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead out, lead forth.

ēdŭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring up, rear.

ef-fēmĭn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make weak or effeminate.

ef-fĕro, efferre, extŭlī, ēlātum, v. tr., carry forth, bring out, publish, bury; **qui efferretur**, wherewith to be buried (N. A. 3).

ef-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., effect, make; **opus efficere**, to complete a work (C. iv, 18); with **ut** and subjunctive, cause that; **reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit**, he caused that it might be suitably sailed with the rest, *i.e.*, he had the rest put in sailing trim (C. iv, 31).

ef-fŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum, v. tr. and intr., escape.

ef-fundo -fundĕre, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr., pour out; **se effundere**, to spread out, scatter.

ĕgen-s, -tis, adj., needy.

ĕgēn-us, -ă, -um, adj., needy, in want, destitute.

ĕgĕo, ĕgēre, ĕgŭī, no sup., v. intr., be in need (for construction, pp. 281, 10; 282, 1, foot note).

ĕgest-as -ātis, F., poverty, want, need.

ĕgo, mĕī (for declension, p. 104, 1), pers. pron. **I**; pl. **nos**, we.

ē-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum, v. intr. dep., go out; disembark; **navi egredi**, to disembark (C. iv, 21).

ēgrĕgĭē, adv., admirably, splendidly.

ēgrĕgĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., eminent, marked, remarkable.

ē-gress-us, -ūs, M., landing, disembarkation.

ē-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., cast out, throw out, repel; **se eicere**, to rush out; **e civitate eicere**, to banish (N. T. 8); **se ex silvis eicere**, to rush out of the woods (C. v, 15).

ēius: see **is** (p. 250).

ēiusdem: see **idem** (p. 250).

ēiusmŏdī (=**ēius modi**), of such a kind, of such a sort.

ē-lābōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., suffer greatly, make great efforts.

ēlāt-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **effero** used as an) adj., proud, haughty.

ēlĕgan-s, -tis, adj., elegant.

ĕlĕphant-us, -ī, M., elephant.

ē-lĭgo, -lĭgĕre, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., choose out, select.

ēlŏquen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of **eloquor** used as an) adj., eloquent.

ēlŏquentī-a, -ae, F., eloquence

ē-mendo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., correct, amend.

ē-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send out, release.

ĕmo, ĕmĕre, ēmī, emptum, v. tr., buy.

ĕnim (placed after the first emphatic word in its clause), conj., for, in fact.

ē-nŭmĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., reckon up, count over, enumerate.

ē-nuntĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., tell, repeat, report.

ĕō, adv., thither, to that place, to such a degree; correlative of **quo** before comparatives (p. 195, 4): **quo...eo,** the ...the (by how much...by that much).

ĕo, īre, īvī (iī), ĭtum, v. intr. (for conjugation, p. 273), go, march.

ĕōdem, adv., to the same place, in the same direction, to the same purpose.

Ĕphĕsĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Ephesus; Ephesian.

Ĕphĕs-us, -ī, F., Ephesus, a city of Asia Minor.

ĕphippĭ-a, -ōrum, pl. N., saddle, pack.

ĕphippĭāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., furnished with a saddle.

ĕphŏr-us, -ī, M., an Ephor, one of the five Spartan magistrates who were elected annually as "overseers" of the state.

ĕpistŏl-a, -ae, F., a letter; **epistolam solvere,** to open a letter (N. H. 11).

epistula: same as **epistola.**

ĕpŭl-um, -ī, N., banquet, feast; pl. F., **epulae,** meal.

ĕqu-es, -ĭtis, M., a horseman, cavalry soldier; pl. **equites,** the knights; **equitum magister,** master of the horse, an officer next in rank to the dictator.

ĕques-ter, -tris, -tre, adj., belonging to horsemen, cavalry.

ĕquĭdem, adv., truly, indeed.

ĕquĭtāt-us, -ūs, M., cavalry.

ĕqu-us, -ī, M., horse.

Ĕrătosthĕn-ēs, -is, M., Eratosthenes, a Greek of Cyrēne, in Africa, noted as a geographer. He lived B.C. 276–B.C. 192.

ērect-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **erigo** used as an) adj., high.

ergā, prep. (with acc.), towards.

ergō, conj., therefore, accordingly.

ērĭgo, ērĭgĕre, ērexī, ērectum, v. tr., arouse.

ē-rīpĭo, -rīpĕre, -rĭpŭī, -reptum, v. tr., take away from, snatch from, rescue.

err-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., wander, err, be wrong.

err-or, -ōris, M., a mistake, error, fault.

ē-rūd-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., instruct, teach, educate, train.

ē-rumpo, -rumpĕre, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break out, make a sortie.

ē-ruptĭ-o, -ōnis, F., attack, sortie.

Ĕr-yx, -ўcis, M., Eryx (now *St. Giuliano*), a mountain and town on the west coast of Sicily.

ē-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., mount, ascend; **in navem escendere,** to embark (N. T. 8).

essĕd-a, -ae, F., a war chariot of the Britons.

essĕdārĭ-us, -ī, M., a charioteer.

essĕd-um, -ī, same as **esseda.**

et, conj., and; **et...et,** both...and.

ĕtĭam, adv., also, even.

ĕtĭamtum, adv., even then.

Ētrūrĭ-a, -ae, F., Etruria (now *Tuscany*), a district of Central Italy.

etsi, conj., even if, although (p. 303, middle of page).

Euboe-a, -ae, F., Euboea (now *Negropont*), an island, east of Northern Greece.

Eumĕn-es, -is, M., Eumenes II., King of Pergamus, a friend of the Romans, who reigned B.C. 197–B.C. 159.

Eurōp-a, -ae, F., Europe.

Eur-us, -ī, M., Eurus, the east wind.

Eurўbĭăd-es, -ae, M., Eurybiades, an admiral of Sparta, at the time when Xerxes invaded Greece, 480 B. C.

ē-vādo, -vādĕre, -vāsī, -vāsum, v. intr., go forth, escape from.

é-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., pass, happen.

ēvĕnit, it happens (p. 182, 4); **usu venit,** it turned out by chance (N. H. 12).

ē-vent-us, -ūs, M., result, fortune.

ē-verto, -vertĕre, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., overthrow, drive out, destroy.

ē-vŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call out, summon.

ex: see **ē.**

exadversum, prep. (with acc.), over against, opposite.

ex-ăgĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., harass, drive out.

ex-ămĭn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., test; **ad certum pondus examinatus,** of a fixed standard weight, literally, weighed to a fixed weight (C. v, 12).

ex-ănĭm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., kill.

ex-ardesco, -ardescĕre, -arsī, -arsum, v. intr., be kindled, burst forth; **hoc dolore exarsit,** he was roused through grief at this (C. v, 4).

ex-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., leave, depart.

ex-cello, -cellĕre, -cellŭī, -celsum, v. intr., excel, surpass.

ex-cels-us, -ă, -um, adj., high.

ex-cĭo, -cīre, -cīvī, -cītum, v. tr., arouse, awake.

ex-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., catch, receive.

ex-cĭtāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., encouraged.

ex-cĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., incite, stir up, arouse.

ex-clūdo, -clūdĕre, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., shut out, prevent; **a navigatione excludere,** to prevent from sailing (C. v, 23).

ex-cōgĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., devise, plan.

ex-crūcĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., torture, torment.

ex-cursĭ-o, -ōnis, F., attack, sortie, sally.

ex-cūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., excuse, clear (of a charge).

exempl-um, -ī, N., an example, sample, pattern.

ex-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or -ĭī), -ĭtum, v. intr., go out; **fama exit,** the report goes abroad (N. H. 9).

ex-ercĕo, -ercēre, -ercŭī, -ercĭtum, v. tr., exercise, train.

exercĭtātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., training, practise, exercise.

exercĭtāt-us, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **exercĭto** used as an) adj., well trained, skilled.

exercĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., exercise, harass.

exercĭt-us, -ūs, M., a trained band; an army; **exponere exercitum,** to land an army (C. v, 9).

ex-haurĭo, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustum, v. tr., drain, exhaust; **exhaustis facultatibus,** when resources had failed (N. H. 6).

ex-hērēd-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., disinherit.

ex-īgo, -ĭgĕre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., drive out, pass the time; **exacta hieme,** when winter had passed, at the end of winter.

ex-īgŭĭt-as, -ātis, F., shortness.

ex-īgŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., small, scanty.

ex-ĭlĭ-um, -ī, N., exile.

ex-istĭmātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., reputation.

ex-istĭm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., value, estimate, think, consider.

ex-ĭtĭ-um, -ī, N., destruction.

ex-ĭtus, -ĭtūs, M., conclusion, end.

ex-opt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wish, desire.

ex-pĕd-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., extricate, disengage, set free; impers. **expedit,** it is profitable, it is useful.

ex-pĕdĭtĭ-o, -ōnis, F., an expedition, foray.

ex-pĕdĭt-us, -a, -um, adj., lightly equipped, free, unincumbered, without baggage; **ad usum expeditior,** more efficient for service (C. iv, 25); **legiones expeditae,** legions without baggage (C. v, 2).

ex-pello, -pellĕre, -pŭlī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive out, expel.

ex-pĕrĭentĭ-a, -ae, F., experience, practise.

ex-pĕrĭor, -pĕrīrī, -pertus sum, v. tr. dep., try, attempt; **inimicum ille expertus est,** he found an enemy (N. T. 9); **experti,** having tested their power (C. iv, 3); **omnia experti,** having tried every expedient (C. iv, 4).

ex-pers, -pertis, adj., free from, without (with gen., p. 281, 9).

ex-plĭco, -plĭcāre, -plĭcāvī (-plĭcŭī), -plĭcātum (-plĭcĭtum), v. tr., set forth, exhibit; **oratione explicare,** to set forth in a speech (N. T. 1); **naves explicare,** to extend ships in line (N. T. 4); **explicare imperatores,** to describe the commanders (N. H. 13).

ex-plōrāt-or, -ōris, M., scout, spy.

explōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., investigate, reconnoitre.

ex-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., place out, deploy; disembark; **expositae hostium copiae,** the forces of the enemy deployed (C. iv, 23); **cum essent expositi milites,** when the forces had landed (C. iv, 37); **exposito exercitu,** when the army had landed (C. v, 9).

ex-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry out, export.

ex-posco, -poscĕre, -pŏposcī, no sup., v. tr., demand the surrender of anything.

ex-prĭmo, -prĭmĕre, -pressī, -pressum, v. tr., press out, extort.

expugnātī-o, -ōnis, F., a storming, attack.

ex-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., take by storm, capture.

ex-quīro, -quīrĕre, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, v. tr., seek for, enquire, search out, ask for.

ex-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus (or **-sĕquūtus sum**), v. tr. dep., follow out, maintain, enforce.

ex-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, -stĭtum, v. intr., spring up, arise.

ex-spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wait for, await; **in ancoris exspectare,** to wait at anchor (C. iv, 23).

ex-stinguo, -stinguĕre, -stinxī, -stinctum, v. tr., obliterate (N. T. 1).

ex-sto, -stāre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., exist, be; **capite solo ex aquā exstare,** to have their heads alone out of the water (C. v, 18).

ex-struo, -struĕre, -struxī, -structum, v. tr., build up, raise.

ex-structus, -ā, -um, adj., piled up.

ex-tĕrus, -tĕra, -tĕrum, adj. (rarely used in positive), outside, foreign, strange; comp., **exterior**; sup., **extremus** or **extĭmus** (p. 59, 1).

ex-terrĕo, -terrĕre, -terrŭī, -terrĭtum, v. tr., frighten, strike down with terror.

ex-tĭmesco, -tĭmescĕre, -tĭmŭī, no sup., fear greatly, dread.

ex-tollo, -tollĕre, no perf., no sup., v. tr., extol, lift up, raise, exalt.

extrā, prep. (with acc.), without, beyond, outside of.

ex-trăho, -trăhĕre, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., draw out, withdraw; **id facile extrahere,** to waste this easily (C. v, 22).

extrēm-us, -ă, -um, adj. (sup. of **exterus**) of place or time, last; **hieme extrema,** at the end of winter; **ad extremum,** at last (C. iv, 4).

ex-ul, -ŭlis, M., an exile.

ex-ŭo, -ŭĕre, -ŭī, -ūtum, v. tr., strip off, despoil, deprive.

ex-ūro, -ūrĕre, -ussi, -ustum, v. tr., burn up.

F.

fă-ber, -brī, M., a workman, wright.

Făbĭ-us, -ī, M., Fabius; (1) Quintus Fabius Maximus, a Roman general of eminent qualities and virtues, surnamed **Cunctator,** or "the Delayer," because he withstood Hannibal, not by fighting him, but by harassing him with marches and counter-marches and cutting off supplies. He died 203 B.C. (2) Quintus Fabius Labeo, was dictator 221 B.C. and in 217 B.C. He commanded the fleet in 189 B.C. in the war against Antiochus, and was consul for the last time in 183 B.C. when according to Nepos, Hannibal died.

fābŭl-a, -ae, F., story, tale.

făcēt-us, -ă, -um, adj., affable, courteous, witty.

făcĭle, adv., easily, readily; comp., **facilius**; sup., **facillime.**

făcĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., easy; comp., **facilior**; sup., **facillimus.**

făcĭn-us, -ŏris, N., deed, act.

făcĭo, făcĕre, fēci, factum, v. tr., do, make; **magni facere,** to value highly; **pluris facere,** to value more highly; **castra facere,** to pitch a camp; **iter facere,** to make a march; **vim facere,** to do violence; **imperata facere,** to obey commands; **facere pontem,** to build a bridge (N. T. 5); **naufragium facere,** to come to grief (N. T. 7); **proelium facere,** to fight (N. T. 9); **sui potestatem facere,** to put himself in the power of any one (N. H. 9); **ut scirent facere,** to see that they knew (N. H. 10); **palam facere,** to make plain (N. H. 11); **iureiurando fidem facere,** to give a pledge on oath (C. iv, 11); **bellum populo Romano facere,** to make war against the Roman people (C. iv, 22); **rebellionem facere,** to renew the war (C. iv, 30); **pro sano facere,** to act as a sane man (C. v, 7). (For passive see **flo.**)

factī-o, -ōnis, F., party, faction.

fact-um, -ī, N., deed, act.

făcul-tas, -tātis, F., opportunity, abundance; pl. **facultates,** resources, goods; **exhaustis facultatibus,** when resources were exhausted (N. H. 6).

fāg-us, -ī, F., beech tree.

Fălern-us, -ă, -um, adj., Falernian; **ager Falernus,** the Falernian territory, a district at the foot of the Massic hills, famous for its wines.

fallo, fallĕre. fĕfellī, falsum, v. tr., deceive.

fal-sus, -sa, -sum, adj., false.

fām-a, -ae, F., report, rumor, fame; **fama exit**, the report goes abroad (N. H. 9).

fāmĭlĭ-a, -ae, F., family, servants; household; **pater familias** or **familiae**, father of a family, master.

fāmĭlĭār-is, -e, adj., belonging to a family; **res familiaris**, property, (N. T. 1); as a noun, **familiar-is, -is, M.**, an intimate friend.

fāmĭlĭārĭt-as, -ātis, F., intimacy, friendship.

fas (indecl. noun), N., right.

fătĕor, fătērī, fassus sum, v. tr. dep., confess.

fāt-um -ī, N., destiny, fate.

făvĕo, făvēre, fāvī, fautum, v. intr. (governs a dative), favor.

fēlīcĭt-as, -ātis, F., happiness, success, prosperity.

fēlīcĭter, adv., luckily, prosperously.

fēl-ix, -īcis, adj., lucky, fortunate, prosperous.

fēmĭn-a, -ae, F., woman, female.

fēm-ur, -ŏris, N., thigh.

fĕr-a, -ae, F., wild beast.

fĕr-ax, -ācis, adj., fertile.

fĕre, adv., almost, nearly.

fĕrĭo, fĕrīre, no perf., no sup., v. tr., strike.

fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, v. tr., bring, bear, carry, endure; **ferunt**, they say; **fertur**, it is said; **auxilium ferre**, to bring aid; **iniurias ferre**, to inflict wrongs; **legem ferre**, to propose a law; **consuetudo fert**, the custom admits of (C. iv, 32); **graviter ferre**, to be annoyed (C. v, 6); **ut fert illorum opinio**, according to their ideas (C. v, 13).

fĕrōcĭter, adv., fiercely, boldly.

fĕrō-x, -cis, adj., bold, warlike.

ferrĕ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of iron, iron.

ferr-um, -ī, N., iron.

fertĭl-is, -e, adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertĭlĭt-as, -ātis, F., fertility, richness.

fĕr-us, -ă, -um, adj., wild, savage, cruel.

fess-us, -ă, -um, adj., weary.

festīn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., hasten, hurry, speed.

fĭbŭl-a, -ae, F., brace.

fictīl-is, -e, adj., earthen; **vasa fictilia**, vessels of earthenware (N. H. 10).

fic-tus, -tă, -tum, (perf. part. pass. of **fingo** used as an) adj., idle, invented; **ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondere**, to invent an answer to suit their wishes (C. iv, 5).

fīdēl-is, -e, adj., faithful, trusty.

fīd-ēs, -ēī, F., faith, loyalty; **fidem habere**, to repose confidence (N. T. 7); **in fidem recipere**, to receive under one's protection (N. T. 8); **fidei credere**, to trust to their charge (N. H. 9); **fidem facere**, to give a pledge (C. iv, 11); **fidem sequi**, to be loyal to (C. iv, 21; v, 20); **eos in fidem recipere**, to admit them to his protection (C. iv, 22); **fidem interponere**, to pledge his word (C. v, 6).

fīdo, fīdĕre, fīsus sum, v. semi-dep. (for construction, p. 278, foot note), trust, confide.

fīdūcĭ-a, -ae, F., trust, confidence.

fĭgūr-a, -ae, F., form, shape.

fīlĭ-a, -ae, F., daughter (p. 229, foot note 2).

fīlĭ-us, -ī, M., son.

findo, findĕre, fĭdi, fissum, v. tr., cleave, divide.

fingo, fingĕre, finxī, fictum, v. tr., form, shape, suppose.

fīn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., finish, end; **populi Romani imperium Rhenus finit**, the Rhine is the limit of the empire of the Roman people (C. iv, 16).

fīn-is, -is, M. and F., end, limit; pl., **fines**, M., boundaries, territories.

fīnītĭm-us, -ă, -um, adj., bordering upon, adjoining; in pl., **finitimi, -ōrum**, neighbors.

fīo, fĭĕrī, factus sum (pass. of **facio**, p. 155), become, take place; fit, it happens (p. 182, 4); **certior fieri**, to be informed; **quo factum est ut**, the result was that (N. T. 1); **factus est praetor**, he was elected general (N. T. 2); **non sine causa fieri**, to be not without a reason (C. v, 6).

firme, adv., firmly.

firmĭter, adv., firmly; **firmiter insistere**, to stand firmly, to get a good footing (C. iv, 26).

firmĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., firmness, strength.

firm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., strengthen, make strong.

firm-us, -ă, -um, adj., strong.

flāgĭtĭ-um, -ī, N., crime, wickedness.

flăgĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., demand, ask earnestly.

Flamĭnīn-us, -ī, M., Quinctius Flamininus, a Roman general who was sent B.C. 183 to Prusias of Bithynia to demand the surrender of Hannibal.

Flamĭnĭ-us, -ī, M., Caius Flaminius, a Roman general who commanded the Romans, and lost his life at Trasimēnus, 217 B.C.

flamm-a, -ae, F., flame.

flect-o, -ĕre, flexŭī, flexum, v. tr., bend, turn.

flen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of fleo, used as an) adj., weeping, in tears.

flĕo, flēre, flēvī, flētum, v. tr. and intr., weep, lament.

flĕt-us, -ūs, M., tears, weeping.

flo, flāre, flāvī, flātum, v. intr., blow.

flōren-s, -tis, adj., flourishing.

flōr-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, no sup., bloom, flourish.

flōs, flōris, M., flower.

fluct-us, -ūs, M., flood, wave.

flum-en, -ĭnis, N., river.

flŭo, flŭĕre, fluxī, fluxum, v. intr., flow.

flŭvĭ-us, -ī, M., river.

fŏdĭo, fŏdĕre, fōdī, fossum, v. tr., dig.

foedĕrāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., leagued together, allied.

foed-us, -ĕris, N., treaty.

for, fārī, fātus sum, v. tr. dep., speak, say.

fore = futurum esse (fut. inf. of sum, p. 107, 1).

forem = essem.

fŏr-is, -is, F., door, gate.

form-a, -ae, F., form, shape.

form-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., shape.

for-s, -tis, F., chance, luck.

forsitan, adv., perhaps.

fortasse, adv., perhaps, by chance.

forte, adv., perhaps, by chance.

fort-is, -e, adj., strong, brave.

fortĭter, adv., courageously, bravely.

fortĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., courage, bravery.

fortŭĭto, adv., by chance.

fortūn-a, -ae, F., luck, lot, chance, good fortune.

fortūnāt-us, -ă -um, adj., prosperous, in good circumstance.

fŏr-um -ī, N., market place.

foss-a, -ae, F., ditch, trench.

fŏvĕ-a, -ae, F., pit-fall.

frango, frangĕre, frēgī, fractum, v. tr., break; frangere eum, to break his spirit (N. T. 1); Corcyraeos frangere, to break the power of the Corcyraeans (N. T. 2); frangere navem, wreck a vessel (C. iv, 29).

frāt-er, -ris, M., a brother.

frāter-nus, -nă, -num, adj., fraternal, brotherly.

frau-s, -dis, F., deceit, deception.

Fregell-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Fregellae (now *Ceprano*), a very old town of Latium, on the river Liris.

frĕm-ĭtus, -ĭtūs, M., uproar, noise, din.

frĕquen-s, -tis, adj., crowded, in large numbers.

frē-tus, -tă, -tum, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4); relying on.

frīgĭd-us, -ă, -um, adj., cold.

frīg-us, -ŏris, N., cold.

fron-s, -tis, F., forehead, front; a fronte, in front.

fruc-tus, -tūs, M., fruit, profit, advantage.

frūg-ēs, -um, pl., F., crops.

frūmentārĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., pertaining to corn; res frumentāria, a supply of corn; inopia frumentaria, want of corn.

frūment-or, -ārī -ātus sum, v. dep., fetch corn, forage.

frūment-um, -ī, N., corn.

frŭ-or, -ī, fructus (or frŭĭtus) sum, v. intr. dep., enjoy (with abl., p. 116).

frustrā, adv., without effect, in vain.

frustr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., deceive.

fŭg-a, -ae, F., flight.

fŭgĭo, fŭgĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum, v. tr. and intr., flee, flee from, run away.

fŭgĭtīv-us, -ă, -um, adj., fleeing; as a noun, fŭgĭtīv-us, -ī, M., a runaway slave.

fŭg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., put to flight, rout.

fulg-ur, -ŭris, N., lightning, brightness.

fund-a, -ae, F., a sling.

fundā-mentum, -mentī, N., foundation.

fund-ītor, -ītōris, M., a slinger.

fundo, fundĕre, fūdī, fūsum, v. tr., pour, rout; **exercitum fundere**, to rout an army (N. A. 2).

fund-us, -ī, M., see **funda**.

fund-us, -ī, M., a farm, estate.

fung-or, -ī, functus sum, v. intr. dep. (with abl., p. 116), discharge, perform; **summis honoribus fungi**, to fill the highest offices (N. T. 7).

fūn-is, -is, M., rope, cable.

fūn-us, -ĕris, M., burial, funeral; pl., funeral rites.

Furī-us, -ī, M., Lucius Furius, consul B.C. 196.

fŭr-or, -ōris, M., rage, madness, fury.

fur-tum, -tī, N., theft.

fŭtūr-us, -ă, -um, fut. part. of **sum** (p. 107, 1); **res futura**, or **futura** (neut. pl.), the future.

G.

G. = Gāĭus, another form of Caius.

Galb-a, -ae, M., Galba; Servius Galba, great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba. He served under Caesar in Gaul, and was praetor B.C. 54. After Caesar's death he served against Antony in the war of Mutina, 43 B.C.

gălĕ-a, -ae, F., helmet.

Gall-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Gauls; the people who inhabited Gallia Transalpina (or Ulterior). Further Gaul (*France*), and Gallia Cisalpina (or Citerior), Hither Gaul (*Northern Italy*).

Gallĭ-a, -ae, F., Gaul.

Gallĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., Gallic.

gallīn-a, -ae, F., hen.

Gall-us, -ī, M., a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gallia.

Garumn-a, -ae, M., the Garumna (*Garonne*), a river of Gaul.

gaudĕo, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, v. intr., semi-dep., rejoice.

gaudī-um, -ī, N., joy, gladness, delight.

Gĕmīn-us, -ī, see **Servilius**.

gemm-a, -ae, F., a gem.

gĕn-er, -ĕrī, M., a son-in-law.

gĕnĕrōs-us, -ă, -um, adj., of good birth, noble.

Gĕnēv-a, -ae, F., Geneva, a town of Switzerland.

gĕnĭt-us, -ă, -um (perf. part. pass. of **gigno**), born, descended from (p. 282, 3).

gen-s, -tis, F., nation, race, tribe, clan.

gĕn-us, -ĕris, N., birth, kind; **amplissimo genere natus**, descended from a most illustrious family (C. iv, 12); **toto hoc in genere pugnae**, in all this kind of battle (C. v, 16).

Germānĭ-a, -ae, F., Germany.

Germānĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., German.

Germān-us, -ă, -um, adj., German.

gĕro, gĕrĕre, gessī, -gestum, v. tr., carry, bear, carry on; **bellum gerere**, to wage war; **rem male gerere**, to conduct a matter badly (N. T. 1); **res gerere**, to conduct a campaign (N. H. 7); **gestus est ei mos**, his wish was complied with (N. T. 7); **res gestae**, events.

gigno, gignĕre, gĕnŭī, gĕnĭtum, v. intr., beget, bring forth.

glādī-us, -ī, M., sword.

glōrī-a, -ae, F., glory, fame.

Gn. = Gnēĭus, another form for Cneius.

Gortȳnĭ-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the people of Gortyna, a town of Crete.

Gracch-us, -ī, M., Gracchus; Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, a Roman consul led into an ambush by Hannibal's soldiers and slain by them (N. H. 5).

grăcĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., slender.

grăd-us, -ūs, M., a step; **primus gradus capessendae reipublicae**, the first step in his political career (N. T. 1); **ab eodem gradu depulsus est**, he was driven from his foothold by the same man (N. T. 5).

Graecī-a, -ae, F., Greece.

Graec-us, -ă, -um, adj., Greek.

Grāĭ-us, -a, -um, adj., Graian; **saltus Graius**, the Graian pass (N. H. 3).

grand-is, -ĕ, adj., large, great.

grātī-a, -ae, F., favor, courtesy, beauty; pl. **gratiae**, thanks; **agere gratias**, to give thanks; **gratiam facere**, to pardon; **gratiam habere**, to feel thankful; **gratiam referre**, to be grateful to; **gratiā** (abl. with genitive), for the sake of.

grātŭl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v intr. dep., wish joy, congratulate.

grāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., pleasing.

grăv-is, -e, adj., heavy.

grăv-ĭtas, -ĭtātis, F., weight, importance.

grăvĭter, adv., heavily; **graviter ferre**, feel pained (C. v, 4).

grex, grĕgis, M., flock, herd, troop.

gūbernāt-or, -ōris, M., pilot, steersman.

gust-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., taste.

H.

hăb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., have, hold, possess; regard, consider; **fidem habere**, to repose confidence (N. T. 7); **secum habere**, to keep at his house (N. H. 12); **neque quidquam habetur**, nothing is regarded (C. iv, 2); **consilium habere**, to hold a meeting (C. iv, 19); **magni habere**, to value highly (C. iv, 21).

hăbĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., have possession of, inhabit, dwell in.

Hadrumēt-um, -ī, N., Hadrumetum, (now *Hammeim*), a Phœnician city of Northern Africa.

haerĕo, haerēre, haesī, haesum, v. intr., hold fast, stick to (with abl. or dat.).

Hălĭcarnassĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Halicarnassus, a city of Caria, the birthplace of Herodotus, the 'Father of History.'

Hamilc-ar, -ăris, M., Hamilcar, a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal. He held the command from B.C. 247 to 229 B.C., when he fell in battle against the Vettones, a people of Spain. Hasdrubal succeeded him and held command from B.C. 229 to B.C. 221, when Hannibal was elected commander.

Hannĭb-al, -ălis, M., Hannibal, a celebrated Carthaginian general who lived from 247 B.C. to 183 B.C.

Harŭdes, -um, pl. M., Harudes, a German tribe, at the head waters of the Rhine and Danube.

Hasdrŭb-al, -ălis, M., Hasdrubal; (1) Son-in-law of Hamilcar who held command of the Carthaginians B.C. 229–B.C. 221, when he was assassinated by a Spaniard. (2) Brother of Hannibal, slain at the river Metaurus, B.C. 207.

hast-a, -ae, F., spear.

haud, adv., not at all (negativing single words, especially adjectives and adverbs); with verbs chiefly in the phrase **haud scio an**, I don't know whether (p. 177, 5).

Hellespont-us, -ī, M., the Hellespont (now *Dardanelles*), a strait between Europe and Asia, connecting the Sea of Marmora with the Aegean.

Helvĕtĭ-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Helvetii, a people who occupied Western and Southern Switzerland.

Hercŭl-ēs, -īs, M., Hercules, son of Iupiter and Alcmēna, the god of strength.

hērēdĭt-as, -ātis, F., heirship, inheritance.

hĕrī, adv., yesterday.

hībern-a, -ōrum, pl. N. (properly neut. pl. of the adj., **hibernus** agreeing with **castra** understood), winter quarters; **hiberna circumire**, to inspect the winter quarters (C. v, 2).

Hībernī-a, -ae, F., Ireland.

hīc, haec, hoc; dem. pron. this, he, she, it (for declension, p. 117); **hic...ille**, the latter...the former.

hīc, adv., here, at this point.

hīĕm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., winter, pass the winter.

hĭem-s, -is, F., winter, storm.

hinc, adv., hence, from this place.

Hispānĭ-a, -ae, F., Spain.

histŏrĭ-a, -ae, F., history, narrative.

hŏdiē, adv., to-day.

Hŏmēr-us, -ī, M., Homer, a Greek epic poet, author of the Iliad and Odyssey.

hŏm-o, -ĭnis, M. or F., a human being; man; pl. **homines**, inhabitants.

hŏnest-us, -ă, -um, adj., honorable, upright, noble.

hŏn-or, -ōris, M., honor, respect, dignity, public office; **summis honoribus fungi**, to fill the highest offices (N. H. 7).

hōr-a, -ae, F., hour. The Romans divided the period between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal parts, each of which was called **hora**; so also with the night. The length of each **hora** would depend on the season of the year.

Hōrātĭ-us, -ī, M., Horace, a Roman poet who lived B.C. 65–B.C. 8.

horr-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., dread, shudder at.

horrĭbĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., dreadful, frightful.

horrĭd-us, -ă, -um, adj., dreadful, frightful.

hort-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., urge, cheer, encourage, incite.

hort-us, -ī, M., garden.

hos-pes, -pĭtis, M., visitor, guest, friend, host.

hospĭtĭ-um, -ī, N., hospitality, friendship; **cum quo ei hospitium erat**, with whom he was on terms of friendship (N. T. 8).

hostĭ-a, -ae, F., a victim offered in sacrifice.

host-is, -is, M., an enemy.

hūc, adv., hither, here, to this place.

hūiusmŏdī, of this kind, of this sort.

hūmānĭt-as, -ātis, F., refinement, culture.

hūmān-us, -ă, -um, adj., human, civilized.

hŭmĕr-us, -ī, M., shoulder.

hŭm-ī (locative, p. 86, 3), on the ground.

hŭmĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., low, poor, humble.

hŭmĭlĭt-as, -ātis, F., lowness; lowness in the water (c. v, 1).

hŭm-us, -ī, F., ground.

I.

iăc-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, no sup., v. intr., lie on the ground, lie dead.

iăcĭo, iăcĕre, iēcī, iactum, v. tr., throw, cast; **ancoram iacere**, to cast anchor (c. iv, 28).

iactūr-a, -ae, F., loss, sacrifice.

iăcŭl-um, -ī, N., a javelin, dart.

iam, adv., by this time; **ubi iam**, as soon as; **iam antea**, some time before; with negatives, **neque iam**, no longer (c. iv, 13).

iamdūdum, adv., now for a long time, long [p. 216, 2, (*b*)].

iamprīdem, adv., now for a long time, long [p. 216, 2, (*b*)].

iānŭ-a, -ae, F., door; **puer a ianua**, the porter (N. H. 12).

Ĭbēr-us, -ī. M., the Iberus (now *Ebro*), a river of Hispania (*Spain*).

ībī, adv., in that place, there.

ībīdem, adv., in the same place.

īco, īcĕre, īcī, ictum, v. tr., strike, hit, smite, stab; **foedus icere**, to make a treaty.

ict-us, -ūs, M., blow, thrust.

idcirco, adv., on this account, for this reason, therefore.

īdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, dem. pro., the same (for decl. p. 250).

īdōnĕ-us, -ă, -um, adj., fit, suitable, convenient.

īd-ūs, -ŭum, pl. F., the Ides; a name given to the 13th of all months, except March, May, July, October, when the 15th was so called.

ĭgĭtur, conj., therefore, accordingly, then.

ignāvī-a, -ae, F., sloth, cowardice.

ignāv-us, -ă, -um, adj., slothful, cowardly.

ign-is, M., fire.

ignōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., be ignorant of, not to know.

ig-nosco, -noscĕre, -nōvī, -nōtum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, footnote), pardon, forgive.

ignō-tus, -tă, -tum, adj., not known, unknown.

ille, illă, illud, dem. pro. (for declension, p. 116), that, that well known; he, she, it; **ille ... hic**, the former ... the latter.

illic, adv., in that place, there.

illĭco, adv., forthwith, immediately.

il-lĭg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bind on, tie on, fasten.

illō, adv., to that place, thither; **eodem illo**, to that same place.

il-lūdo, -lūdĕre, -lūsī, -lūsum, v. tr., baffle, deceive.

il-lustr-is, -ĕ, adj., famous, distinguished; **illustriore loco natus**, born of a rather illustrious family (p. 58, 5).

illustr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make renowned or famous; in pass., become famous.

Illўrĭc-um, -ī, N., Illyricum, a district comprising the modern *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia* and *Herzegovina*.

ĭmāg-o, -ĭnis, F., an image, likeness.

im-ber, -bris, M., a shower.

ĭmĭt-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., imitate.

im-mān-is, -ĕ, adj., vast, huge, enormous, immense.

Immanŭentĭ-us, -ī, M., Immanuentius, father of Mandubracius (c. v, 20).

im-mātūr-us, -ă, -um, adj., unripe, immature.

im-mĭnŭ-o, -mĭnŭĕre, -mĭnŭī, -mĭnūtum, v. tr., diminish.

im-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send or drive into (the enemy's line); **se immittere**, rush into.

immo, adv., on the contrary, no indeed, yes indeed; used in answers to correct or modify either by contradicting or by strengthening.

im-mŏl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., sacrifice.

im-mortāl-is, -e, adj., undying, immortal.

im-mūnĭt-as, -ātis, F., exemption.

im-pĕdīment-um, -ī, N., hindrance; pl. baggage (of an army); **sarcĭnae**, the kit of the individual soldiers.

im-pĕd-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., hamper, hinder; **religionibus impediri**, to be hampered by religious scruples (C. v, 6); **navigationem impedire**, to prevent sailing (C. v, 7); **animis impeditis**, when their attention was distracted (C. v, 7).

im-pĕdīt-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **impedio** used as an) adj., hampered, impassable; **loca impedita**, inaccessible places (C. v, 19).

im-pello, -pellĕre, -pŭli, -pulsum, v. tr., drive to.

im-pendĕo, -pendēre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., overhang.

im-pendo, -pendĕre, -pendī, -pensum, v. tr., to expend.

impens-us, -ă, -um, adj., of cost; great, large, high; **impenso pretio**, at an extravagant price (C. iv, 2).

impĕrāt-or, -ōris, M., commander-in-chief, general.

im-pĕrīt-us, -ă, -um, adj., unskilled in, inexperienced in (with genitive, p. 281, 9).

im-pĕrī-um, -ī, N., command, authority, government; **summam imperii transferre**, to transfer the supreme command (N. A. 2).

impĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, notes), command, order; **milites civitati imperare**, to levy troops from a state; **imperat mihi ut** (or **ne**) **faciam**, he orders me to do (or not to do): p. 181, 3.

impetr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., obtain by request, obtain.

impĕt-us, -ūs, M., attack, assault; **facere impetum**, to make an attack (C. v, 15).

impĭĕt-as, -ātis, F., impiety.

im-pĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., wicked.

im-plīco, -plīcāre, -plīcāvī (or -plīcŭī), -plīcātum (or plīcĭtum), v. tr., entangle; **in morbum implicari**, to be attacked with sickness.

im-plōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bewail, implore, invoke, appeal to.

im-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., place on, or upon; **modum imponere**, to make an end; **milites in navem imponere**, to put soldiers on board.

im-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring or carry to; import.

impraesentiārum (for **in praesentia rerum**, in the presence of things), adv., at present, for the present (N. H. 6).

imprīmīs, adv., among the first; in the first place, chiefly, especially.

im-prŏb-us, -ă, -um, adj., bad, shameless.

im-prōvīs-us, -ă, -um, adj., unforeseen, unexpected; **de improviso**, unexpectedly, suddenly.

im-prūden-s, -tis, adj., not foreseeing, unwise; **imprudentibus nostris**, while our men were off their guard (C. v, 15).

im-prūdentĭ-a, -ae, F., indiscretion, ignorance.

im-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., attack, assail, fight.

īm-us, -a, -um, sup. of **inferus** (p. 59, 1).

in, prep. with (1) acc. (after words signifying motion), to, into, upon, against; (2) abl. (after words signifying rest), in, at, during, among; **in vicem**, in turns (C. iv, 1); **in hiemem**, for the winter (C. iv, 29); **in primis**, especially (C. v, 6); **in itinere**, while on the march (C. iv, 11; **in ancoris**, at anchor.

īn-ān-is, -ĕ, adj., empty, vain, useless.

in-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., advance, proceed, come to.

incendī-um, -ī, N., fire.

in-cendo, -cendĕre, -cendī, -censum, v. tr., set on fire, burn, inflame.

in-cert-us, -ă, -um, adj., uncertain; **incertis ordinibus**, when their ranks were broken (C. iv, 32).

in-cĭdo, -cĭdĕre, -cĭdī, -cāsum, v. tr., fall in with, attack.

in-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., begin, commence.

in-cĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., urge, arouse, encourage; **equo incitato**, with horse at full gallop (C. iv, 12); **remis incitare**, to row hard (C. iv, 25).

in-clīn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., lean against.

in-cognĭt-us, -ă, -um, adj., unknown.

in-cŏl-a, -ae, M., an inhabitant.

in-cŏlo, -cŏlĕre, -cŏlŭī, -cultum, v. tr., live in, inhabit.

in-cŏlŭm-is, -ĕ, adj., safe, in safety.

in-commŏd-um, -ī, N., misfortune, harm, disaster, defeat.

in-crēdĭbĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., incredible.

in-cursĭ-o, -ōnis; F., inroad, invasion.

in-cūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., accuse, blame.

inde, adv., from that place, thence; after that, then.

indĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make known, deceive, betray.

in-dīco, -dīcĕre, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., proclaim, declare; **bellum indicere**, to declare war.

in-dĭcĭ-um, -ī, N., sign, proof, mark, token.

ind-ĭgĕo, -ĭgēre, -ĭgŭī, no sup., v. intr. (with gen. or abl., p. 281, 10; 282, 1), be in want, need; **alienarum opum indigere**, to be dependent on the help of others (N. H. 1).

in-dign-us, -ă, -um, adj., unworthy (with abl., p. 64, 4).

in-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., induce, persuade.

in-dŭo, -dŭĕre, -dŭī, -dūtum, v. tr., put on, don.

industrĭ-a, -ae, F., industry.

indŭtĭ-ae, -ārum, F. pl., a truce, armistice.

Indŭtĭŏmār-us, -ī, M., Indutiomarus, a leading man among the Treveri, and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans (C. v, 2).

ĭn-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum, v. tr. and intr., enter, enter upon; **inire consilium**, to form a plan; **inire rationem**, to form a plan (N. H. 10); **inire consulatum**, to enter upon a consulship; **iniens adulescentia**, the beginning of youth (N. T. 1); **secunda inita vigilia**, at the beginning of the second watch (C. v, 23).

in-erm-is, -ĕ, adj., unarmed, defenceless.

ĭn-ers, -ertis, adj., indolent, idle, inactive.

in-fāmĭ-a, -ae, F., ill report, infamy.

in-fa-ns, -ntis, M. or F., child.

in-fēlix, -fēlīcis, adj., unhappy, unfortunate.

in-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī illātum, v. tr., carry in, bring in; **bellum hostibus inferre**, to make war on the enemy (p. 278, 6); **signa inferre**, to advance; **mala inferre**, to cause misfortune (N. T. 9); **bello illato**, when the war was over (C. v, 12).

in-fĕr-us, -ă, -um, adj., below, lower; comp., **inferior**; sup., **infimus** or **imus** (p. 59, 1).

in-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., stain.

infĭmus: see **inferus**.

infīnīt-us, -ă, -um, adj., boundless, immense.

infirmĭt-as, -ātis, F., fickleness.

in-firm-us, -ă, -um, adj., weak, feeble.

in-fĭtĭ-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., deny.

in-flŭo, -flŭĕre, -fluxī, -fluxum, v. intr., flow into, empty into.

infrā, (1) adv., below; (2) prep. (with acc.), below, beneath.

in-gĕnĭ-um, -ī, N., natural disposition, talent, ability, genius.

in-gen-s, -tis, adj., huge, great, vast.

in-grātiis, adj., against one's will, unwillingly.

in-grāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., unthankful, thankless, ungrateful.

in-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., enter upon.

in-hĭbĕo, -hĭbēre, -hĭbŭī, -hĭbĭtum, v. tr., check, restrain.

in-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw or cast into; **metum inicere Germanis**, to inspire the Germans with fear (C. iv, 18).

ĭn-ĭmīcĭtĭ-a, -ae, F., hatred, enmity.

ĭn-ĭmīc-us, -ă, -um, adj., unfriendly, hostile; as a noun, a private enemy.

ĭn-īqu-us, -ă, -um, adj., uneven; disadvantageous, unjust.

ĭn-ĭtĭ-um, -ī, N., beginning, commencement; **in initio**, in the beginning.

in-iūrĭ-a, -ae, F., wrong, outrage, injustice.

in-iuste, adv., unjustly, wrongfully.

in-iust-us, -ă, -um, adj., unjust.

in-nītor, -nītī, -nīsus (or **nixus**) **sum**, v. intr., lean on, rest on, support one's self by.

in-nŏcen-s, -tis, adj., harmless, innocent.

in-nŏcentĭ-a, -ae, F., uprightness, integrity.

ĭn-ŏpĭ-a, -ae, F., want, scarcity, poverty.

ĭn-ŏpīnāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., unexpected.

inquam (verb defective, p. 146, 6), say.

in-scĭen-s, -tis, adj., not knowing, at unawares, ignorant; **illis inscientibus**, while they were unaware of it (N. H. 9); **Caesare insciente**, without the knowledge of Caesar (C. v, 7).

in-scī-us, -ā, -um, adj., not knowing, ignorant of a thing.

in-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus (or **sĕquūtus**) **sum**, v. tr. dep., overtake, attack; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating enemy (c. v, 16).

in-sīdī-ae, -ārum, F. pl., ambush; **per dolum et insidias**, by guile and treachery (c. iv, 13).

in-sidī-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., lie in wait, lie in ambush.

in-signe, -signis, N., sign, mark, badge, decoration.

in-signis, -signe, adj., noted, remarkable.

in-sĭnŭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make a way into; **se insinuare**, to make their way among (c. iv, 33).

in-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, no sup., v. intr., stand, take one's position; **firmiter insistere**, to get a firm foothold (c. iv, 26).

insŏlenter, adv., haughtily, arrogantly.

instăbĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., unsteady.

instan-s, -tis, (pres. part. of **insto**, used as an) adj., present; **de instantibus**, about present affairs (N. T. 1).

in-stĭtŭo, -stĭtŭĕre, -stĭtŭī, -stĭtūtum, v. tr., draw up troops; decide upon; **sacrificare instituit**, he began to sacrifice (N. H. 2); **triplicem aciem instituere**, to draw up a triple line (c. iv, 14); **bellum parare instituit**, he decided to prepare for war (c. v, 3); **ab instituto consilio**, from carrying out his appointed plan (c. v, 4).

in-stĭtūt-um, -ī, N., custom, usage, law.

in-sto, -stāre, -stĭtī, no sup., v. intr., press on.

in-strŭo, -strŭĕre, -struxī, -structum, v. tr., build, draw up; **navem instruere**, to build a ship (c. v, 2); **omnibus rebus instrui**, to be fully equipped (c. v, 5); **copias instruere**, to draw up forces (c. v, 18).

in-suēfact-us, -ă, -um, adj., accustomed.

in-suēt-us, -ă, -um adj., unaccustomed; **navigandi insuetus**, unused to sailing (c. v, 6).

insŭl-a, -ae, F., island.

in-sŭper, adv., moreover, besides, above.

intel-lĕgo, -lĕgĕre, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., understand, know; **intellectum est**, it was observed (c. v, 16).

in-tempĕrantī-a, -ae, F., haughtiness, arrogance.

inter, prep. (with acc.), between, among, during.

inter-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. tr., intervene, come to pass; **bella intercesserant**, wars had sprung up (c. v, 11).

inter-clūdo, -clūdĕre, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., hem in; **fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferre**, to bring aid to his brother surrounded by the enemy (c. iv, 12).

inter-dīco, -dīcĕre, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., forbid, exclude from.

interdum, adv., sometimes, meanwhile.

intĕr-ĕā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.

intĕr-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or **-ĭī**), **-ĭtum**, v. intr., be wasted, perish.

interest, interesse, interfuit, intr., impersonal; it is of importance; **magni interest**, it is of great importance; **meā interest**, it is of importance to me; **viri interest**, it is of importance to the man (p. 282, 14).

inter-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., kill, destroy, slay.

intĕrim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

intĕrĭor, comparative adj., from obsolete **intĕrus** (p. 59, 2), inner; **interiores**, those of the inland parts (c. v, 14); **pars interior**, the inland part (c. v, 12); **interiora consilia**, the private counsels (N. H. 2).

intĕrĭt-us, -ūs, M., destruction, death.

inter-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., discontinue; **brevi tempore intermisso**, after the lapse of a short interval (c. iv, 34); **vento intermisso**, after the wind had died down (c. v, 8); **ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis**, not even the night time interrupting the exertions of the soldiers (c. v, 11); **intermisso spatio**, after a time (c. v, 15).

inter-nĕcī-o, -ōnis, F., extermination, massacre.

inter-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., allege; **causam interponere**, to allege as an excuse (N. T. 7); **moram interponere**, to cause a delay (c. iv, 9); **fidem interponere**, to pledge his word (c. v, 6).

inter-prĕt-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., expound.

inter-rŏg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask, inquire.

inter-rumpo, -rumpĕre, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break down, break up.

inter-sum, -esse, -fŭī, v. intr., be present, take part in (with dative, p. 279, 9).

inter-vall-um, -ī, N., an interval of space or time.

inter-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., come between, come upon.

intrā, prep. (with acc.), between, within.

intrō-ĭt-us, -ūs, M., an entrance.

in-tŭĕor, -tŭērī, -tŭĭtus sum, v. tr. dep., behold, consider, regard.

in-ūsĭtāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., unusual.

in-ūtīl-is, -ĕ, adj., useless, unserviceable.

in-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr., come upon, find out, discover.

in-ven-tor, -tōris, M., discoverer, inventor.

in-vĭcem, adv., by turns, alternately.

in-vict-us, -ă, -um, adj., unconquered.

in-vīdī-a, -ae, F., envy, ill-will.

invīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., invite.

invīt-us, -ă, -um, adj., unwilling; **se invīto**, against his will (c. iv, 16).

in-vŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call on or upon; invoke.

ipse, ipsă, ipsum, dem. pro. (see p. 122); self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; **ipso terrore equorum**, by mere terror caused by the horses (c. iv, 33).

īr-a, -ae, F., anger.

īrācundĭ-a, -ae, F., anger, rage, passion.

īrācund-us, -ă, -um, adj., irritable, passionate, angry.

īrāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., angry, angered.

ir-rīdĕo, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, v. tr., ridicule.

ir-rumpo, -rumpĕre, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. intr., break into, burst into; force one's way into.

is, ĕă, id, dem. pro. (p. 195, 4), this, that, he, she, it, they; before **ut**, **is** = **talis**, such; with comparatives **eo** (abl.) the: **eo magis**, all the more.

iste, ista, istud, dem. pro., that, that of yours (p. 118).

ĭta, adv., in this way, so, thus; in the following manner, therefore; **non ita magnus**, not very large.

Ĭtălĭ-a, -ae, F., Italy.

ĭtăque, conj., and so, therefore, accordingly.

ĭtem, adv., just, so, also, in like manner.

ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, N., journey, march; **iter magnum**, a forced march; **ex itinere oppugnare**, to storm by direct assault; **ex itinere**, on the march; **iter facere**, to make a march; **iter conficere**, to complete a march (c. iv, 4).

ĭtĕrum, adv., again, a second time.

Ĭtĭ-us, -ī, M., Itius, a port on the northern coast of Gaul, opposite Britain. From it Caesar sailed to Britain. It is said to be *Boulogne*, or *Wissant*.

iŭbĕo, iŭbēre, iussi, iussum, v. tr., order, command (p. 181, 3, note).

iūd-ex, -ĭcis, M., judge.

iūdĭcĭ-um, -ī, M., judgment, trial, decree, opinion; **in iudiciis versari**, to be employed in trials (N. T. 1).

iūdĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., judge, decide; **verissime iudicare**, to form the most correct judgment (N. T. 1).

iŭg-um, -ī, N., yoke.

iūment-um, -ī, N., beast of burden. In c. iv, 2, horses.

iunctūr-a, -ae, F., joining.

iungo, iungĕre, iunxī, iunctum, v. tr., join, unite.

iūnĭ-or, -ōris, comp. of **iuvenis** (p. 58, note), younger.

Iūpĭter, Iŏvis, M., Iupiter (see p. 237).

iūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. swear, take an oath.

iūs, iūris, N., right, authority, law; **iura in hos**, rights over these; **ius commune**, the common rights (N. T. 7).

iūs-iūrand-um, iūris-iūrandi, N., a civil oath, distinguished from **sacramentum**, the military oath.

iustĭtĭ-a, -ae, F., uprightness, justice.

iust-us, -ă, -um, adj., according to right, lawful, upright.

iŭvenc-us, -ī, M., a steer.

iŭvĕn-is, -ĕ, adj., young; comp., **iunior**; sup., **minimus natu** (p. 58, note).

iŭvent-us, -ūtis, F., youth, the period from 17 to 46, and so the military age; the youth of a country.

iŭvo, iūvāre, iūvī, iūtum, v. tr., help, aid, assist (p. 278, foot note).

iuxta (prep., with acc.), close to, beside.

K.

Kălend-ae, -ārum, F. pl., the Kalends, the first day of each month.

Karthago: see **Carthago**.

Karthaginiensis: see **Carthaginiensis**.

L.

L. = Lucius, a Roman praenomen: see **Domitius**.

Lăbĕ-o, -ōnis, M., Labeo: see **Fabius**.

Lăbĕrĭ-us, -ī, M., Laberius; Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune in Caesar's army in Gaul.

Lăbĭēn-us, -ī, M., Titus Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. On the outbreak of the civil war he went over to Pompey and fell at Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.

lăb-or, -ōris, M., toil, suffering, exertion.

lābor, lābī, lapsus sum, v. intr. dep., slip, go astray; **propter imprudentiam labi**, to fall away from allegiance on account of thoughtlessness (C. v, 3).

lăbōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., toil, labor, suffer; **cupide laborare**, to be very anxious (N. A. 1).

labr-um, -ī, N., lip.

lac, lactis, N., milk; **lacte et carne vivere**, to live on milk and flesh (C. v, 14).

Lăcĕdaem-on, -ŏnis, F., Lacedaemon or Sparta, a city of the Peloponnesus.

Lăcĕdaemŏnĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., Spartan.

lăc-er, -ĕrā, -ĕrum, adj., torn, mangled.

lăc-esso, -essĕre, -essīvī, -essītum, v. tr., provoke, assail, assault.

lăc-rĭma, -rĭmae, F., a tear.

lăcrĭm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., weep.

lăc-us, -ūs, M., a lake.

laedo, laedĕre, laesī, laesum, v. tr., harm, hurt, offend, injure.

laet-ĭtĭa, -ĭtĭae, F., joy, delight, pleasure.

laet-us, -ă, -um, adj., joyful, glad, pleasant.

Lampsăc-us, -ī, F., Lampsacus, a city of Mysia, on the Hellespont.

lăp-is, -ĭdis, M., a stone.

largē, adv., bountifully.

larg-ĭor, -īri, -ītus sum, v. tr. dep., bestow, give freely, bribe.

largĭter, adv.; see **largē**.

largītĭ-o, -ōnis, F., distribution, bribery; **largitio magistratuum**, the distribution made by the magistrates (N. T. 2).

larg-us, -a, -um, adj., bounteous.

Lartĭ-us, -ī, M., Titus Lartius, the first Roman dictator.

lassĭ-tūd-o, -ĭnis, F., weariness, fatigue.

lātē, adv., widely, broadly; **longe lateque**, far and wide (C. iv, 35); **quam latissime**, as widely as possible (C. iv, 3).

lātĕo, lātēre, lātŭī, no supine, v. tr., lie hid, be concealed.

lāt-ĭtūdo, -ĭtūdĭnis, F., width, breadth, extent.

Lātĭ-um, -ī, N., Latium, a district of Italy, in which Rome is situated.

lātr-o, -ōnis, M., a robber, freebooter.

lātrōcĭnĭ-um, -ī, N., robbery, freebooting, piracy.

lātrōcĭn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., be a brigand.

lăt-us, -ĕris, N., side, flank; **ab latere aperto**, on the exposed flank, *i.e.* the right (C. iv, 26).

lāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., broad, wide.

laudābĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., praiseworthy.

laud-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., praise.

laur-us, -ī, F., bay-tree.

lau-s, -dis, F., praise.

lăvo, lāvāre, lāvāvī (or lāvī), lāvātum (or lautum, lotum), v. tr., wash, bathe.

lēgātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., an embassy.

lēgā-tus, -ī, M., (1) an ambassador; (2) lieutenant-general in the army, officers of senatorial rank in command of different divisions in the field, under the **imperator**. They were appointed by the Senate and were usually three in number, but Caesar had ten in Gaul.

lĕgĭ-o, -ōnis, F., a legion; a division of the Roman army consisting, when complete, of 6,000 infantry and 300 cavalry. The infantry was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries. The cavalry consisted of ten squadrons (**turmae**); **legione conferta**, owing to the legion being in close order (C. iv, 32); **legioni aliquem praeficere**, to appoint one over a legion (C. v, 1); **legiones expeditae**, legions without

baggage, or in light marching order (c. v, 2).

lĕgĭonārĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to a legion; **milites legionarii,** common soldiers.

lēgĭtĭm-us, -ă, -um, adj., lawful; **poena legitima,** the legal penalty.

lĕgo, lĕgĕre, lēgī, lectum, v. tr., choose, select; read.

lēg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., do by law, appoint, despatch.

Lĕmann-us, -ī, M., Leman, or lake of Geneva.

lēn-is, -ĕ, adj., mild, gentle.

lēnĭt-as, -ātis, F., smoothness.

lēnĭter, adv., gently.

lĕ-o, -ōnis, M., a lion.

Lĕōnīd-as, -ae, M., Leonidas, king of Sparta, who with his band of three hundred Spartans held the pass of Thermopylae for three days, B.C. 480.

Lĕopontĭ-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Leopontii, a Gallic tribe dwelling near the sources of the Rhine among the Alps, between *St. Gothard* and *Lake Maggiore* (c. iv, 10).

lĕp-us, -ŏris, M., a hare.

lēv-is, -ĕ, adj., light; **milites levis armaturae,** light armed soldiers (p. 280, 4).

lēv-is, -ĕ, adj., smooth.

lĕv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., relieve, lighten.

lex, lēgis, F., law, terms, conditions.

lĭben-s, -tis, adj., willing, cheerful.

lĭbenter, adv., willingly, cheerfully.

lĭb-er, -rī, M., book.

lĭb-er, -ĕrā, -ĕrum, adj., free.

lĭbĕrālĭter, adv., courteously, generously.

lĭbĕrē, adv., freely, without restraint; **liberius vivere,** to live too dissolutely, (N. T. 1).

lĭbĕr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., children (the singular is not found except in late writers); **unus ex liberis,** one child.

lĭbĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., free, acquit; **poenā liberare,** to relieve from punishment.

libert-a, -ae, F., a freedwoman (p. 6, 2).

libert-as, -ātis, F., liberty, freedom.

lĭbert-us, -ī, M., a freedman.

lĭb-et, -ēre, -ŭit, -ĭtum, v. intr. impers., it pleases; **mihi libet,** I am pleased.

lĭc-et, -ēre, -ŭit, -ĭtum, v. intr. impers., it is allowed; may, might (p. 163, 5).

lĭcet, conj. (p. 196, 7), although, though, even if.

lic-tor, -tōris, M., a lictor; an attendant of the superior magistrates. The lictors served as a body-guard and also as a mark of official dignity.

lign-ĕus, -ĕă, -ĕum, adj., of wood, wooden; **lignea moenia,** wooden walls, the term which the Pythian priestess enigmatically used for the Athenian ships.

lign-um, -ī, N., wood.

Lĭgŭr-es, -um, pl. M., the Ligures, a people inhabiting Liguria in North-Western Italy.

lĭlĭ-um, -ī, N., lily.

Lingŏn-es, -um, pl. M., the Lingones, a people of Gaul whose territories lay about **Mons Vosĕgus** (*Vosges Mountains*), and the sources of the **Mosa** (*Meuse*) and **Matrŏna** (*Marne*. Their chief town was **Andematunnum** (now *Langres*).

lingu-a, -ae, F., tongue, language.

lint-er, -ris, F., boat, skiff.

lĭquen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of **lĭqueo,** used as an) adj., flowing.

lis, lītis, F., a dispute, law suit; **litem aestimare,** to estimate the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

Lisc-us, -ī, M., Liscus, an Aeduan chief.

littĕr-a (or **lītĕr-a**), **-ae,** F., a letter of the alphabet; pl. **litter-ae, -ārum,** literature or a despatch, letter, epistle; **litterae Persarum,** Persian literature (N. T. 10); **ex litteris,** in accordance with the despatch (c. iv, 38).

lĭt-us, -ŏris, N., sea shore, coast.

lŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., place, station; **castra locare,** to pitch a camp.

lŏc-us, -ī, M., a place; pl., **lŏca** or **lŏci** (p. 242); **obsidum loco,** as hostages (c. v, 5); **loca frigidissima,** very cold parts (c. iv, 1); **in loca superiora,** up the country (c. v, 8); **loca temperatiora,** more temperate climate (c. v, 12).

lŏcūt-us, -ă, -um, perf. part. of **lŏquor**; which see.

longē, adv., far; with comparatives and superlatives, far, by far; **longe melior,** far better; **longe optimus,** by far the best; **longius,** too far (c. v, 7); **longe lateque,** far and wide (c. iv, 35).

longinqu-us, -ă, -um, adj., far removed, remote ; distant, prolonged.

longĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., length, extent.

long-us, -ă, -um, adj., long.

Longus, -ī, M. ; see **Sempronius** (under Tiberius Sempronius Longus).

lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtus (or **lŏquūtus**) **sum,** v. tr. dep., speak.

Lūcān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Lucani, or people of Lucania, in South-Eastern Italy.

Lucc-a, -ae, F., Lucca, a town of Gallia Cisalpina.

lūc-ĕo, -ēre, -luxī, no sup., v. intr., shine.

lūcēt, lūcēre, luxit, v. intr. imper., it is light.

Lūcī-us, -ī, M. ; see **Aemilius, Cotta, Furius.**

lūcr-um -i, N., profit, gain, advantage.

lūdo, lūdĕre, lūsī, lūsum, v. intr., sport, play.

lūd-us, -ī, M., sport, play ; pl., **ludi,** games.

lūgĕo, lūgēre, luxī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., lament, mourn for.

Lugotŏri-x, -ĭgis, M., Lugotorix, a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

lūm-en, -ĭnis, N., light.

lūn-a, -ae, F., moon.

lūp-us, -ī, M., a wolf.

lūs-us, -ūs, M., sport, play.

lux, lūcis, F., light ; **prima luce,** at daybreak ; **orta luce,** at daybreak (C. v, 8).

luxūrī-a, -ae, F., luxury, extravagance.

Lysĭmăch-us, -ī, M., Lysimachus, an Athenian, father of Aristides (N. A. 1).

M.

M. = Marcus, a Roman praenomen ; see **Baebius, Claudius, Minucius.**

măchĭnātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., a machine, an engine.

maer-ĕo, -ēre, no perf., no sup., v. tr. and intr., grieve, lament.

măgis (comp. of adv., **magnopere**), more, rather (sup. **maxime**).

măgist-er, -rī, M., master ; **magister equitum,** master of the horse, an officer next in rank to the dictator.

măgistrāt-us, -ūs, M., office, magistrate.

Magnēsī-a, -ae, F., Magnesia, a city of Caria, on the Maeander.

magnĭfĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., noble, grand.

magnĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., greatness, size, bulk, ; **animi magnitudo,** nobility of spirit, magnanimity.

magnŏpĕre, adv. (often written **magno opere**), greatly ; comp., **magis** ; sup., **maxime,** especially (N. T. 2) ; **magnopere orant,** they earnestly ask (C. iv, 11).

magn-us, -ă, -um, adj., large, great (comp. **maior** ; sup. **maximus**) ; **magni,** at a high price ; **pluris,** at a greater price ; **maximi,** at a very high price (p. 280, 5) ; **maiores natu,** elders (N. T. 2) ; **maiores,** ancestors ; **res maior,** matter of more than usual importance (N. T. 1) ; **maximam partem,** for the most part (C. iv, 1) ; **magni habere,** to value highly (C. iv, 21) ; **magni interesse,** to be of great importance (C. v, 4).

Măg-o, -ōnis, M., Mago, a Carthaginian, brother of Hannibal ; died 203 B.C.

maiōrēs : see **magnus.**

māle, adv., badly (comp., **pēius** ; sup., **pessīmē**) ; **rem male gerere,** to be unsuccessful (N. T. 5).

mălĕ-dīco, -dīcĕre, -dixī, -dictum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 5), revile, slander, speak ill of.

mălĕ-dĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., slanderous (p. 57, 3).

mălĕfĭcī-um, -ī, N., evil deed, crime.

mălĕfĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., evil doing, criminal (p. 57, 3).

mālo, malle, mālŭī, no sup., v. irreg. (p. 147), wish rather, prefer.

măl-um, -ī, N., evil, misfortune, calamity ; **mala inferre,** to cause misfortunes (N. T. 9).

măl-us, -ă, -um, adj., bad, evil, wicked (comp., **pēior** ; sup., **pessimus**).

mandāt-um, -ī, N., order, command, charge.

mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), entrust, bid ; **se fugae mandare,** to betake themselves to flight (C. v, 18).

Mandŭbrācĭ-us, -ī, M., Mandubracius, a chief of the Trinobantes, a British tribe.

mānē, adv., in the morning, early.

măn-ĕo, -ēre, -mansī, -mansum, v. tr. and intr., remain, await, stay ; in

officio manere, to remain in allegiance, to remain loyal (C. v, 4).

mānĭfest-us, -ă, -um, adj., clear, plain, evident.

Manlī-us, -ī, M., Manlius; Cnēius Manlius Volso, consul 189 B.C., conquered the Galatians.

mansuē-făcĭo, -făcĕre, -fēcī, -factum, v. intr., tame.

mān-us, -ūs, F., hand; band of men; **manum conserere**, to engage in battle (N. H. 4); **delecta manus**, a picked band.

Mărăthōnĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Marathon; **pugna Marathonia**, the battle of Marathon, fought 490 B. C. on the plain of Marathon, about 24 miles N. E. of Athens.

Marcell-us, -ī, M., Marcellus; (1) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, a Roman consul who took Syracuse B.C. 212, and in his fifth consulship, 208 B.C., was slain in battle against Hannibal near Venusia, in Apulia. (2) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, in whose consulship, according to some, Hannibal died, 183 B.C.

Marc-us, -ī, M., Marcus; a Roman praenomen; see **Crassus, Minucius, Marcellus** (2).

Mardŏnĭ-us, -ī, M., Mardonius, son-in-law of Darius, and general of the Persian army at Plataeae, where he was defeated, B.C. 479.

măr-e, -is, N., the sea; **et mari et terra**, both by sea and land.

margărīt-a, -ae, F., a pearl.

mărĭtĭm-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to the sea; maritime; **ora maritima**, the sea coast; **regiones maritimae**, the districts lying on the sea; **maritimi praedones**, pirates (N. T. 2).

Mar-s, -tis, M., Mars, the Roman god of war.

Martĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Mars.

mas, măris, adj., male.

mā-ter, -tris, F., mother; **mater familiae** or **mater familias**, the mother of the house.

mātĕrĭ-a, -ae, F., timber.

mātrĭmōnĭ-um, -ī, N., marriage; **in matrimonium ducere**, to marry; **in matrimonium dare**, to give in marriage.

mātrōn-a, -ae, F., a married woman; matron.

mātūrē, adv., early (comp., **maturius**; sup., **maturrime** or **maturissime**).

mātūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., make ripe, ripen, hasten.

mātūr-us, -ă, -um, adj., ripe, early.

maxĭme, adv., superlative of **magnopere**, which see.

maxĭm-us, -ă, -um, adj., superlative of **magnus**, which see.

Maxĭmus, -ī, M., Maximus, a cognomen given to Quintus Fabius on account of his exploits: see **Fabius**.

mecum; with me (p. 105, 8).

mĕdĕor, mĕdērī, no perf., no sup., v. intr. dep. (with dative), heal, provide against or for, remedy.

mĕdĭcīn-a, -ae, F., medicine.

mĕdĭc-us, -ī, M., healer, physician.

mĕdĭōcr-is, -ĕ, adj., moderate; **non mediocris**, not ordinary, *i.e.*, very marked.

Mĕdĭomātrĭc-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Mediomatrici, a people of Gaul in the neighborhood of the modern city of *Metz*.

mĕdĭterrānĕ-us, -ă, -um, adj., inland, central.

mĕdĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., middle; **medius mons**, the middle of the mountain; **mediā de nocte**, after midnight; **ad mediam noctem**, about midnight.

Mēd-us, -ă, -um, adj., Median or Persian; pl., **Mēdī, -orum**, M., the Medes or Persians.

Meld-ī, -ōrum or **Meldae, -ārum**, pl. M., the Meldi or Meldae, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the coast east of the Parisii, near the modern town of *Meaux*, which still preserve the name.

membr-um, -ī, N., limb.

mĕmĭn-ī, -isse, v. defec. (see p. 145), remember (for construction, p. 146, 7).

mĕm-or, -ōris, adj., mindful.

mĕmŏrĭ-a, -ae, F., memory, recollection; **memoriā tenere**, to recollect; **nostrā memoriā**, in our day (N. T. 10); **memoriā prodere**, to hand down by tradition (N. T. 10); **post hominum memoriam**, within the memory of man (N. T. 5); **duplex memoria**, a twofold account (N. H. 10).

mĕmŏr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., relate.

Mĕnāpĭ-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Menapii, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosa (*Meuse*), and the Scaldis (*Scheldt*); their chief town was Menapiorum Castellum (now *Kessel*).

mendācī-um, -ī, N., falsehood.

mendā-x, -cis, adj., lying, false.

men-s, -tis, F., mind.

men-sa, -sae, F., a table.

men-sis, -sis, M., month.

men-sūr-a, -ae, F., measure; **certae ex aqua mensurae**, accurate measurements by the water clock (C. v, 13).

men-tī-o, -ōnis, F., a mentioning or mention of anything.

men-tīor, -tīrī, -tītus sum, v. dep., tr., lie, speak falsely.

mercā-tor, -tōris, M., trader; **mercatoribus est aditus**, traders go there (C. iv, 2).

mercātūr-a, -ae, F., trade, commerce.

mer-cēs, -cēdis, F., gain, profit, reward.

Mercŭrĭ-us, -ī, M., Mercury, the god of gain and commerce.

mĕr-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., gain.

mĕr-ĕor, -ērī, -ĭtus sum, v. tr. dep., gain, earn, deserve.

mergo, **mergĕre**, **mersī**, **mersum**, v. tr., sink, immerse, overwhelm, destroy.

mĕridiān-us, -ă, -um, adj., midday; **meridiano fere tempore**, at about noon (C. v, 8).

mĕridĭ-es, -ēī, M., mid-day (p. 238, foot note); **ad meridiem spectat**, it faces the South (*i.e.*, the sun at noon).

mĕrĭt-um, -ī, N., service, kindness, benefit; **pro meritis**, for his kindness (N. T. 8); **merito eius a se fieri**, to be done by him according to the deserts of the latter (C. v, 4).

mĕrĭt-us, -ă, -um: see **mereor**.

mĕtall-um, -ī, N., mine.

mĕt-ĭor, -īrī, **mensus sum**, v. tr., dep., measure, measure out.

mĕto, **mĕtĕre**, **messŭī**, **messum**, v. tr., reap.

mĕtŭ-o, -ĕre, -ī, **mĕtūtum**, v. tr., fear.

mĕt-us, -ūs, M., fear.

mē-us, -ă, -um, poss. adj. pro.; my, mine.

migr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., migrate, depart.

mīl-es, -ĭtis, M., a soldier.

mīlĭtār-is, -ĕ, adj., of or belonging to a soldier, military; **res militaris**, military science.

mīlĭtī-a, -ae, F., military service; **militiae** (p. 86), on military service, abroad.

mille, adj. or noun, indecl., a thousand (p. 68, 5); pl. **millĭa** or **mīlĭa**.

millia passuum, miles; **mille passus**, a Roman mile, or 1,616 yards (see **passus**).

millĭēs, adv., a thousand times.

Mīl-o, -ōnis, M., Milo, a friend of Cicero.

Miltĭād-es, -ae, M., Miltiades, a celebrated Athenian general, who commanded the Athenians at the battle of Marathon, 490 B.C.

Mĭnerv-a, -ae, F., Minerva, a Roman goddess who presided over wisdom and war.

mĭn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., threaten; **aliquem morte**, or **alicui mortem minari**, to threaten anyone with death.

mĭn-or, -us, adj. (comp. of **parvus**; sup., **mĭnĭmus**, p. 57, 4), less; as a noun, **minores** (with or without **natu**), descendants; **dimidio minor**, half the size (C. v, 13).

Mĭnŭcĭ-us, -ī, M., Minucius; (1) **Marcus Minucius Rufus**, master of the horse under the dictator **Quintus Fabius Maximus**, in 217 B.C., the year of the battle of Lake Trasimenus. He fell at Cannae, 216 B.C. (2) **Quintus Minucius**, consul 197 B.C., in the third year of Hannibal's banishment from Carthage.

mĭnŭ-o, -ĕre, -ŭī, **mĭnūtum**, v. tr., lessen, diminish.

mĭnus, comp. adv. of **părum** (which see), less; sup., **mĭnĭme**; **si** or **sin minus**, if not (p. 77, 6); with adjs. = not: **minus probatus**, not acceptable (N. T. 1).

mīrābĭl-ĭs, -ĕ, adj., wonderful.

mīr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., admire, wonder at.

mīr-us, -ă, -um, adj., wonderful, strange, marvellous.

mĭs-er, -ĕră, -ĕrum, adj., wretched, unfortunate.

mĭsĕr-ĕor, -ērī, -ĭtus sum, v. intr., dep. (with genitive, p. 146), feel pity for.

mĭsĕr-esco, -escĕre, no perf., no sup., v. intr. (with genitive, p. 146), feel pity for.

mĭsĕr-et, -ēre, -ŭit, -ĭtum est, v. tr. impers., it distresses, it excites pity; **me tui miseret**, I pity you (p. 165).

mĭsĕrĭcordĭ-a, -ae, F., pity, compassion; **captus misericordia**, overcome with pity (N. T. 8).

mĭsĕr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep. (with acc., p. 146), express pity for.

mīt-is, -ĕ, adj., mild.

mitto, mittĕre, mīsī, missum, v. tr., send.

mōbĭlĭt-as, -ātis, F., activity, speed.

mōbĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., easily moved.

mŏdĕr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. and intr., manage, regulate.

mŏdestĭ-a, -ae, F., modesty, self-control.

mŏdĭ-us, -ī, M., a modius ; a Roman dry measure nearly equal to the English peck.

mŏdo, adv., only, merely, at all ; **modo...modo,** now...now, at one moment...at another ; **non modo...sed etiam,** not only...but also ; with the subjunctive, **modo=dummodo,** if only, provided (p. 194, 3).

mŏdō ; see **modus.**

mŏd-us, -ī, M., a measure, amount, manner, method ; **modo fluminis,** like a river ; **nullo modo,** by no means ; **modo oratoris,** in the capacity of an ambassador (c. iv, 27).

moen-ĭa, -ĭum, pl. N., walls of a city, fortifications.

mōlestē, adv., with trouble, with annoyance ; **res multas moleste ferre,** to be annoyed at many things.

mōlest-us, -ă, -um, adj., troublesome, annoying.

Moloss-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Molossi, a tribe of Epirus, in North-Western Greece.

moll-is, -ĕ, adj., smooth.

mŏl-o, -ĕre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., grind.

Mŏn-a, -ae, F., Mona, the *Isle of Man. Anglesey* was also called Mona, but its position does not answer Caesar's description (c. v, 13).

mŏn-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., advise, warn, remind.

mon-s, -tis, M., mountain ; **summus mons,** the top of the mountain (p. 53, note).

monstr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show.

mŏnŭment-um, -ī, N., monument, tomb.

mŏr-a, -ae, F., delay.

mŏr-a, -ae, F., a mora, or division of the Spartan army, consisting of 600 foot and 100 horse in Xenophon's time.

morb-us, -ī, M., sickness, disease.

mordĕo, mordēre, mŏmordī, morsum, v. tr., bite, hurt.

mŏrĭor, mŏrī, mortŭus sum, v. intr. dep., die.

Mŏrĭn-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Morini, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the north-eastern coast in the neighborhood of *Calais.* Their chief town was Gesoriacum, afterwards Bononia (now *Boulogne*).

mŏr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. and tr. dep., delay.

mor-s, -tis, F., death.

mos, mōris, M., custom, usage ; pl., **mores,** customs, character, manners ; **gestus est ei mos,** his wish was complied with (N. T. 7) ; **more suo,** according to his custom (c. iv, 19).

Mŏs-a, -ae, F., the Mosa (now *Meuse*), a river of Gallia Belgica (described c. iv, 10).

mō-tus, -tūs, M., motion, evolution ; **Galliae motus,** an uprising in Gaul (c. v, 5).

mŏvĕo, mŏvēre, mōvī, mōtum, v. tr., move, set in motion ; **arma movere,** to take up arms ; **bellum movere,** to undertake a war ; **castra movere,** to break up camp.

mox, adv., presently, soon ; then, afterwards.

mūl-a, -ae, F., a she-mule (p. 6, 5).

mūlct-a, -ae, F. (also written **multa, -ae**), fine, penalty.

mulct-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fine, punish.

mŭlĭ-er, -ĕris, F., woman.

multĭtud-o, -ĭnis, F., crowd, multitude.

mult-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fine, punish (same as **mulcto**).

multo, adv. (used before comparatives), adv., much, by much, greatly ; **multo melior,** much better (comp., **plus** ; sup., **plurimum**).

multum, adv. (not used before comparative, otherwise same as **multo**) ; **multum in iudiciis privatis versabatur,** he was often employed in private suits (N. T. 1) ; **multum sunt in venationibus,** they are greatly addicted to hunting (c. iv, 1).

mult-us, -ă, -um, adj., much, many ; comp., **plus** (p. 246) ; sup., **plurimus** (p. 77, 6).

mund-us, -ī, M., universe, world.

mūnĭfĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., lavish (p. 57, 3).

munīment-um, -ī, N., defence, fortification.

mūn-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., protect, defend ; **iter munire,** to build a road.

mūnītĭ-o, -ōnis, F., defence.

mūn-us, -ĕris, N., duty, service; **muneribus donatus**, presented with gifts (N. T. 10).

mur-mur, -mŭris, N., murmur.

mūr-us, -ī, M., wall.

mūs, mūris, M., mouse.

musc-a, -ae, F., a fly.

mūsĭc-ă, -ae, F., or mūsĭc-a, -ōrum, pl. N., music.

mūtīl-us, -a, -um, adj., blunt, broken.

mūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., change, exchange.

My-us, -ūntis (acc., Myunta), F., Myus, a town of Caria in Asia Minor.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, perf. part. dep. **nanciscor**, having obtained.

nam, conj., for; stands first in a sentence and explains some previous statement.

namque, conj., for indeed, for truly.

nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus (or nanctus) sum, v. tr. dep., obtain, get, find.

Nantŭāt-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Nantuates, a people of South-eastern Gaul, in the neighborhood of Geneva.

nar-ro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., tell.

na-scor, -scī, -tus sum, v. intr. dep., be born, be produced, be descended from.

nātāl-is, -ĕ, adj., natal, birth; **dies natalis**, birthday.

nă-tĭo, -tĭōnis, F., tribe, people, nation.

nă-to, -tāre, -tāvī, -tātum, v. intr., swim.

nā-tūr-a, -ae, F., nature, disposition, form; **naturā**, by nature, naturally; **loci haec erat natura**, the following was the situation of the place (C. iv, 23); **naturā triquetra**, triangular in form (C. v, 13).

nā-tus, -tă, -tum, (perf. part. dep., used as an) adj., descended from, born from; **puer decem annos natus**, a boy ten years old (p. 69, 9); **amplissimo genere natus**, descended from a most illustrious family (C. iv, 12).

nā-tus, -tūs, M., used only in the abl., by birth; **maiores natu**, ancestors; **minores natu**, descendants.

nau-frăgĭ-um, -ī, F., shipwreck; **facere naufragium**, to be shipwrecked (N. T. 7).

nau-ta, -tae, M., a sailor.

nau-tĭ-cus, -că, -cum, adj., of or belonging to ships, naval.

nāv-āl-is, -ĕ, adj., naval; **pugna navalis**, a sea-fight.

nāvĭgātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., a sailing; navigation.

nāvĭgĭ-um, -ī, N., a vessel, ship.

nāvĭg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., sail; **insuetus navigandi**, unaccustomed to sailing (C. v, 6).

nāv-is, -is, F., a ship; **navis longa**, a ship of war; **navis oneraria**, a ship of burden; **navem tenere in ancoris**, to keep a ship at anchor (N. T. 8); **in navem concurrere**, to charge a vessel (N. H. 10); **navem ascendere**, to embark (N. H. 7); **navem conscendere**, to embark (C. iv, 23 (elsewhere in Caesar we find **conscendere in navem**); **navem constituere**, to moor a ship (C. iv, 24).

Nax-us, -ī, F., Naxus, an island in the Aegean Sea; the largest of the Cyclades.

nē, conj., (in final clauses) that not, lest (p. 181, 3); (after verbs of fearing) that, (p. 185, 3); (after verbs of beseeching, ordering, commanding) not to (p. 183, 4).

nē, adv., not; **ne...quidem**, not... even (the emphatic word between **ne** and **quidem**, as **ne unus quidem**, not a single one); also used in negative imperative sentences, **ne hoc feceris**, don't do this (p. 287, 2).

-nĕ, interrog. enclitic particle. In single direct questions; **-nē** is not to be translated except by laying stress on the word to which it is joined (p. 28); in double questions, **-ne... an**, whether ... or (p. 287, 5).

nec: see **neque**.

nĕcessārĭo, adv., necessarily, unavoidably.

nĕcessārĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., unavoidable, urgent, necessary.

nĕcesse, indecl. adj. (used with **est** +acc. and inf.), necessary, unavoidable, inevitable, needful.

nĕcessĭt-as, -ātis, F., need, necessity.

necnĕ, adv., used in alternative indirect questions; or not; **annon**, is used in direct (p. 177, 5).

nĕc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., put to death, kill, destroy.

nĕfārĭ-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj., wicked, atrocious.

nĕfas, indecl. N., a crime (against divine law), impious deed; **nefas est dictu**, it is wrong to say (p. 175).

neg-lĕgo, **-lĕgĕre**, **-lexī**, **-lectum**, v. tr., slight, neglect, be indifferent to, despise.

nĕg-o, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., say no or not; deny, refuse; often = **dicit non**: **negat se esse aegrum**, he says that he is not sick.

nĕgōtĭ-or, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, v. dep., do, or carry on, business.

nĕgōtĭ-um, **-ī**, N., business, enterprise; **nihil negotii** or **nec quidquam negotii est**, it is no trouble.

Nemĕt-es, **-um**, pl. M., the Nemetes, a German tribe living west of the Rhine, near the modern *Spires*.

nēm-o, **-ĭnis** (only used in the sing.; the dat. and abl. are supplied by **nullus**; Caesar uses only **nemo**, **neminem**), indef. pro., no one (p. 132, 2); **non nemo**, somebody; **nemo non**, everybody.

Nĕŏcl-es, **-is** and **-ī**, M., Neocles, father of Themistocles.

Nēpōs, **Nēpōtis**, M., Cornelius Nepos, a Roman historian who lived about 44 B. C.

nĕp-os, **-ōtis**, M., grandson, nephew; pl., **nepōtes**, descendants.

nequāquam, adv., not at all, by no means.

nĕquĕ, or **nec** (in Caesar **nec** is not found before vowels), conj., nor, and not; **neque ... neque** or **nec ... nec**, neither ... nor; **nec quisquam**, no one (C. iv, 20); **neque quidquam**, nothing (C. iv, 20).

nēquidquam, adv., in vain, to no purpose.

ne-scīo, **-scīre**, **-scīvī** (or **scĭī**), **-scītum**, v. tr., not to know.

neu; see **neve**.

neu-ter, **-tră**, **-trum** (gen. **neutrĭus**; dat. **neutrī**, p. 26), adj., neither (of two).

nēve, or **neu**, conj., nor; and ... not; **neve ... neve**, or **neu ... neu**, neither ... nor (p. 186, 6).

nex, **nĕcis**, F., death; generally a violent death.

nĭg-er, **-ra**, **-rum**, adj., black, dark.

nīhil, indecl. N., nothing, nothing at all; **nihil est quod**, there is no reason that; **nihil habeo quod**, I have no reason that (p. 296, 5 *(a)*); **non nihil**, something; **nihil non**, everything; **nihil agrī**, no land at all (C. iv, 1).

nīhĭlo (abl. of degree of difference from **nihilum**), by nothing.

nīhĭlo mĭnus, or **nihilominus**, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nīhĭlo secius, adv. (literally, otherwise, by nothing; **secĭus**, comp. of **secus**, differently, otherwise); same meaning as **nihilominus**.

nīhĭl-um, **-ī**, N., nothing; **nihili aestimare**, to value at nothing.

nĭmĭo, adv., too much, exceedingly.

nimis, adv., too much, excessively.

nĭmĭum, adv. (neut. of adj. **nimius**); same meaning as **nimis**.

nĭmĭ-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj., too much, excessive.

ningit, **ningĕre**, **ninxit**, no sup., v. intr., impers., it snows (p. 161, 1).

nĭsi, conj., if not, unless (p. 300, 1).

nītor, **nītī**, **nīsus** (or **nixus**) **sum**, v. intr. dep., lean upon, strive, endeavor.

nix, **nĭvis**, F., snow.

nō-bĭl-is, **-ĕ**, adj., noble, noted, famous.

nō-bĭlĭt-as, **-ātis**, F., nobility.

nŏ-cen-s, **-tis**, (pres. part. of **noceo** used as an) adj., guilty; used as a noun, a criminal.

nŏcĕo, **nŏcēre**, **nŏcŭī**, **nŏcĭtum**, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), hurt, harm, injure.

noctu, (an old abl. of obsolete **noctus**, **-ūs**; used as an) adv., by night, at night.

nocturn-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj., of or belonging to night, nocturnal.

nōd-us, **-ī**, M., knot.

nōlo, **nolle**, **nōlŭī**, no sup.; v. irreg., be unwilling, not to wish (p. 147).

nōm-en, **-ĭnis**, N., name; **nomen Romanum**, Roman people (N. H. 7; see **cognomen** for **praenomen**, **nomen**, **agnomen**).

nōmĭnātim, adv., by name; **nominatim evocare**, to summon expressly (C. v, 4).

nōmĭn-o, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., name.

nōn, adv., not; usually preceding the word with which it should be construed. Before a negative word an indefinite affirmative is produced as, **non nemo**, somebody; **non nunquam**, sometimes; **non nihil**, something; after a negative, a general affirmative is formed, as **nemo**

non, everybody; **nunquam non**, every time; **nihil non**, everything.

Non-ae, **-ārum**, pl. F., the nones; the fifth day of each month in the year except March, May, July, October, in which it was the seventh. It was so called because it was the ninth (**nonus**) day from the Ides (**idus**), which fell on the thirteenth, except in the four months before named, when it fell on the fifteenth.

nōnāginta, num. adj., ninety.

nondum, adv., not yet.

nonne, adv., interrog. particle (p. 28, 3).

nonnihil, indecl. neuter pro., something; often used adverbially: to some extent, somewhat; **nonnihil temporis**, some time.

nonnull-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj., some; generally in pl., **nonnull-ī**, **-ae**, **-ă**, several.

nonnunquam, adv., sometimes.

nōn-us, **-ă**, **-um**, num. ord. adj., ninth.

nos, pl. of **ego** (p. 104, 1).

nosco, **noscĕre**, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, v. tr., become acquainted with, learn; pf. **nōvī**, I know (p. 145).

nost-er, **-ră**, **-rum**, poss. adj. pro., our, ours, our own; pl., **nostrī**, our troops, our men (**mīlites** understood).

nostrūm or **nostrī**, gen. pl. of **ego** (p. 104, 2, note).

no-tĭtĭ-a, **-ae**, F., fame, knowledge.

nŏt-o, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., mark, disregard.

nōt-us, **-ă**, **-um**, (perf. part. pass. of **nosco** used as an) adj., known, well known.

nŏvem, num. adj., nine.

nōv-i, **-isse**, v. defect., act, know (p. 264).

nŏvĭt-ās, **-ātis**, F., novelty, strangeness.

nŏv-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj., new, fresh, recent, strange (no comp.; sup. **novissimus**); **agmen novissimum**, the rear; **agmen primum**, the van; **res novae**, a change in affairs, a revolution.

nox, **noctis**, F., night, darkness; **prima nocte**, at nightfall; **media nocte**, at midnight; **multa de nocte**, late at night; **obducta nocte**, under cover of night (N. H. 5); **adversa nocte**, in the face of night (C. iv, 28).

nox-a, **-ae**, F., crime, offence.

noxī-a, **-ae**, F., hurt, harm.

noxī-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj., hurtful, harmful.

nūb-es, **-is**, F., a cloud.

nūbo, **nūbĕre**, **nupsī**, **nuptum**, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), properly to veil oneself for a husband, hence said of a woman, to marry; a man was said **uxorem ducere** or **uxorem in matrimonium ducere**.

nūd-o, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., strip, expose.

nūd-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj., bare, destitute of (with abl., p. 64, 4).

null-us, **-ă**, **-um**, adj. (for declension, p. 44, foot note), none, no one.

num, interrog. particle (p. 29).

Nūm-a, **-ae**, M., Numa, *i.e.*, Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nūm-en, **-ĭnis**, N., will, power, divinity.

nŭmĕr-us, **-ī**, M., number.

Nŭmĭd-ae, **-ārum**, pl. M., the Numidians, a people inhabiting Numidia in Northern Africa, west of Carthage, corresponding to *Algeria*.

numm-us, **-ī**, M., money; **pro nummo uti**, to use as money (C. v, 12).

nunquam, adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nuntĭ-o, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., announce, tell, narrate; **nuntiatur**, word is brought; **nuntiatum est**, word was brought.

nuntĭ-us, **-ī**, M., messenger, tidings.

nūper, adv., lately, recently.

nuptĭ-ae, **-ārum**, pl. F., wedding, marriage [p. 239, 2, (4)].

nusquam, adv., nowhere, in no place.

nūt-us, **-ūs**, M., nod, command; **ad nutum**, at a nod or signal (C. iv, 23).

O.

Ō, interj., o! oh!

ŏb, prep. (with acc.), on account of, for; **ob eam rem**, for this reason; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, accordingly.

ob-dūco, **-dūcĕre**, **-duxī**, **-ductum**, v. tr., cover over, cloud; **nocte obducta**, under cover of night (N. H. 5).

ob-ēdĭo, **-ēdīre**, **-ēdīvī**, **-ēdītum**, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note); obey, listen to.

ŏb-ĕo, **-īre**, **-īvī** (or **ĭī**), **-ĭtum**, v. tr., go towards; **mortem obire**, to meet

death; **officia obire**, to attend to one's duties.

ob-īcĭo, -īcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., thrust or put in the way of, place in front of; **alicui se obicere**, to meet one (N. H. 5); **visus objecto**, the sight meeting their gaze (N. H. 5).

ob-iectus, -iectā, -iectum, (perf. part. pass. of **obicio** used as an) adj., opposite.

ob-ĭtus, -ĭtūs, M., death.

oblīque, adv., obliquely, in a slanting direction.

oblīt-us, -a, -um, perf. part. of deponent, **obliviscor**.

ob-līviscor, -līvīsci, -lītus sum, v. dep. (with genitive, p. 145); forget.

ob-sĕcr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., beseech, supplicate.

ob-serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., watch, observe, regard, obey.

ob-ses, -sĭdis, M. or F. a hostage; **obsidum loco**, as hostages (C. v, 5).

ob-sessī-o, -ōnis, F., siege, blockade.

ob-sīdĕo, -sīdēre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. tr., besiege, blockade.

ob-sīdī-o, -ōnis, F., siege, blockade.

ob-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, -stĭtum, v. intr., stand against, resist, oppose, withstand.

ob-sōnī-um, -ī, N., victuals, food.

obstĭnātē, adv., firmly, stubbornly.

ob-sto, -stāre, -stĭtī, no sup. (with dat., p. 278, 7); stand against, resist, oppose.

ob-tempĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, 3), comply with, obey, conform to.

ob-test-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., implore, adjure.

ob-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum, v. tr., hold, possess, occupy.

obtrectātī-o, -ōnis, F., detraction, disparagement.

ob-trect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., draw in different directions, oppose; **inter se obtrectare**, to be opposed to each other (N. A. 1).

obvĭam, adv., in the way, towards; **obviam ire**, or **obviam venire ei**, to meet him (N. H. 4).

occāsī-o, -ōnis, F., an opportunity.

occās-us, -ūs, M., setting; **occasus solis**, sunset, west (C. iv, 28).

oc-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdī, -cāsum, v. intr., fall, be killed; **occĭdens sol**, sunset, west (C. v, 13).

oc-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdi, -cīsum, v. tr., kill.

occult-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., cover, hide, conceal.

oc-cult-us, -ă, -um, adj., hidden, concealed.

occŭpāt-us, -ă, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **occupo** used as an) adj., busied with; **occupatus in munitione castrorum**, busied with the fortifying of the camp (C. v, 15).

occŭpātī-o, -ōnis, F., being busied with, business affairs; **occupationes reipublicae**, state affairs (C. iv, 16); **has tantularum rerum occupationes**, business consisting of such trifles (C. iv, 22).

oc-cŭp-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., take, seize.

oc-curro, -currĕre, -currī, -cursum, v. tr. (with dat.), run to meet, meet, oppose.

Ōcĕăn-us, -ī, M., the ocean; the German Ocean (C. iv, 10).

ōcĭ-or, -us, adj. (comparative without positive); sup. **ocissĭmus**, swifter.

octāv-us, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., eighth.

octingent-ī, -ae, -ă, card. num. adj., eight hundred.

octō, card. num. adj., eight.

octodĕcim, card. num. adj., eighteen.

octoginta, card. num. adj., eighty.

ŏcŭl-us, -ī, M., eye.

ōd-ī, -isse, v. tr. defect., hate (p. 145).

ōdī-um, -ī, N., hatred; **odio** (dat.) **esse homini**, to be hated by a man (p. 279, 12).

of-fendo, -fendĕre, -fendī, -fensum, v. tr., strike against, harm, hurt.

of-fĕro, -ferre, obtŭli, oblātum, v. tr., bring before, present, offer; **se obtulit hostibus**, he faced the enemy (C. iv, 12).

of-fĭcī-um, -ī, N., duty, allegiance; **officium praestare**, to do one's duty; **in officio esse**, to be loyal (C. v, 3); **in officio manere**, to remain loyal (C. v, 4); **in officio continere**, to keep him loyal, or in service (C. v, 7).

ŏlĕo, ŏlēre, ŏlŭī, no sup., v. tr., smack, smell of.

ōlim, adv., at some time, hereafter, formerly.

Ŏlymp-us, -ī, M., Olympus, a mountain in Greece, the fabled home of the gods.

ō-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., let go, throw away, neglect; ut omittam Philippum, not to mention Philip (N. H. 2).

omnīno, adv., in all, altogether, in general; after negatives, at all; nihil omnino, nothing at all; with numerals, in all; decem omnino, ten in all.

omn-is, -ĕ, adj., all, the whole; omnes ad unum, all to a man; maritima omnis, wholly maritime, or on the sea (C. v, 14).

ŏnĕrārī-us, -ă, -um, adj., of burden; navis oneraria, a transport (C. iv, 22, 25).

ŏnĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., load.

ŏn-us, -ĕris, N., load, burden.

ŏpĕr-a, -ae, F., toil, aid; dare operam, to take pains (N. T. 7; C. v, 7); meā operā, by my aid.

ŏpĕr-īo, -īre, -ūī, -tum, v. tr., cover; summas (amphoras) operit, he covers the tops (of the jars) (N. H. 9).

ŏpīnī-o, -ōnis, F., belief, notion; opinio timoris, the impression of fear; praeter opinionem, contrary to expectation; celerius omni opinione, sooner than any one expected; opinio populi Romani, the reputation of the Roman people (C. iv, 16); ut fert opinio illorum, according to their ideas (C. v, 13).

ŏport-et, -ere, -ŭit, v. intr. impers. (p. 162, 4); it is necessary, it behoves.

oppīdān-us, -ă, -um, adj., of a town; pl., oppīdān-ī, -ōrum, town's people, inhabitants of a town.

oppīd-um, -ī, N., town.

op-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., place against, oppose, withstand.

opportūnē, adv., favorably, suitably.

opportūnĭt-as, -ātis, F., fitness, advantage.

opportūn-us, -ă, -um, adj., fit, suitable, advantageous.

op-prĭmo, -prĭmĕre, -pressī, pressum, v. tr., burden, crush, destroy.

op-pugnātī-o, -ōnis, F., assault, attack.

op-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., storm, attack.

(ops), nom. wanting; gen., ŏpis (p. 240, (1), F., might, power, help; pl., opes, wealth, resources; domesticae opes, his own resources (N. H. 10).

optĭme: see bĕne.

optĭmus: see bonus.

ŏp-us, -ĕris, N., work, labor, magno opere or magnopere, greatly; quanto opere, how greatly; tanto opere or tantopere, so much, so greatly; egregie et natura et opere munitus, splendidly fortified by both its natural position and its defences (C. v, 9).

ŏpus, indecl. neut., found only in the expression opus est, erat, etc., there is or was, etc., need, it is or was necessary (p. 283, 11).

ōr-a, -ae, F., coast; ora maritima, sea coast (C. iv, 20).

ōrātī-o, -ōnis, F., a speech; orationem percipere, to hear a speech (C. v, 1).

ōrāt-or, -ōris, M., speaker; modo oratoris, as an ambassador (C. iv, 27).

orb-is, -is, M., a circle; orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, *i.e.*, around the Mediterranean, the whole world to the early Romans; orbe facto, forming a circle; corresponding to our forming square to resist an attack (C. iv, 37).

orb-us, -ă, -um, adj., bereft, deprived of.

ordĭor, ordīrī, orsus sum, v. intr. dep., begin; ab initio ordiendum, we must begin with the beginning of his life (N. T. 1).

ord-o, -ĭnis, M., an arrangement; rank, line; ordines servare, to keep the ranks (C. iv, 26).

Ōrest-es, -ae or -is, M., Orestes, son of Agamemnon, who avenged his father's death by killing his mother Clytemnestra.

Orgĕtŏr-ix, -īgis, M., Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman.

ŏrĭen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of orior used as an) adj., rising; sol oriens, the rising sun, hence, the east (C. v, 13).

ŏr-ĭor, -īrī, -tus sum, v. intr. dep., rise, spring from; orta luce, at daybreak (C. v, 8); quibus orti ex civitatibus, and sprung from these states (C. v, 12).

ornāment-um, -ī, N., ornament.

ornāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., equipped, adorned, ornamented.

ornāt-us, -ūs, M., ornament.

orn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., adorn; divitiis ornare, to enrich (N. T. 2); elephantus ornatus, an elephant fully equipped (N. H. 3).

ōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., pray

for, beseech ; magnopere orant, they earnestly ask for (c. iv, 11).

ōs, ōris, N., mouth, face.

ŏs, ossis, N., bone.

os-tendo, -tendĕre, -tendī, -tensum (or tum), v. tr., show, display, declare.

ōtĭōs-us, -ă, -um, adj., at leisure.

ōtī-um, -ī, N., leisure, quiet.

ŏv-is, -is, F., a sheep.

ōv-um, -ī, N., egg.

P.

P=Publius, a Roman praenomen.

pābŭlātī-o, -ōnis, F., foraging, getting fodder.

pābŭlāt-or, -ōris, M., a forager.

pābŭl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., forage, seek forage.

pābŭl-um, -ī, N., fodder, forage.

pācā-tus, -tă, -tum, (perf. part. pass. of paco used as an) adj., peaceful, quiet.

pāc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., subdue, pacify.

pac-tum, -tī, N., agreement, bargain.

Păd-us, -ī, M., the Padus (now *Po*), the chief river of Italy.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

pāg-us, -ī, M., district, canton ; the word still exists in the French *pays*, as *Pays de Calais*.

pălam, adv., openly, publicly ; palam facere, to make it plain (N. H. 11).

pallĭd-us, -ă, -um, adj., pale.

palm-a, -ae, F., palm (of the hand), hand.

păl-ūs, -ūdis, F., marsh.

pālus, -ī, M., stake.

Pamphȳlī-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Pamphylia, a country of southern Asia Minor.

pando, pandĕre, pandī, pansum, v. tr., stretch, spread out.

pā-nis, -nis, F., bread.

pār, părĭs, adj., equal ; par est, it is fit, it is proper ; par proelium, a drawn battle (N T. 3) ; pari spatio, of the same extent (c. v, 13).

părā-tus, -tă, -tum, (perf. part. pass. of paro used as an) adj., prepared, ready.

parcē, adv., sparingly.

parc-o, -ĕre, -pĕpercī (or parsī), parcĭtum (or parsum), v. intr. (with dat., p. 105, 9), spare.

parc-us, -ă, -um, adj., sparing, thrifty, frugal.

părens, -tis, M. or F., a parent.

pāren-s, -tis, (pres. part. of pareo used as an) adj., obedient.

pār-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 105, 9), obey.

părĭ-o, -ĕre, -pĕpĕrī, partum or părĭtum, v. tr., bring forth, produce, obtain.

părĭ-es, -ĕtis, M., a partition wall of a house.

părĭter, adv., equally, evenly.

păr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., prepare, get ready, equip, procure.

par-s, -tis, F., part, district, region ; maximam partem, for the most part (c. iv, 1) ; unā ex parte, on one side (c. iv, 3) ; per omnes partes, in every direction (c. iv, 33) ; parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, after receiving a certain tributary from the Rhine (c. iv, 10) ; pars...pars, some... others (c. iv, 27).

partim, adv., partly ; partim... partim, partly... partly (c. v, 6).

part-ĭor, -īri, -ītus sum, v. tr. dep., divide.

părum, adv. (p. 77), too little, little ; (comp., minus ; sup., minime).

parvŭl-us, -ă, -um, adj., very little young ; ab parvulo, from boyhood.

parv-us, -ă, -um, adj., small, trifling ; (comp., minor ; sup., minimus).

pass-er, -ĕris, M., a sparrow.

passim, adv., in every direction.

pass-us, -us, M., a step, pace. As a measure of distance two paces, reckoned from the heel to the same heel, like our two military steps, or = five Roman pedes (see pes), about 4 ft. 10¼ in. English measure ; mille passus = 1616 yards, or 144 yards short of the English mile.

past-or, -ōris, M., shepherd.

pătĕ-făcĭo, -făcĕre, -fēcī, -factum, v. tr., open ; pass., patefĭo, fĭĕrī, factus sum.

păten-s, -tis, adj., open.

păt-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, no sup., v. intr., be open, stand open, extend.

păt-er, -ris, M., father ; pl. patres, fathers, senate ; pater familias or familiae, father of a family.

pătĭenter, adv., patiently.

pătĭentī-a, -ae, F., endurance, forbearance.

pătĭor, -pătī, -passus sum, v. tr. dep., allow, suffer, bear ; longius bar-

baros progredi non pati, to prevent the barbarians from advancing any farther (N. T. 3).

pătrĭ-a, -ae, F., fatherland, native land; **patriā pellere**, to banish (N. A. 1).

pătrĭcĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., patrician, noble.

pătrĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., paternal.

paucĭt-as, -ātis, F., fewness, smallness.

pauc-us, -ă, -um, adj., some, few (generally in pl.).

paulātim, adj., gradually.

paulisper, adv., for a short time.

paulo, adv. (abl. of **paulus**), by a little, just a little.

paulŭlum, adv., a little, gradually.

paulum, adv., a little.

paul-us, -ă, -um, adj., little.

Paulus: see **Aemilius**.

pau-per, -pĕris, adj., poor (comp. **pauperior**, sup. **pauperrimus**).

paupert-as, -ātis, F., poverty.

Pausānĭ-as, -ae, M., Pausanias, a Spartan general who commanded the Greeks at Plataeae, 479 B.C.

păv-or, -ōris, M., fear.

pax, pācis, F., peace; **pace tuā**, with your permission; **pace uti**, to remain quiet.

pecc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., do wrong, sin.

pect-us, -ŏris, N., breast.

pĕcūnĭ-a, -ae, F., money, wealth.

pĕc-us, -ŏris, N., cattle (collectively).

pĕc-us, -ŭdis, F., cattle (singly).

pĕd-es, -ĭtis, M., a foot-soldier; pl., **pedites**, infantry.

pĕdest-er, -ris, -re, adj., on foot, on land; **copiae pedestres**, land forces; **copiae navales**, naval forces.

pĕdĭtāt-us, -ūs, M., infantry (collectively).

pēi-or, -us, adj. (comp. of **malus**; sup., **pessĭmus**), worse.

pell-is, -is, F., skin, hide; **pellibus vestiri**, to clothe themselves with skins (C. v, 14).

pello, pellĕre, pĕpŭli, pulsum, v. tr., expel, drive out; **patria pellere**, to exile (N. A. 1).

Pĕlŏponnēs-us, -ī, F., the Peloponnesus (now the *Morea*), the part of Greece south of the isthmus of Corinth.

pĕnāt-ēs, -ĭum, pl. M., the Penates, or household gods, presiding over the house and all that it contained.

pendĕo, pendēre, pĕpendī, no sup., v. intr., hang, be suspended.

pendo, pendĕre, pĕpendī, pensum, v. tr., weigh out (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal, hence), pay.

pĕnes, prep. (with acc.), in the power of, in the possession of.

pĕnĭtus, adv., within, entirely, completely.

per, prep. (with acc.), through, by means of, by; in composition, through, thoroughly, very.

pĕr-ăgo, -ăgĕre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., accomplish, bring to an end; **conventus peragere**, to hold assizes (C. v, 2).

per-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., take in, learn, perceive; **percipere orationem**, to hear a speech (C. v, 1).

per-contātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., enquiry.

per-curro, -currĕre, -currī (or -cŭcurrī), -cursum, v. intr., run through, run along.

per-disco, -discĕre, -dĭdĭcī, no sup., learn by heart.

per-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., complete, bring to a destination; **naves perduxit**, he brought the ships to their destination (C. v, 23).

pĕr-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or -ĭī), -ĭtum, v. intr., perish, die.

pĕr-ĕquĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ride, ride through.

pĕr-exīgŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., very small.

per-făcĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., very easy.

per-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum, v. tr., carry, bring, report; endure; **perlatum est**, word was brought; **fama perlata est**, the report was spread (N. T. 2); **poenam perferre**, to endure a penalty (N. A. 1); **consilio perlato**, after their plan was reported (C. iv, 21).

per-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., execute, accomplish, finish, complete.

perfĭdĭ-a, -ae, F., faithlessness, treachery.

perfŭg-a, -ae, M., a deserter, runaway.

per-fŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum, v. tr., flee, escape from, desert.

per-fŭgĭ-um, -ī, N., refuge.

per-fungor, -fungī, -functus sum, v. intr. (with abl. p. 283, 10), discharge fully, perform.

Pergămēn-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Pergamus, a city of Mysia.

pergo, pergĕre, perrexī, perrectum, v. intr., go on, advance.

Pĕrĭcl-ēs, -is, M., Pericles, an Athenian statesman.

pĕrīcŭlōs-us, -ă, -um, adj., dangerous.

pĕrīcŭl-um, -ī, N., danger; **facere periculum**, to run the risk (C. iv, 21).

pĕrīt-us, -ă, -um, adj., with gen., acquainted with; **rei militaris peritus**, skilled in military affairs.

per-lĕgo, -lĕgĕre, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., read through.

per-lŭo, -lŭĕre, -lŭī, -lūtum, v. tr., wash thoroughly, bathe.

per-magn-us, -ă, -um, adj., very great.

per-mănĕo, -mănēre, -mānsī, -mansum, v. intr., stay, remain, continue; **in eā sententiā permanere**, to adhere to that policy (C. iv, 21).

per-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. intr., entrust; **fortunas eius fidei permittere**, to entrust their fortunes to his protection (C. v, 3).

per-mŏvĕo, -mŏvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., rouse, disturb, alarm, induce.

per-mulceo, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, v. tr., calm thoroughly.

per-nīcī-es, -ēī, F., ruin, destruction.

per-pauc-ī, -ae, -ă, adj. pl., very few.

per-pĕtĭor, -pĕtī, -pessus sum, v. tr. dep., bear, endure.

per-pĕtŭo, adv., continually, constantly.

per-pĕtŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., constant, unbroken; **in perpetuum**, for ever (C. iv, 34).

per-rumpo, -rumpĕre, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break through.

Pers-ae, -ārum, pl. M., the Persians.

per-saepe, adv., very often.

per-scrībo, -scrībĕre, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr., write a report in full, give a full account of.

per-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus sum, v. tr. dep., follow up, pursue, avenge.

Pers-ēs, -ae, M., a Persian.

per-sĕvēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., persist in, persevere.

Persĭc-us, -a, -um, adj., Persian.

Pers-is, -ĭdis, F., Persia.

per-solvo, -solvĕre, -solvī, -sŏlūtum, v. tr., pay in full.

per-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., see, observe, reconnoitre; **coram perspicit**, he sees in person (C. v, 11).

per-suādĕo, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, foot note); persuade, convince, induce; **mihi persuadetur**, I am persuaded (p. 164, 1).

per-terr-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., greatly alarm, frighten, terrify.

per-tĭnācī-a, -ae, F., obstinacy.

per-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, no sup., v. intr., tend, extend; **ad irridendum eum pertinere**, to tend to ridicule him (N. H. 11); **eodem illo pertinere**, to have that same object (C. iv, 11); **hoc pertinet**, this side extends (C. v, 13).

per-turbātĭō, -ōnis, F., confusion.

per-turb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., disturb greatly, agitate.

per-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., reach, arrive at.

per-verto, -vertĕre, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., overthrow.

pes, pĕdis, M., foot; **pedem referre**, to retreat (C. iv, 25); as a measure of length = 11.64 in.; 5 Roman **pedes** = **passus**. (See **passus**.)

pest-is, -is, F., destruction, pest.

pĕto, pĕtĕre, pĕtīvī, pĕtītum, v. tr., make for, aim at, attack, try to reach; ask, seek.

phălan-x, -gis, F., a band of soldiers in solid column.

Phălērĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Phalērum, the oldest harbor of Athens, connected with the city by long walls.

Phĭlipp-us, -ī, M., Philip, called Philip V, King of Macedon. He reigned 220 B.C. to 179 B.C. In 215 B.C. he formed an alliance with Hannibal, but the Romans did not prosecute the war against him till 200 B.C., *i.e.*, two years after the battle of Zama. When they had conquered Carthage, they began a war with Philip, which lasted from 200 B.C. to 197 B.C., when he was defeated at Cynoscephalae by Flamininus.

phĭlŏsŏphĭ-a, -ae, F. philosophy.

phĭlŏsŏph-us, -ī, M., philosopher.

pĭĕt-as, -ātis, F., duty to the gods, to one's country, or to one's parents; hence, piety, patriotism or filial affection.

pĭget, pĭgĕre, pĭgŭit, pĭgĭtum est, v. tr. impers. (p. 281, 13), it vexes, troubles; **me huius stultitiae piget,** I am vexed at this man's folly.

pīl-um, -ī, N., pike, javelin.

pingu-is, -ĕ, adj., fat.

pinn-a, -ae, F., feather.

Pīrae-us, -i, M., the Piraeus (now *Porto Dracone*, or *Porto Leone*), the port of Athens, about five miles from the city, with which it was connected by the "Long Walls."

Pīrust-ae, -ārum, M. pl., the Pirustae, a tribe of Macedonia, on the southern border of Illyricum, in what is now the modern *Herzegovina*.

Pīs-o, -ōnis, M., Piso, an Aquitanian noble (C. v, 12).

pisc-is, -is, F., fish.

pix, pĭcis, F., pitch.

plăc-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. intr., please; often used impers., **plăcet mihi,** I am pleased, I vote yea; **non mihi placet,** I vote nay; **placebat,** supply **eis,** they decided (N. T. 3).

plăcĭdē, adv., quietly, calmly.

plāc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., appease.

plāg-a, -ae, F., region, district; pl., **plagae,** a net.

plānē, adv., clearly, entirely.

plānĭtī-ēs, -ēī, F., plain, level ground.

plān-us, -ă, -um, adj., flat, level.

Plătae-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Plataeae (now *Palaeo Castro*), a city of Boeotia, near which the Greeks defeated the Persians in 479 B.C.

Plāt-o, -ōnis, M., one of the greatest of Greek philosophers (B.C. 429 to B.C. 347).

plēbi-scīt-um, -ī, N., a decree of the people; **scisco,** approve.

plebs, plēbis (plēbēi or plēbī), F., the common people, the commons.

plēnē, adv., fully, completely.

plēn-us, -ă, -um, adj., full (with genitive, p. 281, 9).

plērīque, plēraeque, plērăque, pl. adj., most, several; **interiores plerique,** most of the inland people (C. v, 14).

plērumque, adv., mostly, generally, usually.

plērusque, plērăque, plērumque, adj., most; generally **plērīque.**

plumb-um, -ī, N., lead; **album plumbum,** tin (C. v, 12).

plūrēs: see **multus** (p. 57, 4).

plūrĭmum, adv. (superl. of **multum,** p. 77. 6); **longe plurimum valet,** is by far the most powerful (C. v, 3).

plūrĭm-us, -ă, -um, adj., superl. of **multus** (p. 57, 4).

plus, adj., comp. of **multus** (p. 57, 4).

pōcŭl-um, -ī, N., drinking cup.

poen-a, -ae, F., compensation, punishment, penalty; **poenas dare, poenas pendĕre, poenas persolvere,** to pay the penalty, to be punished; **poenas sūmĕre,** to exact a penalty, to punish; **poenam perferre,** to endure the penalty (N. A. 1).

Poen-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Poeni or Carthaginians.

poenĭt-et, -ēre, -ŭit, no sup., v. tr. impers., it repents; **me facti poenitet,** I repent of the deed (p. 165, 1).

pŏēt-a, -ae, M., poet.

pollĭc-ĕor, -ērī, -ĭtus sum, v. tr. dep., promise (p. 110).

Pŏlўbĭ-us, -ī, M., Polybius, a Greek historian who lived 220 B.C. to 122 B.C.

Pompēi-us, -ī, M., Pompey; Cnēius Pompēius Magnus, a Roman general, born 106 B.C., consul 70 B.C., 55 and 52, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, 48 B.C., and afterwards assassinated in Egypt.

pōm-um, -ī, N., an apple.

pond-us, -ĕris, N., weight.

pōno, pōnĕre, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum, v. tr., place, put, lay down; **castra ponere,** to pitch a camp.

pon-s, pontis, M., a bridge; **pontem facere,** to build a bridge (N. T. 5); **pontem dissolvere** (N. T. 5) or **pontem rescindere** (C. iv, 19), to destroy a bridge

pontĭ-fex, -fĭcis, M., high priest, pontiff.

Pont-us, -ī, M., Pontus (on the Euxine or *Black Sea*) included Pontus Proper, Cappadocia and Bithynia.

pŏpŭlātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., devastation, ravaging.

pŏpŭl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., devastate, lay waste.

pŏpŭl-us, -ī, M., people; pl., **populī,** nations.

port-a, -ae, F., gate, door.

port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry.

portorĭ-um, -ī, N., toll, tax, duty.

port-us, -ūs, M., port, harbor.

posco, poscĕre, pŏposcī, no sup., v. tr., beg, demand, ask.

possessĭ-o, -ōnis, F., possession.

possĭd-ĕo, -ēre, possēdī, possessum, v. tr., hold, own.

possĭd-o, -ĕre, possēdī, possessum, v. tr., win, get possession of.

possum, posse, pŏtŭī, no sup.; v. irreg. (p. 146), be able, can; **multum posse**, to have great power; **plurimum posse**, to have very great power.

post, adv., after, later; (often with the abl. of measure) **anno post**, a year afterwards; **paucis diebus post**, a few days afterwards (p. 82, 3).

post, prep. (with acc.), after; **post tergum**, in the rear; **post paucos annos**, after a few years (p. 82, 3); **post hominum memoriam**, within the memory of man (N. T. 5).

postĕā, adv., afterwards.

postĕāquam, conj., after that, after.

postĕr-us, -ă, -um, adj., the following, next; (comp., **posterior**; sup., **postremus**); pl., **poster-i, -ōrum**, descendants.

posthāc, adv., after this, hereafter, henceforth.

post-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., put after, esteem less.

postquam, adv., after that, after, when (p. 298, 2).

postrēmo, adv., at last, finally.

postrēm-us, -ă, -um, adj. (see **posterus**), last.

postrīdiē, adv., the next day; **postridie eius diei mane**, early next day (c. v, 10).

postŭlāt-um, -ī, N., demand.

postŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask, demand, request (p. 276, foot note).

pŏten-s, -tis, adj., powerful.

pŏtentī-a, -ae, F., power, might, influence.

pŏtest-as, -ātis, F., power, might, opportunity.

pŏt-ĭor, -īrī, -ĭtus sum, v. dep., get possession of, become master of, acquire (with abl. p. 283, 10, or with gen.).

pŏtissimum, adv., superl., chiefly, principally, especially.

pŏtĭus, adv., rather, preferably; superl. **potissimum**; no positive.

prae, prep. (with abl.), in comparison with, on account of.

prae-ăcūt-us, -ă, -um, adj., sharpened at the end, pointed.

praeb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., offer, show, furnish.

prae-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., go before, surpass.

prae-ceps, -cĭpĭtis, adj., headlong, steep, precipitous; **praecipites hostes agere**, to drive the enemy headlong (c. v, 17).

praecep-tor, -tōris, M., teacher.

praecep-tum, -tī, N., teaching, advice, order, command.

prae-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 3), order, direct.

prae-cĭpĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., rush headlong.

praecĭpŭē, adv., especially, particularly.

prae-cĭpŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., especial.

prae-clār-us, -ă, -um, adj., distinguished.

prae-clūdo, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., close up.

prae-co, -cōnis, M., a herald, crier.

prae-curro, -currĕre, -cŭcurrī, (or **-currī**), **-cursum**, v. intr., run before, outstrip.

praed-a, -ae, F., booty, plunder.

prae-dĭco, -dĭcāre, -dĭcāvī, -dĭcātum, v. tr., proclaim, boast.

prae-dīco, -dīcĕre, -dīxī, -dictum, v. tr., foretell.

praedĭt-us, -ă, -um, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4), endowed with.

praed-o, -ōnis, M., a robber; **maritimi praedones**, sea robbers, pirates (N. T. 2).

praed-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep. tr., plunder, pillage, obtain booty.

praefect-us, -ī, M., an officer, overseer.

prae-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum, v. tr., put before, prefer.

prae-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., put over, put in command of (p. 278, 6.).

prae-fīgo, -fīgĕre, -fīxī, -fixum, v. tr., fix or place in front of; **sudibus praefixis**, by driving stakes in front (c. v, 18).

praefixus: see **praefigo**.

praelium: see **proelium**.

prae-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send before, send forward.

praemĭ-um, -ī, N., reward.

praepăr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., prepare.

prae-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., set over, place in command of.

prae-rupt-us, -ă, -um, adj., steep, precipitous.

prae-scrībo, -scrībĕre, -scripsī, -scriptum, v. tr., order, direct, command.

prae-script-um, -ī, M., order, instruction.

praesen-s, -tis, adj., at hand, present.

praesentī-a, -ae, F., presence; **in praesentia,** for the time being, for the present (N. T. 8); **in praesentiarum (=in praesentia rerum),** for the present (N. H. 6).

praesertim, adv., especially.

praesĭdĭ-um, -ī, N., guard, defence, garrison; **praesidio navibus esse,** to guard the ships (C. v, 9).

prae-sto, -stāre, -stĭti, -stĭtum, stand before, show; perform, make good a promise (N. T. 10); **praestare ceteros imperatores,** to surpass the other commanders (N. H. 1); **officium praestare,** to fulfil a duty (C. iv, 25).

prae-sum, -esse, -fŭī, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 6), be over, have command of; **summae imperii praeesse,** to hold the supreme command (N. T. 4); **tantis rebus praeesse,** to have charge of such important matters (N. A. 3); **negotio praeesse,** to have charge of the matter (C. v, 2).

praeter, prep. (with acc.), beyond, except, contrary to.

praetĕrĕ-ā, adv., besides.

praetĕr-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or -ĭī), -ĭtum, v. tr., pass by, go by.

praetĕrĭ-tus, -tă, -tum, adj., past; **tempus praeteritum,** past time.

praeter-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., let pass, let slip.

praeterquam, adv., except, besides, beyond.

praeter-vĕhor, -vĕhī, -vectus sum, v. tr., be carried beyond, sail past, coast along.

prae-tor, -tōris, M., general, commander.

praetōrĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to the **praetor** or commander; **cohors praetoria,** the general's body guard; **porta praetoria,** the gate near the general's tent.

praetūr-a, -ae, F., the office of commander.

prae-vĭdĕo, -vĭdēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, v. tr., foresee; to take precautions against.

prāt-um, -ī, N., meadow.

prāv-us, -ă, -um, adj., crooked, ill-shaped (C. iv, 2).

prĕcī, prĕcem, prĕcĕ (no nom. or gen. sing.); pl. **preces, precum,** etc.; F., prayer, request (p. 240, (2)).

prĕ-hendo, -hendĕre, -hendī, -hensum, v. tr., seize, grasp, snatch.

prĕmo, prĕmĕre, pressī, pressum, v. tr., press, harass, crush.

prendo, prendĕre, prendī, prensum, v. tr.; see **prehendo.**

prĕtĭ-um, -ī, N., price, value; **impenso pretio,** at an extravagant price (C. iv, 2).

(prex, prĕcis), F., supposed form; see **preci.**

prīdiē, adv., the day before.

prīmo, adv., at first.

prīmum, adv., firstly, in the first place; **ubi primum,** as soon as; **quum primum,** as soon as possible; **cum (quum) primum,** as soon as (p. 298, 2).

prīm-us, -ă, -um, adj., sup. of the comp., **prior,** no positive (p. 59, 2;) **prima luce,** at daybreak; **prima nocte,** at nightfall; **primum agmen,** the vanguard; **in primis,** especially.

prin-ceps, -cĭpis, M., chief man, chief, prince.

princĭpāt-us, -ūs, M., chief authority, leadership.

princĭpĭ-um, -ī, N., beginning.

prĭor, prĭus, adj., comp. (no positive; sup. **primus**; p. 59, 2); former, previous.

pristĭn-us, -ă, -um, adj., old, former.

prĭus, adv., before, sooner, earlier; followed by **quam,** and often written with it as one word, **priusquam,** before, before that.

prĭusquam, conj., before, sooner than (p. 299, 8).

prīvātim, adv., privately, individually.

prīvāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., private.

prīv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., deprive.

prō, prep. (with abl.), in front of, before; for, in proportion to; **pro**

merito eius, as he deserved (C. v, 4); **pro tempore et pro re**, suited to the time and the conditions (C. v, 8); **pro sano**, as a sane man (C. v, 7); **pro nummo**, as money (C. v, 12); **pro sua virtute**, in consideration of his excellence.

prŏbĭt-as, -ātis, F., uprightness.

prŏb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., justify (something to another), approve of; **minus probatus**, less acceptable, *i.e.*, than he ought to be; hence, displeasing (N. T. 1).

prŏb-us, -ă, -um, adj., good.

prō-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., advance, succeed.

prō-cēr-us, -ă, -um, adj., tall, high.

pro-clām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., shout aloud.

pro-consul, -consŭlis, M., proconsul; one who having been consul has the government of a province entrusted to him.

prŏcul, adv., afar, at a distance.

prō-cumbo, -cumbĕre, -cŭbŭī, cŭbĭtum, v. intr., fall, sink down.

prō-cūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., have charge of, attend to.

prō-curro, -currĕre, -cŭcurri (or **-curri**), **-cursum**, v. intr., rush forward, hasten forward.

prō-d-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (**-iī**), **ītum**, v. intr., go forward, advance; **in contionem populi prodire**, to appear before the assembly of the people (N. T. 1).

prōdesse: see **prōsum**.

prōdĭtĭ-o, -ōnis, F., treachery, betraying.

prōdĭt-or, -ōris, M., traitor, betrayer.

prō-do, -dĕre, -dĭdi, dĭtum, v. tr., betray, surrender; **memoriae prodere**, hand down to memory, hand down by tradition (N. T. 10); **memoriā proditum**, handed down by tradition (C. v. 12).

prō-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead forward, lead forth; **productus ad proelium**, enticed to battle (N. H. 5).

proelĭ-or, -ārī, ātus sum, v. intr., fight.

proelĭ-um, -ī, N., battle,; **proelium facere**, to fight a battle (N. T. 9).

prŏ-fānus, -ă, -um, adj., not sacred, profane.

prŏ-fectĭ-o, ōnis, F., a departure, setting out.

prŏfectō, adv., for a fact, indeed.

prō-fero, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum, v. tr., carry forward, bring forth.

prō-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., advance, effect, gain; **satis profectum arbitratus**, thinking that enough had been gained (C. iv, 19).

prŏ-fĭciscor, -fĭcisci, -fectus sum, v. intr. dep., set out, depart.

prŏ-fĭtĕor, -fĭtērī, -fessus sum, v. tr. dep., profess, declare.

prō-flĭg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., strike to the ground; vanquish, overthrow.

prō-flŭo, -flŭĕre, -fluxī, -fluxum v. intr., flow forward.

prŏ-fŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum, v. intr., flee forward, escape.

prŏ-fŭg-us, -ī, M., deserter, exile.

prŏ-gnāt-us, -a, -um, adj., sprung from.

prō-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., advance, go forward.

prŏ-hĭbĕo, -hĭbēre, -hĭbŭī, hĭbĭtum, v. tr., hold, restrain, prevent.

prō-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw, throw away.

prō-inde, adv., henceforth, therefore.

prō-miss-us, -ă, -um, adj., long, flowing; **capillo sunt promisso**, they have long hair (C. v, 14).

prō-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., promise.

prō-mŏvĕo, -mŏvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., move forward.

prompt-us, -ă, -um, adj., ready.

prō-mulg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., announce, enact a law.

prōnē, adv., headlong, leaning forward.

prō-nuntĭ-o, -āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr., tell, announce, declare.

prŏ-pāg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., extend.

prŏ-pāg-o, -ĭnis, F., offspring, race.

prō-pătŭl-um, -ī, N., an open space in front of a temple or a house.

prŏpe, adv., near, nearly, almost; comp., **propius**; sup., **proxime**.

prō-pello, -pellĕre, -pŭlī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive away, put to flight.

prŏpĕre, adv., quickly, speedily, in haste.

prŏpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., hurry, hasten.

prŏpinquĭt-as, -ātis, F., nearness, vicinity, relationship.

prŏpinqu-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dative), come near, approach.

prŏpinqu-us, -ă, -um, adj., near, with dative (p. 277, 2); as a noun, **propinqu-us**, -ī, M., relation.

prŏpĭ-or, -us, adj., comparative of obsolete **propis**; sup. **proximus**; **nocte proxima**, last night.

prŏpĭus: see **prope**, and **propior**.

prō-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, v. tr., put forward, explain; **vexillum proponere**, to hoist the flag from the general's tent (**praetorium**) as a signal for beginning a battle.

prō-prae-tor, -tōris, M., the propraetor, a magistrate who having administered the praetorship for one year at Rome, was sent the following year to a province as a governor.

prŏprĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., one's own, particular, peculiar.

propter, prep. (with acc.), on account of, in consequence of.

proptĕrĕă, adv., for this reason, therefore; **propterea quod**, because.

prō-pugnācŭl-um, -ī, N., defence, protection.

prō-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fight.

prō-puls-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., drive off, ward off, repel.

prōr-a, -ae, F., prow.

prō-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus (or **sĕquūtus**) **sum**, v. tr., dep., follow after, follow, attend.

prō-spec-tus, -tūs, M., view, sight.

prōspĕr-us, -ă, -um, adj., fortunate.

prō-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., look forward, take care.

prō-sum, **prō-d-esse**, **prō-fŭī**, v. intr., (p. 261), be of benefit to, benefit (with dative, p. 279, 9).

prōtĭnus, adv., at once, forthwith, immediately; **ex hac fuga protinus**, immediately after this defeat (C. v, 17).

prō-vĕho, -vĕhĕre, -vexī, -vectum, v. tr., carry forward; in pass., sail along, coast.

prō-vĭdĕo, -vīdēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, v. tr., foresee, take care.

prō-vĭd-us, -ă, -um, adj., foreseeing.

prōvincĭ-a, -ae, F., province.

prō-vŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., challenge, summon.

proxĭme: see **prope**.

proxĭmus: see **propior**.

prūden-s, -tis, adj., prudent, foreseeing.

prūdentĭ-a, -ae, F., foresight, shrewdness.

Prūsĭ-as, -ae, M., Prusias, king of Bithynia, in Asia Minor, who hospitably received Hannibal in his exile, but afterwards betrayed him.

publĭcē, adv., in the name of the state, as a state; **publice putant**, they, as a state, consider (C. iv, 3).

publĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., confiscate; **bona publicare**, to confiscate goods (N. H. 7).

publĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., public, common; **res publica**, the commonwealth (p. 238); **publico consilio**, by a public plan.

Publĭ-us, -ī, M., Publius; see **Rufus**, **Scipio**.

pŭd-et, -ēre, -ŭit (or -ĭtum est), v. imp., it causes shame (p. 165, 1).

pŭd-or, -ōris, M., shame.

pŭell-a, -ae, F., girl.

pŭ-er, -ĕrī, M., child, boy; **puer a ianua**, the porter (N. H. 12).

pŭĕrīl-is, -ĕ, adj., of a child or boy; **aetas puerilis**, the age of childhood or boyhood.

pŭĕrŭ-lus, -lī, M., a mere boy.

pug-na, -nae, F., fight, combat.

pug-no, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātum, v. intr., fight; **acriter pugnatum est**, a fierce battle was fought (C. iv, 26; p. 164, 2, note 2).

pul-cher, -chră, -chrum, adj., beautiful.

pulv-is, -ĕris, M., dust.

pūn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., punish.

pupp-is, -is, F., stern of a vessel.

purg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., clear, make clear, free from blame; **sui purgandi causā**, for the purpose of clearing themselves (C. iv, 13).

pŭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., think, fancy, consider.

Pydn-a, -ae, F., Pydna, a town of Macedonia, near the Thermaic Gulf, where Aemilius Paulus defeated Perseus, the last king of Macedonia, 168 B.C.

Pўlăd-ēs, -ae, M., Pylades, a Greek, friend of Orestes.

Pўrēnae-us, -ă, -um, adj., usually in the pl.; **Pyrenaei montes**, the Pyrenees.

Pyrrh-us, -ī, M., Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, who invaded Italy, but was finally defeated by the Romans and driven from Italy, 275 B.C.

Pȳthī-a, -ae, F., the Pythia, or priestess of Delphi. The Homeric name for Delphi was Pytho.

Q.

Q. = **Quintus** (which see).

quă, nom. sing. fem. or neut. pl. nom. or acc. of **quis** or **qui** (p. 129).

quā (abl. fem. of **qui**, supply **viā** or **parte**) adv., where, as far as.

quācumque, adv., in whatever way or direction, wherever.

quadrāgintā, num. card. adj., forty.

quadringēn-ī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., four hundred each.

quadringent-ī, -ae, -ă, card. num. adj., four hundred.

quaero, quaerĕre, quaesīvī, quaesītum, v. tr., seek, look for, ask, enquire.

quaestī-o, -ōnis, F., enquiry. investigation.

quaes-tor, -tōris, M., quaestor; the quaestors were officers who acted as government treasurers, received tribute and paid the soldiers.

quaest-us, -ūs, M., gain, profit.

quāl-is, -ĕ, adj., of what sort or kind.

quam, conj., than (after comparatives, p. 55, 5); with superlatives, with or without **possum** = as possible: **quam primum**, as soon as possible; **quam plurimi**, as many as possible; **quam maximi**, as large as possible; often joined with **prius, post**, as **prius-quam, postquam**.

quamdĭu, adv., as long as.

quamobrem, adv., for which reason, wherefore, why.

quamquam, conj., though, although, however, and yet (p. 196, 5).

quamvis, adv., though, although (p. 196, 5); **quamvis pauci**, no matter how few (p. 303, 3).

quando, interrog. adv., when?; rel. adv., when, whenever.

quanto (abl. of difference from **quantus**), adv., by how much; **quanto . . . tanto**, as . . . so; the . . . the (p. 195, 4).

quantum (acc. of **quantus**), adv., how much, how far, as far as.

quant-us, -ă, -um, adj., interrog. or rel., how great, how much, how large, as large as.

quantusvis, quantavis, quantumvis, adj., however great.

quare, interrog. and rel. adv., wherefore, why.

quar-tus, -ta, -tum, ord. num. adj., fourth.

quāsi, conj., as if.

quattŭor, card. num. adj., four.

quattŭordĕcim, card. num. adj., fourteen.

-que, conj., and; always appended to the word, which in construction belongs to it; generally to the first word of the clause or to the word it couples.

quemadmŏdum, adv., in which way, how.

quĕror, quĕrī, questus sum, v. tr. dep., complain, lament.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pro., who, which, what (p. 126); since he (p. 198, 4); so that he (p. 188, 4); **quī**, an old abl., wherewith (N. A. 3).

quicquam: see **quisquam** (p. 132, 3).

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pro., whoever, whatever (p. 126, 2).

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or **quĭddam**, indef. pro., a certain one; pl., some, certain.

quīdem, adv., indeed, at least; **ne . . . quidem**, not . . . even: the emphatic word is always placed between **ne** and **quidem**.

quī-es, -ētis, F., rest, repose, quiet.

quī-lĭbet, quae-lĭbet, quod-lĭbet, indef. rel., any one (p. 132).

quīn (old abl. **quī**, how and **ne**, not), conj., that not, but that, without; after words expressing doubt or suspicion, that (p. 188, 6); after words of preventing, etc., translated by *from* with verbals in -ing (p. 185, 2, note); **quin etiam** (c. iv, 2), nay even.

quī-nam, quae-nam, quod-nam, interrog. pro., who, pray?, who, then? (p. 129, 3, note).

quindĕcim, card. num. adj, fifteen.

quingent-ī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., five each, five a piece.

quinquaginta, card. num. adj., fifty.

quinque, card. num. adj., five.

quint-us, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., fifth.

Quint-us, -ī, M., Quintus; see **Atri-**

us, Fabius, Flaminius, Labeo, Laberius, Sabinus.

quippe, adv., surely, certainly; quippe qui, since he (p. 198, 4, note).

quis, quae or qua, quid or quod, indef. pro., anyone, any (p. 129, 1); interrog., who?

quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, interrog. pro., who, pray? (p. 129, 3, note).

quispĭam, quaepĭam, quodpĭam or quidpĭam, indef. pro., some, some one (p. 132).

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, indef. pro., any one (p. 132); neque quisquam, no-one (c. iv, 20); neque quicquam, and nothing (c. iv, 20).

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pro., each, every, every one; with superlatives in sing., all: optimus quisque, all the best.

quisquis, quaequae or quaqua, quidquid, quicquid or quodquod, indef. rel. pro., whoever, whatever.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, indef. pro., any one you please, any.

quo, adv., (1) rel. and interrog., whither; (2), indef. rel. after si or ne, to any place, to any point, any where.

quo (abl. of qui), final conj., used with comparatives followed by subjunctive; in order that (p. 183, 5).

quoad, adv. (with indic. in Caesar), as long as, until, till; quoad subsidio confisi equites praecipites hostes egerunt, till the cavalry trusting in the reserves drove, as they did, the enemy headlong (c. v, 17).

quod, conj., because, inasmuch as (with indicative or subjunctive, p. 297, 3); propterea quod, because; quod si, but if, if (p. 192, 1, note); the fact that (with the indicative, p. 293, 2).

quōmĭnus, conj., that not; often best translated by *from* after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc., with an English verbal noun in *-ing* (p. 185, 2).

quondam, adv., once, formerly, some day.

quŏnĭam, conj., since, seeing that, because (p. 198).

quŏque, adv. (following the emphatic word of a clause), also, too.

quot, indecl. adj., how many? often correlative of tot; tot...quot, as many as.

quŏtannis, adv., yearly, every year.

quŏtīdiān-us, -ă, -um, adj., daily, every day.

quŏtīdie, adv., every day (see cotidie).

quŏtĭes, adv., how often?; often correlative of toties: toties...quoties, as often as.

quŏtĭescumque, adv., how often soever, as often as.

quŏt-us, -ă, -um, adj., what number?; quota hora est?, what hour is it?

quum: see cum (p. 203).

R.

rād-ix, -īcis, F., root; montis radices, the foot of a mountain.

rādo, rādĕre, rāsī, rasum, v. tr., shave.

rā-mus, -mī, M., branch, bough.

rā-na, -nae, F., frog.

răpīdĭt-as, -ātis, F., swiftness, quickness.

răpĭd-us, -ă, -um, adj., swift, quick.

răpīn-a, -ae, F., booty, plunder, robbery.

răpĭo, răpĕre, răpŭī, raptum, v. tr., snatch, seize, hurry off.

rār-us, -ă, -um, adj., few, scattered, in small parties.

rătĭ-o, -ōnis, F., reckoning, calculation, account; rationem inire, to form a plan (N. H. 10); ratio atque usus belli, the theory and practice of war=the systematic practice of war (c. iv, 1); equestris proelii ratio, the style of the cavalry battle (c. v, 16); ratio pontis, the plan of the bridge (c. iv, 17); rei militaris ratio, military science (c. iv, 23).

răt-is, -is, F., raft.

rā-tus, perf. part. of dep. reor, which see.

Raurăc-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Rauraci, a people of the Upper Rhine (near the modern *Bâsle*).

re, red, an inseparable particle used in composition, again, back.

rĕbellĭ-o, -ōnis, F., renewal of war, uprising; rebellione facta, by a renewal of the war (c. iv, 30).

rĕbell-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., renew the war.

rĕ-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., go back, withdraw.

rĕcen-s, -tis, adj., fresh, late, recent.

rĕ-cep-tus, -tūs, M., retreat; ex-

peditus receptus, a convenient retreat (C. iv, 33).

rĕ-cīpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., take back, recover, win; **in fidem recipere**, to take under one's protection (N. T. 8), or to receive as a pledge of faith (C. iv, 22); **se recipere**, to retreat (C. iv, 2); **se a fuga recipere**, to recover from the flight (C. iv, 27); **in deditionem recipere**, to admit to a surrender.

rĕ-cīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., read aloud.

rĕclīno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make to lean.

rĕcord-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., recall to mind.

rectē, adv., rightly.

rect-us, -a, -um, adj., straight, right.

rĕ-cūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., refuse, decline, deny; often followed by **quin** or **quominus** (p. 294, 6, 7).

rēd-a, -ae, F., a waggon (with four wheels).

red-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, v. tr., give back, restore, render; **ferociorem reddere civitatem**, to render the state more warlike (N. T. 2).

rĕd-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or **-ĭī**), **-ĭtum**, v. intr., go back, return; **pecunia quae ex metallis redibat**, the money which came in from the mines (N. T. 2).

rĕd-ĭgo, -ĭgĕre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., reduce, render; **multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt**, they reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength (C. iv, 3).

rĕd-ĭmo, -ĭmĕre, -ēmī, -emptum, v. tr., buy back, purchase.

rĕd-integr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., renew, revive.

rĕdĭ-tus, -tūs, M., return.

rĕ-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead back.

rĕ-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum, v. tr., bring, carry back; **gratias referre**, to return thanks; **gratiam referre**, to requite, to repay (N. T. 8); **ad suos referre**, to report to their people (C. iv, 9); **pedem referre**, to retreat (C. iv, 25).

rĕ-fert, rĕferre, rĕtŭlit, v. imper., it concerns, it is of importance (p. 166, 3).

rĕ-fĭcĭo, fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., repair, refit.

rĕ-fŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum, v. tr. and intr., flee back or away, retreat, escape.

rēgīn-a, -ae, F., queen.

rēgĭ-o, -ōnis, F., district, country; **regio est maritima omnis**, the district is wholly maritime (C. v, 14).

rēgĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., kingly, royal; **domus regia** (or **regia** alone), palace; **classiarii regii**, the marines of the king (*i.e.*, Xerxes: N. T. 3).

reg-no, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātum, v. tr. and intr., be king, reign, rule; **Xerxe regnante**, in the reign of Xerxes (N. T. 9).

reg-num, -nī, N., kingdom.

rĕgo, rĕgĕre, rexī, rectum, v. tr., rule.

rĕ-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum, v. dep. intr., retreat, withdraw.

rēgŭl-a, -ae, F., rule, line of conduct.

rē-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., hurl back, drive back, repulse; **tempestate reici**, to be driven back by the storm (C. v, 5).

rēlĭgĭ-o, -ōnis, F., religion, religious scruples; pl. **religiones**, rites of religion; **maiore religione**, with greater sanctity (N. T. 8); **religionibus impediri**, to be hampered by religious scruples (C. v, 6).

rēlĭquŭ-ae, -ārum, pl. F., remainder.

rĕ-linquo, -linquĕre, -līquī, -lictum, v. tr., leave, abandon, leave behind; **relinquebatur ut**, the only course left was that (C. v, 19).

rēlĭqu-us, -ă, -um, adj., remaining; **nihil reliqui est**, there is nothing left; **in reliquum tempus**, for all time to come.

rĕ-mănĕo, -mănēre, -mansi, mansum, v. intr., remain, await.

rēm-ex, -ĭgis, M., a rower.

rēm-ĭg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., row.

rĕmĭgr-o, -āre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., depart, return.

rĕ-mĭniscor, mĭniscī, no perf., v. dep. (with gen., p. 146, 7), remember, recall.

rĕ-miss-us, -ă, -um, adj., relaxed; **remissioribus frigoribus**, since the cold is less intense (C. v, 12).

rĕ-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send back.

rĕ-mollesco, -mollescĕre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., become soft, become weak.

rĕ-mōtus, -mōtă, -mōtum, adj., remote, far off.

rĕ-mŏvĕo, -mŏvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., remove, dismiss, get rid of.

rē-mus, -mī, M., oar.

Rēm-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Remi, a powerful people of Gaul, whose capital was Durocortōrum (now *Rheims*).

Rēm-us, -ī, M., Remus, brother of Romulus.

rĕ-nŏv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., renew.

rĕ-nuntĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring back word, report.

rĕor, rērī, rātus sum, v. dep., think.

rĕ-pello, -pellĕre, -pŭlī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive back, repulse.

rĕpente, adv., suddenly.

rĕpentīno, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.

rĕpentīn-us, -ă, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected, hasty.

rĕpĕr-īo, -īre, -ī (or **reppĕrī**), **-tum**, v. tr., discover, find, ascertain.

rĕ-pĕto, -pĕtĕre, -pĕtīvī (or **pĕtĭī**), **-pĕtītum**, v. tr., seek again, demand.

rēpo, rēpĕre, repsī, reptum, v. intr., creep.

rĕ-pōno, -pōnĕre, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum, v. tr., deposit; **in aerario reponere**, to deposit in the treasury (N. H. 7).

rĕ-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry back.

rĕ-prĕhendo, -prĕhendĕre, -prĕhendī, -prĕhensum, v. tr., blame, rebuke.

rĕ-pŭdĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., reject.

rĕ-pug-no, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātum, v. tr., oppose, resist.

rēs, rēī, F., matter, affair (the meaning will depend on the context); **res militaris**, military science; **res novae**, a change in government, a revolution; **res publica**, the state, commonwealth, politics; **res divina**, a sacred rite (N. H. 2); **res frumentaria**, supply of corn (C. iv, 7); **his rebus**, on these terms (C. iv, 28).

re-scindo, -scindĕre, -scīdī, -scissum, v. tr., cut down, destroy.

re-scisco, -sciscĕre, -scīvī (or **scīī**), **scītum**, v. tr., learn.

rĕserv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., keep, save, preserve.

rĕ-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, no sup., v. intr., resist, oppose, withstand (with dative, p. 278, 3); **nullo resistente**, without opposition (N. H. 5); **in itinere resistere**, to halt on the march (C. v, 11).

re-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., look back, regard.

re-spondĕo, -spondēre, -spondī, -sponsum, v. tr., reply, answer.

re-spons-um, -ī, N., answer, reply.

rēs-publĭcă, rēī-publĭcae, F. (for declension, p. 238), state, commonwealth: **rempublicam capessere**, to take part in the administration of public affairs (N. T. 1).

restat, restāre, no perf., no sup., impers., it remains (p. 182, 4).

re-stĭtŭo, -stĭtŭĕre, -stĭtŭī, -stĭtutum, v. tr., rebuild, restore.

rēte, rētis, N., net.

rĕ-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum, v. tr., restrain, detain, keep back.

rĕ-trăho, -trăhĕre, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., draw back, save, preserve.

retro, adv., back, backwards.

rē-us, -ī, M., a party to an action; hence, defendant, prisoner.

rĕ-verto, -vertĕre, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., turn back, return.

rĕvertor, revertī, reversus sum, v. intr., return.

rĕ-vŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call back, recall.

rex, rēgis, M., king. The term **rēges** was applied to the two highest magistrates of Carthage by the Romans. They were also called **Suffetes**, a word connected with the Hebrew Shophetim, "judges." According to Nepos, they were elected annually. In Hannibal's day, they seem to have held no military command, so his election to the office would withdraw him from the army (N. H. 7).

rhēd-a, same as **reda** (which see).

Rhēn-us, -ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhŏ-dăn-us, -ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhŏdĭ-ī, -ōrum, pl., M., the Rhodians.

Rhŏd-us, -ī, F., Rhodes, an island off the S.W. coast of Asia Minor.

rīdĕo, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, v. tr. and intr., laugh, laugh at.

rīp-a, -ae, F., a bank.

rīs-us, -ūs, M., laughter.

rīv-us, -ī, M., brook.

rōb-ur, -ŏris, N., oak, strength.

rōbust-us, -ă, -um, adj., strong, robust.

rŏg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask.

Rōm-a, -ae, F., Rome.

Rōmān-us, -ă, -um, adj., Roman.

Rōmān-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., Romans,

Rōmŭl-us, -ī, M., Romulus, first king of Rome, and founder of the city.

rŏs-a, -ae, F., rose.

ros-trum, -trī, N., beak; the beak of a vessel's prow, covered with bronze and used as a ram; pl. **rostr-a,** -ōrum, hustings.

rŏt-a, -ae, F., wheel.

rŭb-er, -ra, -rum, adj., red; **Mare Rubrum,** the Red Sea, which included not only the Red Sea proper, but also the Persian Gulf (N. H. 2).

rŭbĭcund-us, -ă, -um, adj., ruddy.

Rŭf-us, -ī, M., Rufus, a Roman agnomen; see **Minucius** (1).

rūm-or, -ōris, M., report; **rumoribus servire,** to be the slave of idle tales (C. iv, 5).

rŭo, rŭĕre, rŭī, rŭtum, v. intr., rush.

rūp-es, -is, F., rock, cliff.

rursum, adv., back again, anew.

rursus: see **rursum.**

rūs, rūris, N., country, as opposed to the town or city (**oppidum** or **urbs**); pl., **rura,** country places; **ruri** (locative), in the country; **rure,** from the country; **rūs** (acc.), to the country (p. 85, 3).

S.

Săbīn-us, -ī, M., Sabinus; Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. He was slain by the treachery of Ambiorix, B. C. 54.

săcell-um, -ī, N., a small temple, chapel, shrine.

săc-er, -ra, -rum, adj., holy, sacred; as a noun, **sacr-a,** -ōrum, sacred rites, sacrifice.

săcerdōs, -tis, M. or F., priest or priestess.

sacrāment-um, -ī, N., the military oath taken by a Roman soldier. The chief obligations were obedience to the commander, loyalty to the country, etc.

sacrārī-um, -ī, N., chapel, shrine.

sacrĭfĭcī-um, -ī, N., sacrifice.

sacrĭfĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., sacrifice.

saepe, adv., often; **minime saepe,** very seldom; comp. **saepius**; sup., **saepissime.**

saepĕnŭmĕrō, adv., frequently.

saev-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. intr., be cruel, rage, be furious.

saev-us, -ă, -um, adj., cruel, fierce.

săgitt-a, -ae, F., arrow.

săgittārī-us, -ī, M., archer.

Saguntīn-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the inhabitants of Saguntum.

Sagunt-um, -ī, N., or **Sagunt-us,** -ī, F., Saguntum or Saguntus (now *Murviedro*), a town on the east coast of Spain, besieged by Hannibal, B. C. 220.

Sălămīnĭ-us, -ă, -um, of or belonging to Salamis.

Sălăm-is, -ĭnis (Greek acc. **Sălămĭna**), F., Salamis, an island off the coast of Attica.

sal-tus, -tūs, M., wood, forest, wooded defile.

săl-um, -ī, N., surf (of the sea).

săl-us, -ūtis, F., safety, health.

sălūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., greet, salute.

sal-vus, -vă, -vum, adj., safe.

Săm-us, or **-os,** -ī, F., Samus or Samos, an island on the western coast of Asia Minor.

sanc-ĭo, -īre, **sanxī, sanctum,** v. tr., render sacred, ratify, confirm.

sanct-us, -ă, -um, adj. sacred, solemn.

sānē, adv., truly.

sangu-is, -ĭnis, M., blood.

sānĭt-as, -ātis, F., soundness of mind, good sense.

sān-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make sound, cure, remedy.

sān-us, -ă, -um, adj., sound, healthy; **pro sano facere,** to act as a sane man (C. v, 7).

săpĭen-s, -tis, adj., wise, judicious.

săpĭenter, adv., wisely.

săpĭentĭ-a, -ae, F., wisdom.

săpĭo, săpĕre, săpīvī (or **săpĭī**), no sup., v. tr. and intr., taste, be sensible, understand.

sarcĭn-a, -ae, F., the kit of a soldier; cf. **impedimenta,** the baggage of the army.

sarment-um, -ī, N., twig.

sătell-es, -ĭtis, M. or F., attendant, guard.

sătis, adv., enough; used as an indecl. neut. noun: **satis militum,** enough of soldiers (C. v, 2); or as adv. limiting an adj.: **satis magnus,** very large (C. v, 21).

sătis-făcĭo, -făcĕre, -fēcī, -factum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 5), satisfy; in pass., **satisflo**.

saucĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., wounded.

sax-um, -ī, N., a rock, stone.

scāl-a, -ae, F., ladder.

scando, scandĕre, scandī, scansum, v. tr., climb.

scăph-a, -ae, F., boat, skiff.

scĕlĕrāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., wicked.

scĕl-us, -ĕris, N., wickedness, sin.

schŏl-a, -ae, F., school.

scĭen-s, -tis, adj., knowing, skilful.

scĭentĭ-a, -ae, F., knowledge, skill.

scīlĭcet, adv., evidently, certainly, forsooth.

scindo, scindĕre, scĭdī, scissum, v. tr., cut, tear, destroy.

scĭo, scīre, scīvī, scītum, v. tr., know.

Scīpĭ-o, -ōnis, M., Scipio, the *cognomen* of two remarkable men in Roman history: (1) Publius Cornelius Scipio, surnamed Africanus, who defeated Hannibal at Zama, 202 B.C. (2) Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus, called Africanus Minor, who took Carthage and razed it to the ground, B. C. 146.

scīt-um, -ī, N., an enactment, vote, decision.

scrīb-a, -ae, M., a writer, clerk.

scrībo, scrībĕre, scripsī, scriptum, v. tr., write, compose; **legem scribere**, draw up a law; **multimodis apud plerosque scriptum est**, various accounts have been given in several writers (N. T. 10).

scrip-tor, -tōris, M., writer.

scū-tum, -tī, N., a shield (of oblong shape, while the *clipeus* was round).

se: see **sui** (p. 105, 6).

sē-cerno, -cernĕre, -crēvī, -crētum, v. tr., separate.

sĕc-o, -āre, -ŭī, -tum, v. tr., cut.

sēcrētō, adv., apart, secretly.

sēcrē-tus, -tă, -tum, adj., separate, secret, private.

sĕcundum, prep. (with acc.), along, next to, according to.

sĕcund-us, -a, -um, adj., following, second, favorable.

sĕcūr-is, -is, F., axe.

sēcĭus, adv., (comp. of **secus**); **nihilo secius**, less by nothing, nevertheless.

sĕcus, adv., otherwise, differently.

sed, conj., but, yet.

sēdĕcim, card. num. adj., sixteen.

sĕdĕo, sĕdēre, sēdī, sessum, v. intr., sit, be encamped, settle.

sēd-es, -is, F., seat, abode, settlement.

sēd-ītĭ-o, -ōnis, F., dissension, discord.

sĕg-es, -ĕtis, F., crop, harvest.

Segontĭāc-ī, -ōrum, M., pl., the Segontiaci, a British tribe belonging to Hampshire.

Segŏvā-x, -cis, M., Segovax, one of the petty princes of Kent (C. v, 22).

sēgrĕg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., separate, remove.

sē-iungo, -iungĕre, -iunxi, -iunctum, v. tr., divide, separate.

sell-a, -ae, F., seat, chair.

semel, num. adv., once, once for all; **non semel**, not once, *i.e.* several times; **sĕmel atque iterum**, once and again, repeatedly.

sē-men, -mĭnis, N., seed.

sēment-is, -īs, F., a sowing.

sēmīt-a, -ae, F., a path.

semper, adv., always.

Semprŏnĭ-us, -ī, M., Sempronius; (1) Tiberius Sempronius Longus, consul 218 B.C., along with Scipio; (2) Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul 215-213, killed in Lucania in 212 B.C.

sĕnā-tor, -tōris, M., a senator.

sĕnā-tus, -tūs M., senate.

sĕnec-tus, -tūtis, F., old age.

sĕn-ex, -is, M., an old man (p. 46).

sēn-ī, -ae, -ă, distrib., num. adj., six each, six a piece.

sĕnĭ-or, -ōris (comp. of **senex**, p. 58, note), older.

sen-sus, -sūs, M., feeling, disposition.

sententĭ-a, -ae, F., opinion, decision.

sentĭo, sentīre, sensī, sensum, v. tr., think, know, observe.

sē-păr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., separate.

sĕpĕl-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, bury.

sēp-es, -is, F., hedge.

sēp-ĭo, -īre, sepsī, septum, v. tr., enclose, surround, encircle.

septem, card. num. adj., seven.

septentrĭōn-es, -um, the Seven Stars, the constellation of the Great Bear (Ursa Maior); hence, the North; **vergit**

ad septentriones, it faces the North, has a northern exposure (C. iv, 20).

septĭm-us, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., seventh.

septingent-ī, -ae, -ă, card. num. adj., seven hundred.

septŭaginta, card. num. adj., seventy.

sĕpulchr-um (or **sepulcrum**), -ī, N., tomb, sepulchre.

Sequăn-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Sequani, a people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Vesontio (*Besançon*).

sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtus (or **sĕquūtus**) **sum**, v. tr. dep., follow, pursue; **aestus commutātionem secutus**, following the turn of the tide (C. v, 8); **Caesaris fidem sequi**, to be loyal to Caesar (C. v, 20).

ser-mo, -mōnis, M., talk, language, speech, discourse; **sermo Latinus**, the Latin language.

sĕro, sĕrĕre, sēvī, sătum, v. tr., sow, plant.

sĕro, sĕrĕre, sĕrŭī, sertum, v. tr., sew, stitch together.

sērō, adv., late, too late.

serpen-s, -tis, F., snake, serpent.

servīl-is, -ĕ, adj., slavish, servile.

Servīl-ius, -ī, M., Servilius; Cneius Servilius Geminus who was consul 217 B.C., and slain at Cannae, 216 B.C.

serv-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. intr., (with dat. p. 278, 3), be a slave to, advance; **amicis famaeque serviens**, advancing the interests of his friends and his own reputation (N. T. 1); **rumoribus servire**, to be the slave of idle reports (C. iv, 5).

servī-tus, -tūtis, F., slavery, servitude.

serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., keep, save, preserve; **servare ordines** to keep the ranks (C. iv, 26).

serv-us, -ī, M., slave.

sese, reduplicated form of **se** (see **sui**).

sestertĭ-us, -ī, M., a sestertius; a coin worth originally 2½ **asses**, or about five cents.

sēvŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call aside.

seu : see **sīve**.

sexāgintā, card. num. adj., sixty.

sexcent-ī, -ae, -ă, card. num. adj., six hundred.

sī, conj., if, whether.

sic, adv., thus, in this manner.

siccĭt-as, -ātis, F., dryness, drought.

sicc-us, -ă, -um, adj., dry.

Sĭcĭlĭ-a, -ae, F., Sicily.

sīc-ut, adv., so as, just as, as, as if.

sīd-us, -ĕris, N., star, constellation.

signĭfĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., mean.

sign-um, -ī, N., sign, mark; **signa militaria**, military standards (C. iv, 15).

sĭlentĭ-um, -ī, N., silence.

Sĭlēn-us, -ī, M., Silenus, a Greek historian who was in the camp of Hannibal and wrote a history of his wars.

silv-a, -ae, F., wood, forest.

silvestr-is, -ĕ, adj., wooded.

sĭmĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., like, similar (with dat., p. 277, 2); comp. **similior**; sup., **simillimus** (p. 57, 2).

sĭmul, adv., at the same time; **simul atque (ac)**, as soon as (p. 298, 2).

sĭmŭlācr-um, -ī, N., image, statue.

sĭmŭlātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., pretence, feint.

sĭmŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., pretend (pretend that a thing is what it is not, **dissimulo**, pretend that a thing is not what it is).

sin, conj., but if.

sĭnĕ, prep. (with abl.), without.

singillātim, adv., one by one, singly.

singŭlār-is, -ĕ, adj., extraordinary.

singŭl i, -ae, -ă, num. distrib. adj., one by one, one each, one apiece.

sĭnis-ter, -tra, -trum, adj., left; **sub sinistra relictus**, behind him on the left (C. v, 8).

sĭno, sĭnĕre, sīvī, sĭtum, v. tr., allow, permit, let.

sīquĭdem, conj., if only.

sisto, sistĕre, stĭtī, stătum, v. intr., place.

sīve (**seu**), conj., or if; **sive ... sive**, or **seu ... seu**, whether ... or (p. 191, 5).

sŏc-er, -ĕrī, M., father-in-law.

sŏcĭĕt-as, -ātis, F., fellowship, league; **societatem facere**, to form a league (N. T. 8).

sŏcī-us, -ī, M., companion, ally, associate.

Sōcrăt-ēs, -is, M., Socrates, the father of Greek philosophy, and the instructor of Plato, Xenophon, Alcibiades and other noted Athenians (469-399 B. C.).

sōl, sōlis, M., sun; **sole oriente, solis ortu**, at sunrise; **sole occi-**

dente, solis occasu, at sunset; **ad solis occasum**, to the West.

sŏlĕo, sŏlēre, sŏlĭtus sum, v. intr., semi-dep., to be accustomed, be wont.

sōlĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., solitude, desert, loneliness.

sollĭcĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., stir up, incite.

sŏl-um, ī, N., ground,

sōlum, adv., alone, only, merely.

sōl-us, -a, um, adj. (for declension, p. 26, 1), alone, only, single.

solvo, solvĕre, solvī, sŏlūtum, v. tr., loose, unbind; **solvere epistolam**, to open a letter (N. H. 11); **solvere navem**, or **naves**, to set sail (C. iv, 22); **naves solverunt**, scil. **funes**, the ships set sail (C. iv, 28).

sŏnĭt-us, -ūs, M., a sound.

sŏr-or, -ōris, F., a sister.

sor-s, -tis, F., lot, fate.

Sosĭl-us, -ī, M., Sosilus, a Spartan who instructed Hannibal in Greek and also wrote a history of his campaigns.

spătĭ-um, -ī, N., space, time; **longo spatio**, for a long distance (C. iv, 10).

spĕcĭ-es, -ēī, F. (gen. and dat. pl. not found), show, appearance, form, view.

spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., look, observe; **ad orientem solem spectat**, it faces the East (C. v, 13).

spĕcŭlā-tor, -tōris, M., scout, spy.

spĕcŭlātorĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., scouting, spying; **navigia speculatoria**, despatch boats, rowed with a single bank of oars, generally ten in number, on each side, and employed for reconnoitering purposes.

spĕcŭl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., watch.

spēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. (with fut. inf., p. 110, 1), hope, expect.

spēs, spĕī (gen. and dat. pl., rare), F., hope; **in spem venire**, to have hopes, to entertain hopes.

spīrĭt-us, -ūs, M., breath, air, pride.

splend-ĕo, -ēre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., shine.

spŏlĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., strip, spoil, plunder.

spŏlĭ-um, -ī, N., spoil, booty.

sponte, of one's own accord; **suā sponte**, of one's own accord.

stăbĭlĭt-as, -ātis, F., firmness, steadiness.

stag-num, -nī, N., pool, pond.

stătim, adv., instantly, at once, immediately.

stătī-o, -ōnis, F., outpost, picket, guard; **in statione esse**, to be on guard (C. iv, 32) = **in stationibus esse** (C. v, 15); **in stationem succedere**, to take their place on guard (C. iv, 32).

stăt-ŭo, -ŭĕre, -ŭī, -ūtum, v. tr., place, determine, resolve.

stătūr-a, -ae, F., height, size.

stell-a, -ae, F., star.

stīpendĭ-um, -ī, N., pay, tax, tribute.

sto, stāre, stĕtī, stătum, v. intr., stand; cost (p. 150).

strĕpĭt-us, -ūs, M., noise, din.

strŭo, strŭĕre, struxī, structum, v. tr., build.

stŭd-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, no sup., v. intr. (with dat., p. 105, 9), be eager about, aim at; **novis rebus studēre**, to aim at a change in the government (C. iv, 15).

stŭdĭōsē, adv., eagerly, zealously.

stŭdĭ-um, -ī, N., zeal, devotion.

stultē, adv., foolishly.

stultĭtĭ-a, -ae, F., foolishness.

stult-us, -ă, -um, adj., foolish.

suādĕo, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, v. intr., recommend, advise (with dat., p. 105, 9).

sub, prep. (with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2), beneath, under, near, just before, at the foot of; **sub sinistra**, on the left (C. v, 8); **sub bruma**, at the time of the winter solstice (C. v, 13).

sub-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., draw up on shore; **navem subducere**, to beach a ship (C. v, 11).

subductĭ-o, -ōnis, F., drawing up on shore, beaching a vessel.

sŭb-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or **-ĭī**), **-ĭtum**, v. tr., come up, approach, enter; suffer.

sub-fŏdĭo, -fŏdĕre, -fōdī, -fossum, v. tr., stab from beneath.

sub-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēci, -iectum, v. tr., place near, expose; **hiemi navigationem subicere**, to expose his voyage to the winter, *i.e.*, to run the risk of sailing in winter (C. iv, 36).

sub-iect-us, -ă, -um (perf. part. pass. of **subicio**), adj., adjacent, near; **insulae subiectae**, islands lying near (C. v, 13).

sŭb-ĭgo, -ĭgĕre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., subdue, conquer.

sŭbĭtō, adv., suddenly, quickly.

sŭbĭt-us, -ā, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

sub-lĕv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., relieve.

sub-mĭnistr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., supply, provide.

sub-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send secretly.

sub-mŏvĕo, -mŏvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., dislodge, draw off.

sŭb-ŏles, -ŏlis, F., posterity, race.

sub-rŭo, -rŭĕre, -rŭī, -rŭtum, v. tr., undermine.

sub-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus (or **-sĕquūtus**) **sum,** v. tr. dep., follow closely, follow.

sub-sīdī-um, -ī, N., auxiliary troops; reserve, aid; **ad omnes casus subsidia componere,** to make provision for all emergencies (C. iv, 31).

sub-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, no sup., v. intr., halt, make a stand; **neque ancorae funēsque subsistunt,** neither the anchors nor the cables hold out (C. v, 10).

sub-sum, -esse, -fŭī, v. intr., be at the bottom; **dolus subest,** there is deceit at the bottom (N. T, 4); **aequinoctium subest,** the equinox is at hand (C. v, 23).

subter, prep. (with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2), below, beneath, underneath, close by.

sub-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, 3), come to one's aid, help.

suc-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., approach, take the place of; **ad alteram partem Ubii succedunt,** the Ubii border on them on one side (C. iv, 3); **ad stationem succedere,** to take their place on guard (C. iv, 32).

suc-cendo, -cendĕre, -cendī, -censum, v. tr., kindle.

suc-censĕo, -censēre, -censŭī, -censum, v. intr., be angry with (dat.).

suc-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdī, -cīsum, v. tr., cut down.

suc-cumbo, -cumbĕre, -cŭbŭī, -cŭbĭtum, v. intr. (with dat.), submit to, bow the knee to.

suc-curro, -currĕre, -currī, -cursum, v. intr., (with dat., p. 278, 3), help, aid.

sūd-es, -is, F., stake.

sūd-or, -ōris, M., sweat.

Suēb-ī, -ōrum, M., pl., the Suebi, a populous tribe of Germany consisting of several smaller tribes. The name still exists in the modern Suabia.

suf-fĕro, -ferre, sustŭlī, sublātum, v. tr., bear, endure.

suf-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., to elect in place of one deceased: **consul suffectus,** one elected consul to serve out the unexpired time of a consul who had died in office.

suf-frāgĭ-um, -ī, N., vote; **testularum suffragiis,** by the votes of the tiles, *i.e.*, by ostracism (N. T. 8).

Sugambr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Sugambri, a German tribe in Caesar's time residing in the mountainous district of Westphalia.

sŭī, reflex. pro., of himself, herself, itself (p. 105, 6).

Sull-a, -ae, M., **Sulla**; Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great dictator, supporter of the aristocracy, as his opponent Marius was of the democracy. He lived B.C. 138 to 78 B.C.

Sulm-o, -ōnis, M., Sulmo, a town N. E. of Rome, the birthplace of Ovid, the Latin poet.

Sulpĭcī-us, -ī, M., Sulpicius: (1) Publius Sulpicius Galba, consul 211 B.C., 200 B.C. (2) Sulpicius Blitho, a Roman historian (N. H. 13). (3) Publius Sulpicius Rufus, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul (C. iv, 22).

sum, esse, fŭī, v. intr., (p. 261), be.

summ-a, -ae, F., total, whole; general administration, control; **summae imperii praesse,** to hold the supreme command (N. T. 4); **summam imperii ad eum deferre,** to confer on him the supreme command (N. H. 3); **de summa imperii dimicare,** to fight for supremacy (N. H. 8); **summā imperii bellique administrandi permissā,** the supreme command in conducting the war being entrusted (C. v, 11).

summoveo: see **submoveo.**

sum-mus, -mă, -mum, adj., highest, greatest, very great, chief (superl. of **superus**); **summus mons,** the top of the mountain; **summa amphora,** the top of a jar (N. H. 9); **summa res,** a most important matter (C. iv, 5).

sūmo, sūmĕre, sumpsī, sumptum, v. tr., take, assume; poenas sumere, to exact a penalty.

sumptuos-us, -ă, -um, adj., costly.

sump-tus, -tūs, M., expense.

super, prep. (with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2), above.

sŭperbē, adv., proudly, haughtily.

sŭperb-us, -ă, -um, adj., proud, haughty.

sŭpĕrĭor, -is (comp. of superus), higher, previous; nocte superiore, on the previous night; superiore aestate, in the preceding summer (c. iv, 21); in loca superiora, up the country (c. v, 8); locus superior, a height (c. v, 9).

sŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., conquer, defeat, surpass; Euboeam superare, to sail round Euboea (N. T. 3).

superstĭtĭ-o, -ōnis, F., superstition.

sŭper-sum, -esse, -fŭī, v. intr., remain, survive; neque multum aestatis superest, and not much of the summer is left (c. v, 22).

sŭpĕr-us, -ă, -um, adj., high, (comp., superior; sup., supremus, or summus); see superior.

suppell-ex, -ectĭlis, F., furniture.

sup-plex, -plĭcis, M. or F., suppliant.

supplĭcātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., thanksgiving.

supplĭcĭter, adv., humbly, suppliantly.

supplĭcĭ-um, -ī, N., punishment, execution.

suprā, prep. (with acc.), and adv., above, over.

sus, sŭis, M. or F., pig.

sus-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., undertake.

suspĭcĭ-o, -ōnis, F., distrust, suspicion; in suspicionem venire, to be suspected; in suspicionem regi adducere, to bring under the suspicion of the king (N. H. 2).

sus-pĭcĭo, suspĭcĕre, suspexī, suspectum, v. tr., suspect.

suspĭc-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., suspect, distrust.

sus-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum, v. tr., bear, check, withstand.

sŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj. pro., his, her, its, their.

Sўrăcūs-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Syracuse, a city on the east coast of Sicily.

Sўrăcūsān-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to Syracuse, Syracusan.

Sўrĭ-a, -ae, F., Syria.

T.

T.=Titus, a Roman praenomen; see cognomen.

tăbellārĭ-us, -ī, M., a letter carrier, messenger.

tăbernācŭl-um, -ī, N., tent.

tăbŭl-a, -ae, F., tablet.

tăc-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr. and intr., be silent; pass over in silence.

tăcĭt-us, -ă, -um, adj., silent.

taed-et, -ēre, ŭit (taesum est), impers., it disgusts, wearies; me libri taedet, I am disgusted with the book (p. 165).

tālĕ-a, -ae, F., bar; taleae ferreae, iron bars (c. v. 12).

tălent-um, -ī, N., talent; a Greek silver talent is variously estimated at £235 or £243 15s. sterling, from $1,100 to $1,200; a gold talent was ten times this value.

tāl-is, -ĕ, adj., such.

tam, adv., so (before adverbs and adjectives); tam....quam, as much....as (H. N. 10).

tamdĭū, adv., so long.

tămen, adv., yet, still, for all that, however, nevertheless.

Tămĕs-is, -is (acc. Tamesim), M., the Thames.

tămetsi, adv., although.

Tamphĭlus, -ī, M., Tamphilus; see Baebius.

tandem, adv., at length, finally; in questions, pray? now? as quis tandem? who, pray?

tango, tangĕre, tĕtĭgī, tactum, v. tr., touch, border on.

tanto, adv. of comparison, by so much.

tantŏpĕre, adv., vehemently.

tantŭl-us, -ă, -um, adj., so very small, so slight, so trifling; has tantularum rerum occupationes, this business consisting of such trifles (c. iv, 22).

tantum, adv., only, so much, so far, merely.

tant-us, -ă, -um, adj., so great, so large, such.

tardē, adv., slowly.

tard-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., check, delay, impede, hinder.

tard-us, -ă, -um, adj., slow.

Tarquīnī-us, -ī, M., Tarquin, a name given to two of the Roman kings: (1) Tarquinius Priscus (Tarquin the First), who reigned 616 B.C. to 578 B.C.; (2) Tarquinius Superbus (Tarquin, the Proud), who reigned 534 B.C. to 510 B.C. Under the last king the Romans abolished kingly rule.

taur-us, -ī, M., bull.

Taxĭmăgŭl-us, -ī, M., Taximagulus, one of the petty kings of Kent (C. v, 22).

Tectŏsāg-es, -um, M., the Tectosages, a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the Roman province of Gaul. Their capital was Tolōsa (now *Toulouse*).

tect-um, -ī, N., house.

tĕgĭment-um, -ī, N., covering.

tĕgo, tĕgĕre, texī, tectum, v. tr., cover, protect.

tēl-um, -ī, N., weapon, dart.

tĕmĕrārī-us, -ă, -um, adj., rash, indiscreet.

tĕmĕre, adv., at random, without a purpose (C. iv, 20).

tĕmĕrĭt-as, -ātis, F., rashness.

tēm-o, -ōnis, M., pole (of a chariot).

tempĕrantī-a, -ae, F., self-control, moderation.

tempĕrāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., temperate, mild; **loca sunt temperatiora**, the climate is milder (C. v, 12).

tempĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., with acc., rule, manage; with dat., restrain.

tempes-tas, -tātis, F., weather, storm; **reici tempestate**, to be driven back by a storm (C. v, 5).

tem-plum, -plī, N., temple.

tempt-o (or **tent-o**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., try, attempt, attack.

tem-pus, -pŏris, N., time, season, occasion; **in reliquum tempus**, for the future; **omni tempore**, always; **tempus ducere**, to protract the time (N. T. 7); **annuum tempus**, a year's time (N. T. 9); **tempore dato**, at an appointed time (N. H. 2); **ad tempus**, at a moment's notice (C. iv, 23); **pro tempore et pro re**, suited to the time and conditions (C. v, 8).

tĕn-ax, -ācis, adj., holding fast, tenacious.

Tenctĕr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Tencteri, a German tribe on the Rhine, who crossed the river along with the Usipetes, and were defeated by the Romans. They occupied the districts of Utrecht and Guelderland of Holland.

tendo, tendĕre, tĕtendī, tentum (or **tensum**), v. tr., stretch, extend.

tĕn-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -tum, v. tr., hold, possess; **navem tenere in ancoris**, to keep a ship at anchor (N. T. 8); **cursum tenere**, to hold on its course (C. iv, 28).

tĕn-er, -ĕră, -ĕrum, adj., tender.

tento: see **tempto**.

tĕnŭ-is, -ĕ, adj., thin, weak.

tĕnus, prep. (with abl. or gen.), up to, as far as; usually after the word it governs; **capite tenus**, up to the head; **ore tenus**, up to the lips.

ter, num. adv., thrice.

Tĕrentī-us, -ī, M., Terentius; Caius Terentius Varro, consul along with Lucius Æmilius Paulus in 216 B.C., when the unfortunate battle of Cannae was fought against the wish of Paulus, who was slain. Varro escaped with a few horse.

tĕr-es, -ĕtis, adj., smooth.

ter-gum, -gī, N., back; **a tergo**, in the rear; **post tergum**, behind the back; **terga vertere**, to flee.

ter-nī, -nae, -nă, distrib. num. adj., three each, three apiece.

tĕro, tĕrĕre, trīvī, trītum, v. tr., wear.

terr-a, -ae, F., land, earth, country.

terr-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., frighten, terrify, alarm.

terrestr-is, -ĕ, adj., of or belonging to land; **exercitus terrestris**, land army, opposed to **exercitus navalis**, sea forces.

terrĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., terrify, frighten.

terr-or, -ōris, M., fear, dread.

tertĭo, num. adv., in the third place.

tertĭum, for the third time.

tertĭ-us, -ă, -um, num. ord. adj., third.

test-a, -ae, F., shell; see note on Nepos, Them., Chap. 8.

testāment-um, -ī, N., will, testament.

testĭmōnĭ-um, -ī, N., proof, testimony.

test-is, -is, M., witness.

test-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., witness, assert.

testūd-o, -ĭnis, F., a tortoise, a covering formed by the shields of the soldiers held above their heads so as to ward off the weapons hurled by the enemy; so called from the fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell. The term was also applied to the different kinds of sheds under which the soldiers worked when attacking a town.

testŭl-a, -ae, F., tile, piece of pottery; **suffragiis testularum**, by the votes of the tiles, *i.e.*, by ostracism (N. T. 8).

Teutŏn-es, -um and Teutŏn-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Teutons, a people of Germany.

Thĕmĭstocl-es, -is or -ī, M., Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian statesman who lived 514 B.C. to 449 B.C.

Thermŏpўl-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Thermopylae, a celebrated pass in Greece near the Maliac Gulf, between Thessaly and Locris. Here Leonidas and his Spartan band fell 480 B.C. It obtained the name "Hot Gates," from the warm sulphur springs near it.

Thūcўdĭd-ēs, -is, M., Thucydides, a Greek historian who wrote an account of the Peloponnesian War down to 411 B.C. He lived 471 B.C. to 401 B.C.

Tĭbĕr-is, -is (acc., **Tiberim**; abl., **Tiberi**), M., the Tiber, the river of Rome.

Tĭbĕrĭ-us, -ī, M., Tiberius: see **Sempronius**.

tign-um, -ī, N., beam, log.

tĭm-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., fear, be afraid.

tĭmĭdē, adv., fearfully, timidly.

tĭmĭd-us, -ă, -um, adj., fearful, afraid, timid.

tĭm-or, -ōris, M., fear, dread.

Titūrĭ-us, -ī, M., Titurius: see **Sabinus**.

Tĭt-us, -ī, M., Titus: see **Labienus, Gracchus**.

tŏg-a, -ae, F., gown. The toga was the distinguishing dress of a Roman citizen.

tŏlĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bear, support.

tollo, tollĕre, sustŭlī, sublātum, v. tr., lift, raise, carry away, destroy: **ancoram tollere**, to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23).

torment-um, -ī, N., military engine for throwing missiles against the enemy.

torrĕo, torrēre, torrŭī, tostum, v. tr., scorch, burn.

tot, indecl. adj., so many; **tot...quot**, as many as.

tŏtĭdem, indecl. adj., just as many.

tōt-us, -ă, -um (p. 26), adj., whole, all, entire; often with the adverbial force of wholly, entirely; **totum se dēdĭdit reipublicae**, he devoted himself wholly to the interests of the state (N. T. 1).

trab-s, trăb-is, F., beam, timber.

trād-o, -ĕre, -ĭdī, -ĭtum, v. tr., hand over, give over, deliver, surrender; hand down to posterity; **traditur**, it is said: **traditum est**, the tradition is.

trā-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead across, transport (p. 277, 8).

trăho, trăhĕre, traxī, tractum, v. tr., draw, drag.

trā-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw across, lead across, pierce (p. 277, 8).

trā-iect-us, -ūs, M., passage, crossing over.

tranquillĭt-as, -ātis, F., calm weather; **summa tranquillitas**, a dead calm (c. v, 23).

trans, prep. (with acc.), across, over, on the other side, beyond.

transduco: see **traduco**.

trans-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum, v. tr., cross over, cross (p. 277, 7).

trans-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum, v. tr., bear or carry across: **summam imperii transferre**, to transfer the supreme power (N. A. 2).

trans-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum, v. tr., pass over, cross (p. 277, 7).

trans-ĭgo, -ĭgĕre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., pass through; **tempus transigere**, to pass the time (N. T. 9).

trans-ĭtus, -ĭtūs, M., a going or crossing over, passing, crossing.

trans-mārīn-us, -ă, -um, adj., across, or beyond the sea.

transmiss-us, -ūs, M., passage.

trans-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry over, transport.

Transrhēnān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., those living across the Rhine (c. v, 2).

Trăsĭmēn-us, -ī, M., Trasimenus (now *Lago di Perugia*), a lake in Etruria, where the Romans were defeated by Hannibal, June 23, 217 B.C.

Trebōnĭ-us, -ī, M., Trebonius; Caius Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

Trĕbĭ-a, -ae, M. or F., Trebia, (now *Trebbia*), a river of Gallia Cisalpina, one

of the southern tributaries of the Padus (*Po*), where Hannibal defeated the Romans, 218 B. C.

trĕcent-ī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., three hundred.

trĕdĕcim, card. num. adj., thirteen.

trēs, trĭă, card. num. adj., three.

Trĕvĭr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Treviri, a people of Gallia Belgica, who dwelt between the Meuse and the Rhine; their capital was Augusta Trevirorum, now *Trèves*.

Tribrŏc-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Tribroci, a German people of Gallia Belgica, between Mount Vosges and the Rhine (in modern *Alsace*).

trĭbūn-us, -ī, M., a commander of a tribe; hence, one of military officers, six in number, attached to each legion.

trĭbŭ-o, -ĕre, -ī, trĭbūtum, v. tr., give, assign, ascribe.

trĭb-us, -ūs, M., tribe.

trĭbūt-um, -ī, N., tribute, tax.

trĭdŭ-um, -ī, N., space of three days; **tridui via,** a three days' march (c. iv, 4).

trĭennĭ-um, -ī, N., space of three years.

trīginta, card. num. adj., thirty.

Trĭnobant-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Trinobantes, a people of Britain who occupied Essex and part of Suffolk.

trĭpertīt-o, adv., in three divisions.

trĭ-plex, -plĭcis, adj., threefold, triple.

trĭquetr-us, -ă, -um, adj., three-cornered, triangular.

trīrēm-is, -is, F., trireme, a vessel with three banks of oars.

tris, num. adv., thrice.

trist-is, -ĕ, adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

tristĭtĭ-a, -ae, F., sadness.

Troez-ēn, -ēnis (acc. **Troezēna**), F., Troezen (now *Dumala*), a city in the southern part of Argos in the Peloponnesus.

Trōi-a, -ae, F., Troy.

Trōiān-us, -ă, -um, adj., Trojan.

trŏpae-um, -ī, N., trophy, *i.e.*, a memorial or monument of victory; hence victory.

trunc-us, -ī, N., trunk of a tree.

tū, tŭī, pl. **vos,** thou, you (p. 248).

tub-a, -ae, F., trumpet (with a straight tube).

tŭĕor, tŭērī, tŭĭtus sum, v. dep., preserve, defend, protect.

tum, adv., then.

tŭmult-us, -ūs, M., disturbance, disorder.

tŭmŭl-us, -ī, M., mound.

tunc, adv., then, at that time.

turm-a, -ae, F., a troop of 30 cavalry; the cavalry (ala) of the legion was divided into 10 **turmae**.

turp-is, -ĕ, adj., base, disgraceful.

turpĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F., baseness, disgrace, dishonor.

turr-is, -is, F., tower.

tūte, adv., in safety, safely.

tūt-us, -ă, -um, adj., safe, secure.

tŭ-us, -ă, -um, pro. adj., thy, your.

tyrann-is, -ĭdis, F., absolute power, tyranny.

tyrann-us, -ī, M., tyrant.

U.

ūb-er, -ĕris, N., teat, udder, breast.

ūb-er, -ĕris, adj., rich, fruitful.

ŭbi, adv., where, when; **ubi primum,** as soon as (p. 298, 2).

Ubĭ-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Ubii, a tribe of western Germany, on the right bank of the Rhine, in the neighborhood of the modern Cologne.

ūbīque, adv., everywhere.

ulciscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, v. tr. dep., avenge, punish.

ull-us, -a, -um (p. 132, 3), adj., any.

ultĕr-ĭor, -ĭus, comp. adj., further, beyond, more remote; sup., **ultimus**.

ultĭm-us, -ă, -um, adj., farthest, most distant.

ultrā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), beyond, on the other side; **ultra fidem,** beyond belief.

ultrŏ, adv., of one's own accord; without provocation; **bellum ultro inferre,** to make war without provocation (c. iv, 13).

ul-tus, -tă, -tum, perf. part. of **ulciscor,** having avenged.

umb-ra, -rae, F., shade.

ŭmĕr-us, -ī, M., shoulder, arm.

umquam, adv., ever, at any time.

ūnā, adv., along with; usually with **cum**; **una cum his legatis,** along with these envoys (c. iv, 26); **unā cum ceteris,** along with the others (c. v, 6).

unde, adv., from which place, whence.

undĕcim, card. num. adj., eleven.

undĕcĭm-us, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., eleventh.

undĭquĕ, adv., from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.

ūnīvers-us, -ă, um, adj., whole, all (in a body).

unquam : see **umquam**.

ūn-us, -ă, -um (p. 244), card. num. adj., one, alone ; **uno tempore**, at one and the same time ; **omnes ad unum**, all to a man ; **unus omnino**, only one (C. v, 18).

ūnusquisque, ūnăquaeque, ūnum quidque, indef. adj. pro., each, every.

urbān-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to the city.

urb-s, -is, F., city; the city, *i.e.*, Rome.

urgĕo, urgēre, ursī, no sup., v. tr., press.

Usĭpĕt-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Usipetes, a German tribe near the Tencteri, on the lower Rhine, in Utrecht and Guelderland in Holland; but originally found in Saxony, from which they were driven out by the Suebi. They crossed the Rhine into the borders of the Menapii, in Gaul, but were driven back by Caesar.

urs-us, -ī, M., a bear.

usquam, adv., anywhere.

usque, adv., all the way, all the while, until ; **usque ad urbem**, up to the city; **usque ad meum tempus**, up to my day.

ūs-us, -ūs, M., use, experience, practice, advantage; **usu venire**, to come by occasion, *i.e.*, to happen (N. H. 12); **ratio atque usus belli**, theory and practice of war, *i.e.*, the systematic practice of war (C. iv, 1): **magno usui sibi esse**, to be of great advantage to him (C. iv, 20); **ex usu**, of advantage (C. v, 6).

ūsus, indecl. noun with **est** : there is need (p. 166, 2); **usus est mihi cibo**, I have need of food.

ŭt (or **ŭti**), conj., as, how, that, in order that (p. 293, 1); so that (p. 295, 1); though (p. 303, 1, (b)); **ut...ita**, as...so (p. 303, 1).

ut, as ; **accidit ut** (p. 293, 1).

ut-er, -ra, -rum (p. 27), interrog. pro., which of two?

uterque, utrăque, utramque, adj. pro., each (of two), both : **ex utraque parte**, on both sides.

utervis, utrăvis, utrumvis, adj., pro., either of the two you wish.

uti : see **ut**.

ūtīl-is, -ĕ, adj., useful, serviceable, fit, profitable.

ūtīlĭt-as, -ātis, F., usefulness, advantage, service.

ŭtĭnam, adv., O ! that (p. 288, 5).

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, v. intr. dep. (with abl., p. 116), use, employ, enjoy ; **alacritate uti**, to show dash (C. iv, 24).

utpŏte, adv., inasmuch as, seeing that.

utrimque, adv., from or on both sides.

utrīque, pl. of **uterque**.

utrobīque, adv., on both sides, in each place ; **utrobique=et mari et terra** (N. H. 10).

utrum, conj., whether ; **utrum... an**, whether...or ; often not translated in direct questions (p. 287, 5).

ux-or, -ōris, F., wife.

V.

Văcăl-us, -ī, M., the Vacalus (now Waal or Wahal), a branch of the Rhine.

văcātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., freedom, exemption.

văc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., be unoccupied, lie waste.

văcŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., empty, vacant.

văd-um, -ī, N., ford.

văg-ōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., wander.

vălen-s, -tis (pres. part. of **valeo** used as an) adj., powerful.

văl-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. intr., be powerful, strong ; have power or influence ; **quo valeret**, what it implied (N. T, 2) ; **hoc eo valebat**, the purpose of this was (N. T. 4) ; **longe plurimum valet**, is by far the most powerful (C. v, 3) ; **quam plurimum valere**, to be as powerful as possible (C. v, 4).

vălētūd-o, -ĭnis, F., state of health (good or bad according to context) ; **valetudine premi**, to be afflicted with bad health (N. H. 4).

vall-is, -is, F., valley.

vall-um, -ī, N., rampart, breastwork of a camp.

vall-us, -ī, M., stake, palisade.

vărĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., different, changing.

Varro : see **Terentius**.

vās, vāsis (in the sing., 3rd decl. ; in

the pl., **vāsa, -ōrum** of the 2nd), N., vessel; **vasa fictilia,** earthenware vessels (N. H. 10).

vast-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., lay waste, devastate.

vast-us, -ă, -um, adj., vast.

vā-tes, -tis, M. or F., a soothsayer, prophet, prophetess.

-vĕ, enclitic conjunction, or: giving a choice between two or more things.

vectīg-al, -ālis, N., tax, toll, revenue.

vectīgāl-is, -ĕ, adj., tributary; as a noun; **vectīgāl-es, -ĭum,** pl. M., tributary people.

vectōrĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., adapted for carrying; **navigium vectorium,** a transport ship.

vĕhĕmen-s, -tis, adj., angry, violent.

vĕhĕmenter, adv., vigorously, resolutely.

vĕhĭcŭl-um, -ī, N., a carriage.

vĕho, vĕhĕre, vexī, vectum, v. tr., bear, carry, convey; in pass., **vehi,** to sail in a ship (scil. **in nave,** N. H. 10).

vĕl, conj., or; **vel ... vel,** either ... or; with sup., even, indeed; **vel optimus,** the very best.

vēlōcĭt-as, -ātis, F., swiftness, speed.

vēl-ox, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid, active.

vēl-um, -ī, N., sail; **dare vela ventis,** to set sail (N. H. 8).

vĕlut, adv., just as; **velut si,** just as if.

vēnāl-is, -ĕ, adj., for sale.

vēnātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., hunting; **multum sunt in venationibus,** they are much given to hunting (C. iv, 1).

vēnāt-or, -ōris, M., hunter.

ven-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, v. tr., sell, offer for sale; pass., **vēnĕo** (which see).

vēnēnāt-us, -ă, -um, adj., venomous, poisonous.

vēnēn-um, -ī, N., poison.

vēn-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or **-ĭī**), **-itum,** v. pass. (see **vendo**), be sold (p. 158, note).

vĕnĕr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., adore, worship.

Vĕnĕtĭc-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Veneti, a tribe on the west coast of France, north of the Loire, in the vicinity of the bay of Quiberon. Caesar subdued them 57 B.C.

vĕnĭ-a, -ae, F., favor, forgiveness.

vĕnĭo, vĕnīre, vēnī, ventum, v. intr., come; **in suspicionem venire regi,** to be suspected by the king.

ventĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., visit, keep coming; **multum ad eos mercatores ventitant,** merchants frequently visit them (C. iv, 3).

vent-us, -ī, M., wind; **dare vela ventis,** to set sail (N. H. 8).

Venusī-a, -ae, F., Venusia (now *Venoso*), a town on the borders of Apulia and Lucania.

vēr, vēris, N., spring; **primo vere,** at the beginning of spring; **extremo vere,** at the end of spring.

(ver-ber), verbĕris (nom. dat. acc. sing, not found), N., stroke, blow.

ver-bum, -bī, N., word; in pl., conversation; **dare verba,** to give empty words, hence, to deceive (N. H. 5); **his verbis,** on these terms (N. T. 10).

vērē, adv., truly, in truth (comp., **verius**; sup., **verissime**); **verissime iudicabat,** he formed the most correct judgment (N. T. 1).

vērēcund-us, -ă, -um, adj., modest.

vĕr-ĕor, -ērī, -ĭtus sum, v. tr., dep., fear, dread; **navibus veritus,** fearing for the safety of the ships (C. v, 9).

vergo, vergĕre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., incline, slope; **ad septentriones vergit,** it has a northerly slope (C. iv, 20).

vērō, adv., in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, indeed.

Verr-es, -is, M., Verres, a notorious proconsul of Sicily, impeached by Cicero for plundering this province.

vers-o, -āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr., turn often, change.

vers-or, -ārī, ātus sum, v. intr., dwell in, be occupied with, engaged in; **multis in privatis iudiciis versari,** to be often employed in private suits (N. T. 1); **tuto versari,** to dwell in safety (N. T. 8).

vers-us, -ūs, M., line, verse.

verto, vertĕre, verti, versum, v. tr., turn, change; **terga vertere,** to turn their backs, flee.

vertor, vertī, versus sum, v. intr. dep., turn, change.

vēr-us, -ă, -um, adj., true.

vescor, vescī, no perf. or sup., intr. dep. (with abl., p. 116), feed, live upon.

ves-per, -pĕris (or **-perī**), M., evening; **vespere,** or **vesperi,** in the evening.

Vest-a, -ae, F., Vesta, the Roman goddess of the hearth and home.

vest-er, -ra, -rum, adj. pro., your, yours.

vestīgĭ-um, -ī, N., foot track, trace, mark; **eodem vestigio,** in the same spot, without moving (C. iv, 2); **in vestigio,** at once, promptly (C. iv, 5).

vestīment-um, -ī, N., garment.

vest-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., clothe, dress; **pellibus vestiri,** to clothe oneself in skins (C. v, 14).

vest-is, -is, F., dress.

vestīt-us, -ūs, M., clothing, dress.

vĕtĕrān-us, -ă, -um, adj., old; as a noun, **vĕtĕrān-ī, -ōrum,** pl. M., veteran troops (scil. **milites**).

vĕt-o, -āre, -ŭī, -ĭtum, v. tr., forbid, prevent.

vĕt-us, -ĕris, adj., old, ancient; no comp.; sup., **veterrimus.**

vexill-um, -ī, N., flag, standard.

vex-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., harass, plunder, waste.

vī-a, -ae, F., way, road, journey; **tridui via,** a journey of three days (C. iv, 4).

vĭā-tor, -tōris, M., traveller.

vīcēn-ī, -ae, -ă, distrib. num. adj., twenty each.

vīcēsĭm-us, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., twentieth.

vīcĭes, num. adv., twenty times.

vīcīnĭt-as, -ātis, F., neighborhood.

vīcīn-us, -ī, M., neighbor.

vīcis (genitive), **vīcem, vīcĕ,** F. (no nom. sing.), change; **in vicem,** in turn (C. iv, 1).

victĭm-a, -ae, F., sacrifice, victim.

vic-tor, -tōris, M., victor, conqueror; as an adj., victorious.

victōrī-a, ae, F., victory.

vic-tus, -tūs, M., living, food.

vīc-us, -ī, M., village, hamlet.

vīdēlĭcet, adv., manifestly, of course, forsooth.

vĭdĕo, vīdēre, vīdī, vīsum, v tr.; see **vĭdĕor, vidērī, vīsus sum,** intr. dep., seem, appear.

vīdŭ-a, -ae, F., widow.

vĭgĕo, vĭgēre, no perf., no sup., be vigorous, thrive, flourish.

vĭgĭlī-a, -ae, F., watch, guard. The Romans had four night watches: **prima vigilia,** from 6 p.m. to 9 p.m.; **secundā vigilia,** from 9 p.m. to 12 p.m.; **tertia vigilia,** from 12 p.m. to 3 a.m.; **quartā vigilia,** from 3 a.m. to 6 a.m.; **secundā inita vigilia,** at the beginning of the second watch (C. v, 23).

vīginti, card. num. adj., twenty.

vil-la, -lae, F., a country house, villa.

vī-men, -mĭnis, N., twig, osier.

vinc-īo, -īre, vinxi, vinctum, v. tr., bind.

vinco, vincĕre, vīcī, victum, v. tr., conquer.

vincŭl-um, -ī, N., chain; **in vincula conicere,** throw into prison.

vindĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., claim, set free, punish.

vīnĕ-a, -ae, F., a shed; a movable shed with sloping roof of planks and sides of wickerwork and covered over with hides. It was usually 8 feet high and 16 feet long. Under it the soldiers advanced and worked the battering ram.

vīn-um, -ī, N., wine.

vĭŏl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., violate, injure, harm.

vir, vĭrī, M., man, husband.

virg-a, ae, F., twig.

virg-o, -ĭnis, F., maiden.

vĭrĭdĭt-as, -ātis, F., greenness, vigor.

vĭrīl-is, -ĕ, adj., manly.

vir-tus, -tūtis, F., manliness, virtue.

vis, vis, F., strength, power (p. 45); **vim facere,** to offer violence; **vi or per vim expugnare,** to take by storm; **vim sustinere,** to withstand an attack (N. H. 11).

vīso, vīsĕre, vīsī, vīsum, v. tr., go to see, visit.

vī-ta, -tae, F., life.

vĭtĭ-um, -i, N., fault, vice.

vīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., avoid, shun.

vit-rum, -rī, N., woad; a plant known to botanists as **Isatis tinctoria,** which produced a blue dye. Till the introduction of indigo in the 17th century it was largely cultivated.

vītŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., abuse, revile.

vīvo, vīvĕre, vixī, victum, v. intr., live; **liberius vivere,** to live a careless life (N. T. 1); **lacte et carne vivunt,** they live on milk and flesh (C. v, 14).

vīv-us, -ă, -um, adj., alive, living.

vix, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.

vŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call, summon.

vŏl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fly, hasten.

vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭī, no sup. (irregular verb, p. 147), intr., be willing, wish, desire.

vŏlĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., flit about.

vŏlŭ-cer, -cris, -cre, adj., winged.

vŏluntārĭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., willing, voluntary.

vŏluntārĭ-us, -ī, M., a volunteer.

vŏlunt-as, ātis, F., willingness, good will; **voluntate sua**, of his own free will; **ad voluntatem**, to suit the wishes of (c. iv, 5).

vŏlup-tas, -tātis, F., pleasure; **animi voluptatisque causā**, for recreation and pleasure (c. v, 12).

Vŏlŭsēn-us, -ī, M., Volusenus; Caius Volusenus Quadratus, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

vŏvĕo, vŏvēre, vōvī, vōtum, v. tr., vow.

vos: see **tu** (p. 104).

Vŏsĕg-us, M., the modern *Vosges*, a mountain range in north-eastern France.

vox, vōcis, F., voice; **magnā voce**, in a loud voice (c. iv, 25).

Vulcān-us, -ī, M., Vulcan, the Fire-god of the Romans.

vulgo, (abl. of **vulgus** used as an) adv., generally, commonly.

vulg-us, -ī, N. (rarely M.), common people, multitude.

vulnĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wound, hurt.

vuln-us, -ĕris, N., wound; **paucis vulneribus acceptis**, with slight loss (c. v, 10).

vulp-es, -is, F., fox.

Vuls-o, -ōnis, M., Vulso; Cneius Manlius Vulso, a Roman consul who had charge of the province of Asia in 189 B.C.

vult-ur, -ūris, M., a vulture.

vul-tus, -tūs, M., expression, countenance.

X.

Xĕnŏph-ōn, -ontis, M., Xenophon, an Athenian, pupil of Socrates, and leader of the Greeks in the expedition of Cyrus.

Xerx-ēs, -is, M., Xerxes, a king of Persia who reigned from 485 B.C. to 465 B.C.

Z.

Zăcynth-us, -ī, F., Zacynthus (now *Zante*), an island in the Ionian Sea, west of Greece.

Zăm-a, -ae, F., Zama, a town of Numidia, where Scipio defeated Hannibal, B.C. 202.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

a, generally untranslated; when **a** is equivalent to **a certain**, translated by quidam, quaedam, quoddam; by aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (p. 132), if = **some**; or, if meaning **one**, by unus (p. 27).

abandon, mūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 150, 1, note); dēsĕr-o, -ĕre, -ŭī, desertum; rĕlinq-uo, -ĕre, rĕlīquī, rĕlictum.

abide by, I, sto (with abl.); **I abide by the decision**, iudicio sto.

ability, ingĕnī-um, -i, N.

able, adj., pŏtens; **I am able**, possum, posse, pŏtŭī (p. 261).

abode, domicilium, -i, N.

about, prep., circā, circĭter, apud; adv., circiter, fere, paene; **about** (in the neighborhood of) **Rome**, circā Romam; **about two hundred**, circĭter ducenti; **about** (= almost), fere with adj. and adv., paene with verb.

about (concerning), prep., de (p. 222).

abroad, militiae (p. 86); foris or foras.

absence, absenti-a, -ae, F.; **in my absence**, me absente (p. 100, 5).

absent, adj., absens, absentis; **I am a.**, absum, abesse, abfŭi; **I am absent from**, absum ab.

abundance, cōpī-a, -ae, F.

abuse, v., ăb-ūtor, -ūti, -ūsus sum (p. 283, 10); = **to speak ill of**, mălĕdīco, -dīcĕre, -dixi, -dictum (p. 278, 5).

abuse, maledict-um, -i, N.

accept, ac-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum.

acceptable to, grāt-us, -a, -um (with dat., p. 277, 2).

accident, cās-us, -ūs, M.; **by accident**, cāsū.

accomplish, I, con-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum; ef-fĭcio, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum.

account (on account of), prep., ob, propter (with acc.).

account, on no, nullo modo.

account (= reckoning), rătī-o, -ōnis, F.

accuse, accūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 281, 12).

accustomed, I am, sŏlĕo, sŏlēre, sŏlĭtus sum.

acquit, ab-solvo, -solvĕre, -solvī, -sŏlūtum (p. 281, 12).

across, prep., trans (with acc.); **go across**, trans-eo, -īre, -īvī, (-iī), -ĭtum (acc.).

act, v., ăgo, ăgĕre, ēgī, actum; făcĭo, făcĕre, fēcī, factum.

active, adj., ălăcer, ălăcris, ălăcre; strenu-us, -a, -um (adj.).

address, ōrātī-o, -ōnis, F.; v., verba facio; **I address you**, apud vos verba facio.

admire, admīr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

admit, all, inter omnes constat (p. 162, 3); conceditur.

admonish, ad-mŏnĕo, -mŏnēre, -mŏnŭī, -mŏnĭtum.

adorn, v., orn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dĕcŏr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

Adrumētum, Adrumēt-um, -i, N.

advance, progrĕdior, -grĕdi, -gressus sum; pro-cĕdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum.

advantage, commŏd-um, -i, N.

advantage, it is of, interest, rēfert (p. 166, 3); prodest (**great** = multum).

adverse, advers-us, -a, -um (adj.).

adversity, res adversae.

advice, consĭlĭ-um, -i, N.

advise, mŏn-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum.

Aedui, Aedŭ-ī, -ōrum, M., pl.

Aegīna, Aegīn-a, -ae, F.

affair, res, rēī, F.

afraid, be, tĭm-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, no sup.; met-uo, -ĕre, -ŭī, no sup.; vĕrĕ-or, -ērī, -ĭtus sum; with ut or ne and subjunctive (p. 185, 3).

after, prep., post (with acc.; p. 222, 4); adv., post, postĕā (p. 82, 3).

after (with verbal nouns), post + pf. part.; **after the founding of the city**, post urbem conditam; or use abl. abs., or **after that**.

after that, postquam (p. 201, 5).

afterwards, adv., postea.

again, adv., rursus; iterum (a second time); **again and again**, saepe, saepissime.

against, contrā (acc.), in (acc.).

Agamemnon, Agămemnon, -is, M.

age (time of life), aet-as, -ātis, F.

age (old), sĕnect-us, -ūtis, F.

age, those of his own, aequāles -ĭum, M.

age, a boy two years of, puer duos annos natus (p. 285, 6).

agitate, perturb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

ago, abhinc; **ten years ago,** abhinc decem annos or annis (abl., p. 284, 5).

agree, I, consentio; **agreed by all, it is,** constat inter omnes (p. 162, 3); convĕnit.

aid, auxĭlĭ-um, -i, N.; **come to a.,** p. 134, 1; v., ad-iŭvo, -iŭvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum (with acc.); sub-vĕnio, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum (with dat.).

air, āĕr, āĕris, M.

alarm, păv-or, -ōris, M.

all, omn-is, -e; cunct-us, -a, -um; univers-us, -a, -um; tot-us, -a, -um[1].

allow, I, sĭno, sīnere, sīvi, sĭtum; con-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum; **I am allowed,** mihi licet (p. 163, 5).

ally, sŏcī-us, -ī, M.

almost, fĕre, paene.

alone, sōl-us, -a, -um.

along with, unā cum.

Alps, Alp-ēs, -ĭum, F.

already, iam, adv.

also, ĕtĭam (adv.), quŏque (adv.); īdem (123, 5).

although, quamquam, quamvis, licet, ut (p. 196, 5–7).

always, semper, adv.

ambassador, lēgāt-us, -ī, M.

ambition, ambiti-o, -ōnis, F.

among, inter (prep. with acc.); apud (prep. with acc.); in (prep. with abl.).

amount, what; use quantum+gen.

ambuscade, ambush, insĭdī-ae, -ārum, F. pl.

ancestors, maiōr-ēs, -um.

ancient, antīqu-us, -a, -um; vĕtus, -ĕris; priscus[2]-a, -um (adj.).

[1] Omnis, all without exception, opposed to nemo or unus; cunctus, a stronger term than omnis, "all together"; universus, all in a body, opposed to singuli; totus, the whole, as opposed to a part.

[2] Antiquus, old and no longer existing; vetus, old and still existing; priscus, old-fashioned; pristĭnus, belonging to an earlier age.

Ancus, Anc-us, -i, M.

and, et, -que, atque, ac.

anger, īr-a, -ae, F.

angry (be), īrascor, īrascī, irātus sum; suc-censeo, -censēre, -censŭī, -censum (with dat.).

animal, ănĭm-al, -ālis, N.

annihilate, dēl-ĕo, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

announce, nunti-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

another, ălĭ-us, -a, -ud (p. 26); **one another,** inter se (p. 223).

answer, respons-um, -i, N.; v., respond-ĕo, -ēre, respondi, responsum.

Antonius, Antonius, -i, M.

anxious, be, cŭpio, cŭpĕre, cupīvi (ĭī), cupītum.

any (after negatives), quisquam, quidquam; ull-us, -a, -um (132, 3); (affirmative), quivis, quaevis, quidvis; quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet; quis, after si, nisi, ne, num, quo, quanto, (p. 188, 6, note).

anyone, p. 132, 3.

anywhere, usquam, adv.

apiece, distributive numeral [p. 69, 8, (*a*)].

appeal to, I, obtest-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; **I appeal to you not to do this,** te obtestor ne hoc facias.

appear, I (seem), vīdĕor, vīdērī, vīsus sum (p. 289, 6).

appear, I (come in sight), ap-pārĕo, -pārēre, -pārŭī, -pārĭtum (used as pass. of video).

applaud, I, plaudo, plaudĕre, plausī, plausum (dat.).

apple, pōm-um, -ī, N.

appoint, dīco, dīcĕre, dīxī, dictum; appoint over, praefĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum; **I appoint an officer over the camp,** lēgātum castris (dat.) praeficio (p. 278, 6).

apprehension, mĕt-us, -ūs, M.

approach, advent-us, -ūs, M.; ădĭt-us, -ūs, M.; v., appropinqu-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat., or ad with acc.); ag-grĕdĭor, -grĕdī, -gressus sum; ăd-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or ĭī), -ĭtum.

approved, spectāt-us, -a, -um; probāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

ardor, for, stŭdĭ-um, -ī, N. (with gen.).

aright, recte (adv.).

Ariovistus, Arĭovist-us, -i, M.

aristocratic party, optīmā-tes, -tĭum, M. pl.

arise, ŏrĭor, ŏrīrī, ortus sum.

arm, brāchĭ-um, -i, N.; v., arm-o, -āre, etc.

armed, armāt-us, -a, -um; p.p. of armo; **light armed**: see next word.

armor, troops of light, milites levis armaturae.

armor-bearer, armĭg-er, -ĕrī, M.

arms, arm-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

army, exercĭt-us, -ūs, M. (in training); agmen, agmĭnis, N. (on the march); acies, ēī, F. (in line).

around, circā, circum (prep.+acc.).

arouse, incĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

arrival, advent-us, -ūs, M.

arrive, ad-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

arrive, at, per-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum (ad with acc.).

arrow, săgitt-a, -ae, F.

art, ars, artis, F.

as (p. 127, 2); (in place of), pro; **as**.... **so**, ut with ita in the main clause; **as**.... **as**, tam....quam; **such**....**as**, tālis ....quālis; **as if**, velut si (195, 3).

as, as though, as if, tanquam, quasi (p. 195, 3).

as (=**while**), dum (p. 201, 3).

as many as, tot quot.

as many as possible, quam plurimi.

as much as, tantum quantum.

as often as, quoties, cum (204, 4).

as soon as, simul ac (or atque), (p. 298, 2).

ascertain, cognosco, cognoscĕre, cognōvi, cognitum.

ashamed, be, pŭdet, ēre, ŭit (or -ĭtum est); **I am ashamed of my folly**, me stultitiae meae pudet (p. 165, 1).

Asia, As-ĭa, -ae, F.

ask, I (you a question), te rogo or interrogo; ex or a te quaero (quaerĕre, quaesīvī, quaesītum).

ask, I (request, beg, you), te rogo, oro, (-āre, -āvī, -ātum); abs te pĕto (pĕtĕre, pĕtīvi, pĕtītum).

ask for, I, posco, poscĕre, pŏposcī.

assault, oppugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

assemble, v.a., convŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; v.n., con-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum (intr.).

assembly, contĭ-o, -ōnis, F.; conventus, -ūs, M.; concĭlĭ-um, -ī, N.

assert (as a fact), affirmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

assist, subl ĕv-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.), sub-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum (dat.); ad-iūvo, -iūvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum (acc.).

at, ad (prep. with acc.); apud (prep. with acc.); or locative. See p. 85, 3. After verb of motion, say to (p. 85, 1): **come to me at Rome**, me Romam vēnī; of time, use abl.

Athenians, Athēnĭens-es, -ĭum, M.

Athens, Athēn-ae, -ārum, F.

attack, v., ag-grĕdior, -grĕdī, -gressus sum; (suddenly), ăd-ōrĭor, -ōrīrī, -ortus sum; (a city), oppugn-o, -āre, -āvī, ātum; impet-us, -ūs (on=in+acc.) M.

attain to, per-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum (ad).

attempt, v., con-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; tempt-o or tent-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; nītor, nīti, nīsus or nixus sum; incept-um, -ī, N.; conāt-us, -ūs, M. or cōnāt-um, -ī, N.

attribute, attrĭb-ŭo, -ŭĕre, -ŭī, -ūtum; trĭbŭo, trĭbŭĕre, trĭbŭī, trĭbūtum.

authority, pōtest-as, -ātis, F.; auctorĭt-as, -ātis, F.

autumn, autumn-us, -ī, M.

auxiliaries, auxĭlĭ-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

avarice, āvārĭtĭ-a, -ae, F.

avenge, ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum.

avert from, I, prōhĭb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum.

avoid, I, dē-fŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, fŭgĭtum (acc.).

avoid, I (a danger), vīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

away from, ā or ăb, with abl.

B.

backs, to turn their backs in flight, terga in fugam dare (do, dăre, dĕdī, dătum); terga ver-to, -tĕre, -ti, -sum.

bad, măl-us, -a, -um (comp., pēior; sup., pessimus); imprŏb-us, -a, -um.

badly, măle; comp., pēius; sup., pessime.

baggage, impĕdīment-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

bane, pernĭcĭ-es, -ēi, F.

banish, I, ex civitate pello or expello; in exĭlium pello (pellĕre, pĕpŭlī, pulsum).

banishment, exĭlĭ-um, -ī, N.

bank, rīp-a, -ae, F.

banquet, epŭl-um, -i, N. pl., epulae, F. (p. 242).

barbarian, barbăr-us, -a, -um (adj. and n.).

barbarous, crudēl-is, -e (adj.).

bark, v., latr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (of a tree) cortex, cortĭcis, M., lĭber, lĭbrī, M.

base, turp-is, -e (adj.).

baseness, turpĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F.

battle, proeli-um, -ī, N.; pugn-a, -ae, F.; to begin a battle, proelium committere; in battle, in b. array, in acie.

be, sum, esse, fŭī (p. 24).

beam, trabs, trăbis, F.

bear, urs-us, -ī, M.; v., fero, ferre, tŭlī, lātum; port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

beautiful, pulch-er, -ra, -rum (comp., pulchrior; sup., pulcherrimus); amoenus, -a, -um (of scenery).

because, quod, quia, quoniam (p. 198); often expressed by part. (p. 220, i).

become, fĭo, fĭĕrī, factus sum.

becomes, it, dĕcet, dĕcērĕ, dĕcŭit (acc.); est with gen. (p. 124, 1).

beech, fāgus, -ī, F.

before, ante (prep. with acc.); conj., antequam, priusquam (p. 201, 5); adv., ante, antĕā, antehāc (p. 82, 3).

beg, I, rŏg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. See ask.

begin, I, in-cĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum; coep-i, -isse; begin a battle, proelium committere.

beginning, the, ĭnĭtĭ-um, -ī, N.; at the beginning of winter, primā hieme, initā hieme.

behalf of, on, pro (prep. with abl.).

behold, aspĭcĭo, aspĭcĕre, aspexī aspectum.

behind, post, prep. with acc.

Belgae, Belg-ae, -ārum, M. pl.

belief, opīnī-o, -ōnis, F.

believe, I, crēd-o, -ĕre, -ĭdī, -ĭtum, with dat. (p. 105, 9).

belong, per-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, no sup.; see p. 124, 1; belonging: say which belonged.

beloved, cār-us, -a, -um (with dat.; = dear to).

beneficial, sălūtār-is, -e; ūtĭl-is, -e (adj.).

benefit you, I, tibi prōsum (prodesse, profŭī).

besiege, I (by blockade), ob-sĭdĕo, -sēdī, -sessum; (by attack), oppugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

best, p. 57, 4.

bestow, larg-ĭor, -īrī, -ītus sum.

betake myself to, I, me confero ad.

betray, I, pro-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum.

better, melior (comp. of bonus); it would have been better, satius or melius fuit.

between, inter (acc.).

beyond, prep., ultrā, trans, extrā (with acc.).

bid, iŭbĕo, iŭbēre, iussī, iussum.

bill, rŏgātĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

bird, ăv-is, -is, M. or F.

bitter, acerb-us, -a, -um (adj.).

black, nīger, nĭgra, nĭgrum; āter, ātra, ātrum (adj.).

blame, culp-a, -ae, F.; v., culp-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vitŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

blessing, bŏn-um, -i, N.

blind, caec-us, -a, -um (adj.).

blood, sangu-is, -ĭnis, M.; crŭ-or, -ōris, M.

bloody, crŭent-us, -a, -um (adj.).

blot out, dēl-ĕo, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

boat, linter, lintris, F.

body, corp-us, -ŏris, M.

body-guard, sătell-es, -ĭtis, M.

bold, audax, audācis (adj.).

boldly, audāciter or audacter, adv.

bond, vincul-um, -ī, N.

book, lĭber, lĭbrī, M.

booty, praed-a, -ae, F.

born, be, nascor, nascī, natus sum.

both, uterque, utraque, utrumque (p. 132); ambo, ambae, ambo (like duo, 68, 4).

both....and, et....et, que....que.

bound (in a geographical sense), contineo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum.

boundaries, fīn-es, -ĭum (pl.), M.

boy, pŭer, M.; from a boy, a pŭero.

bow, arc-us, -ūs, M.

branch, rām-us, -ī, M.

brandish, iact-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

brave, fort-is, -e; bravely, fortĭter.

bravery, fortĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F.

break, frango, frangĕre, frēgi, fractum; b. through, per-fringo, -fringĕre, -frēgi, -fractum; b. one's word, fidem fallo (fallĕre, fefelli, falsum).

bridge, pons, pontis, M.

briefly, brĕvĭter; as b. as possible, quam brevissime.

brigand, latr-o, -ōnis, M.

bright, clār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

bring, I, dūco, dūcĕre, duxī, ductum (a person); affero, afferre, attŭli, allātum (a thing); **bring up**, erūdīo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; **bring back word**, rĕnunti-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **bring a person before you**, ad te aliquem adducere; **bring forward a bill**, rogationem fero (ferre, tŭli, lātum).

Britain, Britanni-a, -ae, F.

Britons, Britann-ī, -ōrum, M. pl.

broad, lāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

brother, frāter, frātris, M.

Brundusium, Brundusi-um, -i, N.

Brutus, Brut-us, -i, M., one of the conspirators against Caesar.

build, aedĭfic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

building, aedĭfĭcĭ um, -ī, N.

burden, ŏnus, ŏnĕris, N.

burdensome, mŏlest-us, -a, -um; grăv-is, -e (adj.).

burn, crĕm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; incendo, incendĕre, incendi, incensum.

bushel, mŏdĭ-us, -i, M.

business (the), rēs, rēī, F.; nĕgōtium, -ī, N.

but, sed; verum (emphatic); (only), tantum, mŏdo; (unless), nisi; (except), praeter (prep. with acc.).

butcher, trŭcīd-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

buy, ĕmo, ĕmĕre, ēmī, emptum.

by (of a person after a passive verb), ā or ăb (p. 71, 2); dat. of agent (173, 4); abl. of means (p. 71, 3); per (prep. with acc.), of indir. agent; **by day**, interdiū; **by night**, noctū.

C.

Caesar, Caes-ar, -ăris, M.

calamity, călămĭt-as, -ātis, F.

call, vŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **call together**, convŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -atum.

calling (after forbid), use inf.

call out, ēvŏco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **call by name**, appell-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

calm, tranquill-us, ă-, -um (adj.).

calmness, tranquillĭt-as, -ātis, F.

camp, castra, -ōrum (pl., N.).

can, possum, posse, pŏtŭī (p. 142); (=may), licet, impers. with a dat. (p. 162, 3; 163, 5); 139 (*a*), (in deliberative questions).

candid, līb-er, -ĕra, -ĕrum (adj.).

candidate for, I am a, pĕt-o, -ĕre, -īvī, -ītum.

candidly, lĭbĕre, aperte, adv.

Cannae, Cann-ae, -ārum (pl.), F.

cannot, non possum; nĕqu-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or ĭī), -ĭtum.

capital, căput, căpĭtis, N.

caprice, lībīd-o, -ĭnis, F.

capture: use **take**.

care, cūr-a, -ae, F.

careful for, I am, căveo (căvēre, cāvī, cautum); **I am careful for you**, tibi caveo.

carefully, dīlĭgenter, adv.

carry (=bear), fero, ferre, tŭli, lātum; port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **carry on war**, bellum gĕro (gerere, gessī, gestum); **carry out**, ex-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus sum; con-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum; **carry across**, transport-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **carry out of the country**, export-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Cassius, Cassī-us, -ī, M.

cast, con-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -ĭcī, -iectum; **cast away**, ab-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -ĭēcī, -iectum.

Castĭcus, Casti-cus, -ī, M.

catch, căpĭo, căpĕre, cēpī, captum.

cattle (in general), pĕc-us, -ŏris, N.; (of a single head), pĕcus, pĕcŭdis, F.

cause, caus-a, -ae, F.; v., ef-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum; with ut+subj. for Eng. to (p. 181, 3).

cavalry, ĕquĭt-es, -um, M. pl.; adj., equest-er, -ris, -re.

cave, antr-um, -ī, N.; căv-um, -ī, N.

cease, I, dē-sĭno, -sĭnĕre, -sīvi (sĭī), -sĭtum; de-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, no sup. (with abl.; p. 158, 2).

Cecrops, Cecrops, Cecrŏpis, M.

celebrated, clār-us, -a, -um; insign-is, -e (adj.); **the celebrated Cicero**, Cicero, vir clarissimus or ille C. (adjs. are not added to proper names).

central, mĕdī-us, -a, -um (adj.); **a central place**, locus medius.

centurion, centŭrĭ-o, -ōnis, M.

century, centŭrĭ-a, -ae, F.

certain (sure), cert-us, -a, -um (adj.).

certain (one), **a**, quidam, quaedam, quoddam.

chain, catēn-a, -ae, F.; vincŭl-um, -i, N.

chance, cās-us, -ūs, M.; fortūn-a, -ae, F.; **by chance**, forte, cāsū.

change, I, mūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; n., commūtātī-o, -ōnis, F.

character, turn by a dependent clause (p. 181, 1).

character (natural), ingĕnĭ-um, -ī, N. ; indŏl-es, -is, F.

character (good), virt-us, -ūtis, F.

character (mode of life), mōr-ēs, -um, M., pl. ; **the highest character**, mores optimī.

character, of the same c. as, talis . . . qualis.

characteristic of, it is: see p. 124, 1.

charge (accusation), crīmen, -ĭnis, N.

charge (of troops), impĕt-us, M. ; **make a charge**, in-vādo, -vādĕre, -vāsī, -vasum ; impetum facere (on = in).

charged, I am (with), accūs-or, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 281, 12).

chariot, essĕd-um, -i, N. ; curr-us, -ūs, M.

charioteer, essĕdārĭ-us, -ī, M.

check, mŏdĕr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum (with dative) ; tempĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dative) ; coerc-eo, -ēre, -ŭi, -itum.

cheer, clām-or, -ōris, M.

cheer, v. a., hort-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

cheerful, hĭlăr-is, -e ; ălăc-er, -ris, -re (adj.).

cheerfully, făcīle, adv.

cherish, tŭĕor, tuērī, tŭĭtus sum.

chief, princeps, princĭpis, M. (n. and adj.).

child, pŭer, pŭĕrī, M.

children, pueri, M. ; lĭbĕr-ī, -ōrum, M. pl.

choose, I (like), mihi libet (impers.).

choose, I, ēligo, ēlĭgĕre, ēlēgi, electum ; crĕ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Cicero, Cĭcĕr-o, -ōnis, M.

Cimon, Cĭm-on, -ōnis, M.

circumstances, res, rēī, F. ; **I yield to circumstances**, tempŏrī cedo.

citadel, arx, arcis, F.

citizen, cīv-is, -is, M. and F.

city, urbs, urbis, F.

civil, cīvīl-is, -ĕ (adj.).

civilization, hūmānĭt-as, -ātis, F.

civilized, hūmān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

clamor for, flāgĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).

class, gĕn-us, -ĕrĭs, N.

clear, cert-us, -a, -um ; mănĭfest-us, -a, -um (adj.).

clear, it is, appār-et, -ēre, -uit ; manifestum est (p. 109, 1) ; **I clear myself of the charge** ; me de crimine (or simply crimine) purgo.

clemency, clēmentī-a, -ae, F.

clerk, scrīb-a, -ae, M.

client, **my**, hic (p. 118, 2).

cloak, tŏg-a, -ae, F., **the military cloak**, pălūdāment-um, -i, N.

close, I, claudo, claudĕre, clausi, clausum ; **close up**, inter-clūdo, -clūdĕre, -clūsi, -clūsum.

close to, prope ad (acc.).

close at hand, prope, iuxtā.

clothe, vesti-o, -īre, -īvī (īi), -ītum.

clothing, vestīt-us, -ūs, M. ; vest-is, -is, F.

cloud, nūb-ēs, -is, F.

coast, ōr-a, -ae, F. ; **sea coast**, ora maritĭma ; lĭt-us, -ōris, N.

coast along, v., praeter-vĕhor, -vĕhi, -vectus sum (with acc.).

cohort, cŏhor-s, -tis, F.

cold, frīgĭd-us, -a, -um (adj.) ; frīgus, -ōris, N.

colleague, collēg-a, -ae, M.

collect, compăr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

colony, cŏlōnĭ-a, -ae, F.

column, cŏlumn-a, -ae, F.

come, vĕnio, vĕnīre, vēni, ventum ; **c. away**, discēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessi, -cessum.

command, n., impĕrĭ-um, -i, N. ; impĕrāt-um, -i, N.

command, I, impĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat.) ; (be at head of), praesum (with dat.).

commander, impĕrāt-or, -ōris, M. ; praefect-us, -i, M. ; dux, dŭcis, M.

commence, in-cīpĭo, -cīpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum ; coep-i, -isse.

commencement, ĭnĭtĭ-um, -ī, M.

commit, I (a crime), facĭnus ad-mitto (-mittĕre, -mīsi, -missum).

common, commūn-is, -e, adj.

commonwealth, respublica, reīpublicae, F.

communicate, I (= impart to), commūnĭco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cum).

companion, sŏcĭ-us, -ī, M. ; sŏdāl-is, -is, M. ; cōm-es, -ĭtis, M.

company with, in, cum (prep. with abl.).

compare, con-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭli, collātum.

compassion, mīsĕricordī-a, -ae, F.

compel, cōgo, cōgĕre, cōēgī, cōactum.

complain, quĕror, quĕrī, questus sum.

complaint, p. 219, (*g*).

comrade, commīlĭt-o, -ōnis, M.

conceal, cēl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (92, 3).

concerning, de (prep. with abl.).

concerns, it, pertinet ad (with acc.); p. 166, 3.

condemn, condemn-o, -āre, āvī, -ātum (for = gen.).

condition (lot), fortūna, -ae, F.; (terms), condĭcī-o, -ōnis, F.

conference, I have a, collŏquor, -lŏquī, -lŏcūtus sum.

confess, fătĕor, fătērī, fassus sum, confĭtĕor, -fĭtērī, -fessus sum.

confidence, fīdūcĭa, -ae, F.; fīdes, -ēī, F.

confidence in, I have, confīdo, -fīdere, -fīsus sum; fĭdem alicui habeo.

congratulate, I c. you on this, hoc (acc.), ob hanc rem, de hac re, tibi gratūl-or (-ārī, -ātus sum).

conquer, vinco, vincĕre, vīcī, victum; sŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

conquered, victus, -a, -um (p.p. of vinco).

conqueror, vict-or, -ōris, M.

consciousness, sens-us, -ūs, M.; conscienti-a, -ae, F.

consent of Caesar, with the, Caesăre volente.

consequence, it is of c. to me, meā interest or rĕfert (p. 166, 3).

consider, I, arbĭtr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; (hold, think), habeo, duco.

consist of, consist-o, -ĕre, -stĭti (in + abl.).

consolation to me, it is a great, magno sōlātio mihi est (p. 134, 1).

conspiracy, coniūrātī-o, -ōnis, F.

conspire, coniūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

consul, cons-ul, -ŭlis, M.

consulship, consulāt-us, -ūs; **in the c. of Caesar**, Caesăre consŭle.

consult, consŭlo, consŭlĕre, consŭlŭi, consultum (with acc.).

content(ed), content-us, -ă, -um (with abl.), (p. 283, 9).

continent, continĕn-s, -tis (supply terra).

contrary to, contra, prep. with acc.

conversation, serm-ō, -ōnis, M.; **I have a conversation with you**, tecum collŏquor.

convoke, convŏco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Corinth, Cŏrinth-us, ī, F.

corn, frument-um, -ī, N.

costs, it, stat (p. 150, 1).

cottage, căs-a, -ae, F.

council, concĭlĭ-um, -ī, F.

could: see **can** (p. 163, 5, note).

count, I (= I number), nŭmĕro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (= I hold), habeo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum; dūco, dūcere, duxī, ductum.

country, one's, pātrī-a, -ae, F.

country, the (= the state), respublica, reipublicae, F.; cīvĭt-as, -ātis, F.

country (as distinct from the town), rus, rūris, N.; **from the country**, rure (abl.); **to the country**, rus (acc.); **in the country**, rūri (locative; p. 86).

countryman, cīv-is, -is, M.

courage, virt-us, -ūtis, F.; fortĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F.

course, I take this, haec facio.

court, aul-a, -ae, F.; iūdĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.

cover, tĕgo, tĕgĕre, texi, tectum.

coward, cowardly, ignāv-us, -a, -um; tīmĭd-us, -a, -um (adj.).

cowardice, ignāvĭ-a, -ae, F.

crave for, I, dēsīdĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

credible, it is scarcely, vix credi potest.

credit, fām-a, -ae, F.

crime, făcĭn-us, -ŏris, N.; scĕl-us, -ĕris, N.

criminal, scĕlĕrāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

crisis, discrīm-en, -ĭnis, N.; temp-us, -ŏris, N.

cross, I, transcĕo, -īre, -īvī (or -ĭī), -ĭtum (acc.).

crowd, multĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F.; turb-a, -ae, F.; v., circum-fundo, -fundere, -fūdi, -fusum (se).

crown, cŏrōn-a, -ae, F.; (= a kingdom), regnum, -i, N.

cruel, crūdēl-is, -e; saev-us, -a, -um, (adj.).

cruelly, crudēlĭter; saeve, adv.

cruelty, crudēlĭt-as, -ātis, F.; saevĭtĭa, -ae, F.

cry, n., clām-or, -ōris, M.; v., clām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

cultivate, cŏlo, cŏlĕre, cŏlŭī, cultum.

culture, cult-us, -ūs, M.; humānĭt-as, -ātis, F.

Cures, Cūr-ēs, -ĭum, F.

Curius, Cūrĭ-us, -i, M.

custom, mos, mōris, M.; consuētūd-o, -ĭnis, F.

cut, sĕco, sĕcāre, sĕcŭī, sectum.

D.

dagger, pŭgĭ-o, -ōnis, M.; sĭc-a, -ae, F.

daily, quotīdie; with comparatives or words denoting increase or diminution, in dies.

danger, pĕrīcŭl-um, -ī, M.

dangerous, pĕrīcŭlōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

dare, audĕo, audēre, ausus sum.

daring, audax, audācis (adj.).

dark (metaphorically applied to crime), ātrox, ātrōcis (adj.).

dark (literally), ater, atra, atrum; obscūr-us, -a, -um.

dart, tēl-um, -ī, N.; ĭăcŭl-um, -ī, N.

daughter, fīlĭ-a, -ae, F. (p. 6, 2).

day (opposed to night), dies, diēī, M. or F.; (opposed to darkness), lux, lūcis, F.; **daybreak**, prima lux; **day after day**, diem ex die; **the day before**, prīdiē; **for the day**, in diem.

deadly, mortĭ-fer, -fĕra, -fĕrum (adj.).

dear, cār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

death, mors, mortis, F.

debt, aes ălīēnum; gen., aeris alieni.

deceive, I, de-cīpĭo, -cīpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum.

decide on, I (resolve), constĭtŭo, -stĭtuĕre, -stĭtŭī, -stĭtūtum (inf.); statuo, stătŭĕre, stătŭī, statūtum; (pass judgment on), iūdĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; de-cerno, -cernĕre, -crēvī, -crētum (de).

decision, iūdĭci-um, -i, N.

declare, dīco, dīcere, dixi, dictum.

declare (war) I, indīco, -dīcere, -dixī, -dictum.

decree, I, v., dē-cerno, -cernĕre, -crēvī, -crētum; dēcrētum, -ī, N.

deed, -făcĭn-us, -ōris, N.; fact-um, ī, N.

deep, alt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

defeat, n., clād-es, -is, F.

defeat, v., vinco, vincĕre, vīcī, victum; sŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

defend, defendo, defendĕre, defendi, defensum.

defile, n., angustī-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.); salt-us, -ūs, M.

delay, v., mŏr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum (tr. and intr.); cunct-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; mŏra, -ae, F.

deliberate, delībĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

deliberation, there is need of, opus est consulto (p. 166, 2).

delight, I, delect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (trans.); gaudĕo, gaudēre, gavisus sum (intr.).

delightful, amoenus, -a, -um (of scenery); pulch-er, -ra, -rum.

deliver (hand down), trādo, trādĕre, trādidī, trāditum; reddo, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum; (free), lībĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **deliver a speech**, orātionem habēre; **after the speech was d.**, abl. abs. (220).

Delphi, Delph-ī, -ōrum, M. pl.

demand, postŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; flāgĭto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; posco, poscĕre, pŏposcī, no sup. (p. 92, 3).

Demosthenes, Demosthĕnes, -is, M.

dense, dens-us, -a, -um (adj.).

deny, I, nĕg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

depart, I (=go away), ab-eo, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ĭtum; dis-cēdo, -cedĕre, -cessi, -cessum.

descend, de-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendi, -scensum.

desert, deserto, -sĕrĕre, -sĕrŭī, -sertum.

deserter, transfŭg-a, -ae, M.; perfŭg-a, -ae, M.

deserve, I, mĕrĕor, mĕrērī, meritus sum; mĕrĕo, mĕrēre, mĕrŭi, mĕrĭtum.

deserving of, dignus, -a -um (with abl.).

design, n., consĭlĭ-um, -i, N.

designedly, consulto, adv.

desire, I, cŭpĭo, cŭpĕre, cŭpīvī (iī), cŭpītum.

desirous, be d. of, cŭp-io, -ĕre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum (+inf.).

despair of, I, despēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -atum (acc.).

despatch, litter-ae, -ārum (pl. F.); v., mitto.

despise, con-temno, -temnĕre; -tempsī, -temptum; de-spicio, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum.

despoil, spŏlī-o, -āre, etc.

despot, dŏmĭn-us, -ī, M.

despotism, dŏmĭnāt-us, -ūs, M.

destined, fātāl-is, -e (adj.).

destiny, fāt-um, -ī, N.

destitution, ĕgest-as, -ātis, F.

destroy, dēl-ĕo, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum; vast-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

destruction, exĭtĭ-um, -ī, N.; pernĭcī-es, -ēī, F.

detain, rĕ-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum.

deter, deterr-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum.

determine, con-stĭtŭo, -stĭtŭĕre, -stĭtŭī, -stĭtūtum (+inf.).

devastate, vast-o, -āre, -āvī, -atum.

devote myself to, I, operam do (with dat.).

devour, dēvŏr-o, -āre, -āvī, -atum.

dictator, dictāt-or, -ōris, M.

did: see **do**.

did the boy wound? Use perf. of **wound**.

die, mŏrĭor, mŏrī, mortŭus sum.

differ, differo, differre, distŭli, no sup.; **to differ from each other**, inter se differre.

difference to us, it makes no, nihil nostrā interest (p. 166, 3).

differently from, aliter ac.

difficult, difficĭl-is, -e (adj.).

difficulty, difficult-as, -ātis, F.

diligence, dĭlĭgentĭ-a, -ae, F.

diligent, dĭligen-s, -tis (adj.).

diligently, dĭligenter.

din, strĕpĭt-us, -ūs, M.

dinner, cēn-a, -ae, F.

direct, iŭbĕo, iŭbēre, iussi, iussum (acc.); impĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (dat.).

directions, in both, utrimque; **in different d.**, diverse; **in all d.**, undīque.

disagree, I, dis-sentĭo, -sentīre, -sensī, -sensum.

disagreement, dissensĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

disaster, cās-us, -ūs, M.; călămĭt-as, -ātis, F.

discharge the duties of, I, fungor, fungī, functus sum (p. 116).

discipline, disciplīn-a, -ae, F.

discourse, serm-o, -ōnis, M.

discover: see **ascertain**.

disease, morb-us, -ī, M.

disembark, I (act.), ex-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭi, -pŏsĭtum; neut., ēgrĕdĭor, egrĕdī, egressus sum.

disgrace, ignōmĭnĭ-a, -ae, F.; turpĭtūd-o, F., -ĭnis.

disgraceful, turp-is, -e (adj.).

dismay, păv-or, -ōris, M.

dismiss, dī-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum.

displease, dis-plĭcĕo, -plĭcēre, -plĭcŭī, -plĭcĭtum.

disposition, ingĕnĭ-um, -ī, N.; indŏl-es, -is, F.

dissatisfied, I am d. with myself, mei me poenitet (p. 165, 1).

dissemble, dissĭmŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

dissension, dissensĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

distance, spătĭ-um, -ī, N.

distance from, I am at a, ab-sum, -esse, -fŭī (ab).

distant, longinqu-us, -a, -um (adj.); **be d.**, absum.

distinguished, clār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

district, rĕgĭ-o, -ōnis, F.; lŏc-us, -ī, M.; pl. lŏca, -ōrum, N. (p. 242).

distrust, dif-fīdo, -fīdĕre, -fīsus sum (with a dat.).

disturb, turb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

ditch, foss-a, -ae, F.

Divico, Dīvĭc-o, -ōnis, M.

divide, dī-vīdo, -vīdĕre, -vīsī, -vīsum.

divine, dīvīn-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Divitiacus, Dīvĭtĭăc-us, -ī, M.

do, făcio, făcĕre, fēcī, factum (p. 216, 1).

dog, cănis, -is, M. or F.

doom, fāt-um, -ī, N.

door, iānŭ-a, -ae, F.

doubt, v., dūbĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **there is no doubt that**, non est dubium quin (p. 188, 6).

doubtful, dūbĭ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

drag, I, trăho, trăhĕre, traxī, tractum.

draw, I, trăho. See above.

draw up a law, I, legem scrībo, (scribĕre, scripsī, scriptum).

draw up an army, I, aciem instruo (instrŭĕre, instruxi, instructum); **after the army was drawn up**, acie instructā (p. 100, 5).

dread, I, rĕformīd-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

dreadful, ātrox, ātrōcis (adj.).

dress, vest-is, -is, F.; vestīt-us, -ūs, M.

drink, bĭb-o, -ĕrĕ, bĭbi.

drinking, good for, utĭlis bibendo (p. 60, 2).

drive, pello, pellĕre, pĕpŭli, pulsum; ăgo, ăgĕre, ēgī, actum.

due, use pass. of dēb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum.

during (=in), abl. (82, 1); (all through), acc., p. 82, 4; **d. the reign**, p. 100, 5.

dust, pulv-is, -ĕris, M.

duty, offĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.; see p. 124.

dwell, hăbĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

dwelling, aedĭfĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.; tect-um, -ī, N.

E.

each (one), quisque (never first in sentence), quaeque, quodque (adj.) and quidque (subst.); unusquisque; (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (p. 132); inter se (p. 223).

each other, alius....alius; alter....alter (p. 26); inter se (p. 223).

eager for, āvīdus, -a, -um (with gen.).

eagle, āquīl-a, -ae, F.

eagle-bearer, āquīlīf-er, -ĕrī, M.

early, mātūr-us, -a, -um; **in early spring**, vēre novo.

earth, the, terr-a, -ae, F.

easily, făcīl-e.

east wind, Eur-us, -ī, M.

easy, făcīl-is, -e (p. 57, 2).

eat (p. 160).

educate, ēdŭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

effort, cōnāt-us, -ūs, M.; cōnāt-um, -i, N.

Egypt, Aegypt-us, -i, F.

eight, octo.

eighteen, duodeviginti.

either....or, aut...aut[1]; vel...vel.[2]

elect, crĕ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **be elected**, fīo, fĭĕri, factus sum.

elephant, ĕlĕphant-us, -i, M.

eloquence, ēlŏquentī-a, -ae, F.

eloquent, elŏ-quens (-quentior, -quentissimus).

else, or, aut.

embark (trans.), in navem imponere; (intr.) navem conscendere.

emergency, temp-us, -ŏris, N.

empire, impĕrī-um, -i, N.

employ, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (p. 283, 10).

empty, ĭnān-is, -e; văcŭ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

encamp, castra pōno (pōnĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum); castra lŏco (āre, āvī, ātum).

enact (a law), promulg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; perfero.

encourage, adhort-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

end, fīn-is, -is, M.; **at the e. of summer**, extremā aestāte; v., con-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum (tr.); fīn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (tr. and intr.).

endeavor, I, cōn-or, -āri, -ātus sum; nītor, niti, nisus or nixus sum (p. 216, 3).

endowed with, praedīt-us, -a, -um (with abl.).

endure, tŏlĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

enemy (private), ĭnīmīc-us, -ī, M.; (public), host-is, -is, M.

engage in battle, proelium committo, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum.

engine (of war), torment-um, -ī, N.

enjoy, frŭor, frŭī, fructus sum (with abl., p. 116); (=to have), habeo.

enmity, ĭnīmīcĭti-a, -ae, F.

enough, sătis, adv.

enquire: see **inquire**.

enquiry, gerund of **enquire**.

enroll (soldiers), con-scrībo, -scrīběre, -scripsī, -scriptum.

enter, ĭn-ĕo, -īre, -īvī, -ĭtum (acc., p. 277, 1).

enterprise, res, rēī, F.

entirely, tot-us, -a, -um (p. 26, 1).

entrust, per-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum.

enumerate, ēnŭmĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

envoy, lēgāt-us, -i, M.

envy, n., invīdī-a, -ae, F.; in-vīdĕo, -vīdēre, -vīdī, -vīsum (dat., p. 278, foot note).

Ephesus, Ephĕs-us, -ī, F.

equal, aequ-us, -a, -um; pār, păris (=equal to); **I make e.**, aequ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

equally, părĭter, aeque.

err, I, err-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

error, err-or, -ōris, M.

escape, ef-fŭgio, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum.

establish, confirm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; stātŭo, stātŭĕre, stātŭī, stātūtum.

estimate, aestĭm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

estimation, aestĭmātī-o, -ōnis, F.

eternal, sempĭtern-us, -a, -um (adj.).

even, etiam; quŏque (used after an emphatic word); before an adj., vel; **not ...even**, ne..quidem (with the emphasized word put between); ne unus quidem, **not even one**.

evening, vesp-er, -ĕris, M.; **in the e.**, vespĕrī (or -e).

ever, unquam.

[1] One alternative excluding the other: as, Aut scrībit aut lēgit, **he is either writing or reading.**

[2] Giving a choice: as, Par erat vel mōribus vel fortūnā, **he was equal either in character or in fortune.**

every (=all), omn-is, -e; quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque (p. 132).

every day. See **daily.**

evident, mănĭfest-us, -a, -um (adj.); **it is e.,** appār-et, -ēre, -ŭit.

exact (punishment), sūmo, sūmĕre, sumpsi, sumptum.

excellent, optĭm-us, -a, -um; excellen-s, -tis (adj.).

except, praeter (acc.).

except (to), nisi (ut).

excessive, nīmī-us, -a, -um (adj.).

exchange for, I, mūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 150, 1, note).

excite, excĭto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

execute, con-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum.

exercise, v., exerc-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum.

exhort, hort-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

exile, ex-ul, -ŭlis, M.; exĭlĭ-um, -i, N. (of a condition).

exist, I, sum, esse, fŭī.

expect, ex-spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; spēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

expedient, utĭl-is, -e (adj.); **it is expedient** (p. 163, 6).

expediency, ūtĭlĭt-as, -ātis, F.

expel, pello, -ĕre, pepŭli, pulsum.

experience, ūs-us, -ūs, M.; experĭĕntĭ-a, -ae, F.

explain, ex-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pōsŭi, -pŏsĭtum.

extent, p. 69, 9.

extortion, repetund-ae, -ārum, F. pl. [lit. of things that should be got back (repĕto); supply rerum].

extreme, extrēm-us, -a, -um (adj.).

exult, exult-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

eye, ŏcŭl-us, -i, M.; **I saw it with my own eyes,** ipse id vīdi.

F.

face, ōs, ōris, N.; făcĭ-es, -ēī, F.; vult-us, -ūs, M.

fact, rēs, rēī, F. (p. 181, 2).

faction, factĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

fail, de-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum (used with or without acc.); de-sum, -esse, -fŭi (with dat.).

fair, pulch-er, -ra, -rum; ămoen-us, -a, -um (of scenery).

faith, fĭd-es, -ēī, F.; **I put faith in you,** tibi fidem habeo.

faithful, fīdēl-is, -e (adj.).

faithfulness, fĭd-es, -ēī, F.

fall, cădo, cădĕre, cĕcĭdī, cāsum; **fall in battle,** pĕr-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or ĭī), -ĭtum; **fall into,** in-cĭdo, -cĭdĕre, -cĭdī (with in and acc.); **fall headlong,** praecĭpĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **fall into ruin,** corruo, corrŭĕre, corrŭi.

false (of persons), mend-ax, -ācis; (of things), fals-us, -a, -um; fict-us, -a, -um.

falsehood, mendācĭ-um, -ī, N.; **to tell a falsehood,** mentĭor, mentītus sum.

falsely, speak, ment-ĭor, -īrī, -ītus sum.

fame, fām-a, -ae, F.; glōrĭ-a, F.

family, n., famĭlĭ-a, -ae, F.

family, dŏmestĭ-cus, -ca, -cum (adj.).

famine, făm-es, -is, F.

famous, praeclār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

far (=distant), longinqu-us, -a, -um (adj.).

far, by, multo.

far off, adv., prŏcul, longe.

far and wide, lātē.

farmer, agrĭcŏl-a, -ae, M.

farm-house, vill-a, -ae, F.

farther, ultĕrior, -is (from ultra).

fate, fortūna, -ae, F.; sor-s, -tis, F.

fatal, pernĭcĭōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

father, păter, patris, M.

father-in-law, sŏcer, sŏcĕrī, M.

fault, culp-a, -ae, F.; vītĭ-um, -ī, N.

fault, I find f. with, culp-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

fault, I commit a, pecc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

favor (=kindness), bĕnĕfĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.

favor, I, făvĕo, făvēre, fāvī, fautum (with dat., p. 278, foot note).

fear, n., mĕt-us, -ūs, M.; tĭm-or, -ōris, M.

fear, I, v., mĕtŭo, mĕtŭĕre, mĕtŭī, no supine; tĭmĕo, tĭmēre, tĭmŭī, no sup.; vĕrĕor, vĕrērī, vĕrĭtus sum.

feast, cēn-a, -ae, F.; ĕpŭl-um, -ī, N.; pl., ĕpŭlae, -ārum, F. (p. 242).

feather, pinn-a, -ae, F.

features, vult-us, -ūs, M.

feel, sentĭo, sentīre, sensī, sensum.

feeling, ănĭm-us, -ī, M.

fellow-citizen, cīv-is, -is, M.

fertile, fertĭl-is, -e (adj.).

fertility, cōpi-a, -ae, F.

fetters, căten-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).

few, pauc-ī, -ae, -a; **very few**, perpauc-ī, -ae, -a (adj.).

fidelity, fīd-es, -ēī, F.

field, ăger, ăgrī, M.

field of battle, ăcĭes, ăcĭēī, F.

field, in the (opposed to "at home"), mīlĭtiae (p. 86).

fierce (spirited), fĕr-ox, -ōcis; ātrox, atrōcis; saev-us, -a, -um (adj.).

fiercely, ferōciter; atrōciter; saeve.

fifteen, quindĕcim.

fifth, quin-tus, -a, -um (adj.).

fifty, quinquāginta.

fight, pugn-a, -ae, F.; proeli-um, -i, N.; v., pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dimic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

fill, com-plĕo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum; replĕo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum.

find (after a search), rĕpĕrĭo, rĕpertre, rĕpĕrī, repertum; (come on suddenly), in-vĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

find fault with, culp-o, -āre, etc., vĭtŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

find out, reperio. See **find**.

fine, pulch-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

finish, con-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum; fĭn-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

fir, abĭes, abĭētis, F.

fire, ign-is, -is, M.

fire and sword, with, ferro et igni.

firm, firm-us, -a, -um; (of character), fort-is, -e (adj.).

first, prīm-us, -a, -um; **I was the first to do it**, hoc primus feci.

fit for, apt-us, -a, -um (adj.), (with dat., p. 60, 2).

five, quinque.

flag, sign-um, -ī, N.

flank, lăt-us, -ĕris, N.

flash, fulg-ŭr, -ŭris, N.

flee, vŏl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; fŭgĭo, fŭgĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum.

flee to, advŏl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).

fleet, class-is, -is, F.

flesh, cāro, carnis, F.

flight, fŭg-a, -ae, F.

fling at, pro-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -ĭēci, -iectum; **f. away**, ăb-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -ĭēcī, -iectum.

flock, grex, grĕgis, M.

flourishing in wealth, ŏpŭlent-us, -a, -um (adj.).

flow, flŭo, flŭĕre, fluxī, fluxum; **flow down**, de-flŭo, -flŭĕre, -flūxi, -fluxum.

flower, flos, flōris, M.

fly, vŏl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; fŭgĭo, fŭgĕre, fūgī, fŭgĭtum.

foe (public), host-is, -is, M. or F.; (private), ĭnīmīc-us, -ī, M.

follow, sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtus sum; **it follows that**, sequitur ut.

follower, use pres. part. of sequor.

following day, dies postĕrus; **on the following day**, die postero; postrīdiē.

folly, stultĭtĭ-a, -ae, F.

fond, ăvĭdus, -a, -um (adj.).

food, vict-us, -ūs; cib-us, -i, M.

foolish, stult-us, -ă, -um (adj.).

foot, pes, pĕdis, M.; **on f.**, use abl. pl.; **foot of hill, tree**, etc., use īmus (p. 59, 1, note).

foot-soldier, pĕdes, pĕdĭtis, M.

for, prep., pro. (with abl.; p. 224); (on account of), prae (abl.); of time, p. 69, 9.

for gold, abl. (p. 150, 1).

for, conj., nam; enim (after first emphatic word).

for some time past, iamdūdum [p. 216, 2, (*b.*)].

forage, pābŭl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

forbid, vĕto, vĕtāre, vĕtŭī, vĕtĭtum.

force, vis, F. (p. 45); (army), = forces; v., cōgo, cōgĕre, cōegi, cōactum.

forces, cōpĭae, -ārum, F. pl.

forefathers, maiōr-es, -um, pl. M.

foreign, extern-us, -a, -um (adj.).

foreigner, peregrīn-us, -ī, M.

foremost, prīm-us, -a, -um (adj.).

foresee, pro-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum.

forest, silv-a, -ae, F.

foretell, prae-dīco, -dīcĕre, -dixi, -dictum.

forget, oblīviscor, oblīvisci, oblītus sum (p. 146, 7).

form a plan, consilium in-eo [-īre, -īvī (or -iī), -ĭtum].

form a league, foedus ferīre.

form a line of battle, aciem instruo (-strŭĕre, -struxi, -structum).

former, prī-or, prī-us; **of former days**, pristīn-us, -a, -um.

formerly, ōlim.

fort, castell-um, -ī, N.

fortify, mūn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

fortress, arx, arcis, F.; castell-um, -ī, N.

fortunate, fēlix, fēlicis; fortunāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

fortune, fortūn-a, -ae, F.

foul, foed-us, -a, -um, adj.

foully, nēfāriē.

found, con-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum.

four, quattuor.

fourteen, quattuordĕcim.

fourth, quart-us, -a, -um, adj.

free, adj., līb-er, -ĕra, -ĕrum; expers, expertis (with abl.; p. 64, 4); v., liber-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

freedom, lībert-as, -ātis, F.

freedwoman, lībert-a, -ae, F.

fresh, rĕcens, rĕcentis, adj.

friend, ămīc-us, -ī, M.

friendly, ămīc-us, -a, -um (adj.).

friendship, ămīcĭtī-a, -ae, F.

frequent, crēber, crebra, crebrum (adj.).

frog, rāna, rānae, F.

from, a or ab (with abl.); de (abl.); p. 158, 2.

front, frons, frontis, F.; **on the (in) front**, a fronte.

frost, frīg-us, -ŏris, N.

fruit, fruct-us, -ūs, M.; frūg-es, -um, F., pl.

fugitive, fŭgĭtīv-us, -ī, M.

full, plēn-us, -a, -um (with gen. or abl.).

funeral, fūn-us, -ĕris, N.

further, adj., ultĕri-or, -ōris (adj.).

fury, īr-a, -ae, F.

future, the, fūtūr-a, -orum (N. pl.).

future, in, or for the, in futūrum; in postĕrum.

G.

gain, ēmŏlŭment-um, -i, N.; lucr-um, -i, N.

gain, possession of, pŏtĭor, pŏtīrī, pŏtītus sum (with abl.).

games, lūd-ī, -ōrum, M.

garden, hort-us, -ī, M.

Garonne, Garumn-a, -ae, M.

garrison, praesĭdī-um, -ī, N.

gate, port-a, -ae, F.

gather together (trans.), compăr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (intr.), con-vĕnio, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

Gaul, the country now called *France*, Gallī-a, -ae, F.

Gaul, a, an inhabitant of Gallia, Gall-us, -i, M.

gaze at or **on**, spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

general, dux, dŭcis, M.; impĕrāt-or, -ōris, M.

Geneva, Gĕnēv-a, -ae, F.

gentle, mīt-is, -e; lēn-is, -e (adj.).

gently, lēnĭter.

German, Germān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

get, ac-quīro, -quīrĕre, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum; as-sĕquor, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtus sum.

gift, dōn-um, -ī, N.

girl, pŭell-a, -ae, F.

give, dōn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; do, dăre, dĕdī, dătum; **g. notice**, say "inform;" **give up** (=surrender), dē-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum; (=hand down), trā-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum.

glad, laet-us, -a, -um; līben-s, lībentis (adj.); **I am g. to do it**, hoc libenter facio.

gladly, laete, libenter.

globe, orbis terrārum.

glorious, praeclār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

glory, glōrī-a, -ae, F.

go, ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum; (be about to), p. 174, 1.

go away, ăb-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum.

go out, ex-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum; ex-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or -ĭī), -ĭtum.

God, Dĕus, Dĕī (p. 13, 2).

goddess, dĕ-a, -ae, F. (p. 6, 2).

gold, aur-um, -ī; **for g.**, p. 150, 1.

golden (gold), aurĕ-us, -ă, -um, adj.

good, bonus, -a, -um (p. 20); comp., melior; sup., optimus.

goods, merx, mercis, F.

govern, rĕgo, rĕgĕre, rexī, rectum; gŭbern-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

governor, praefect-us, -ī, M.

gradually, paulātim.

grandfather, ăvus, ăvī, M.

Granicus, Grānīc-us, -ī, M.

grateful, grāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

grain, frūment-um, -ī, N.

gratitude, grātī-a, -ae, F.; **I show gratitude**, gratiam refĕro (referre, rettŭli, relatum); **I feel g.**, gratiam hăb-ĕo (-ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum).

great, magn-us, -a, -um; **of great size**, ingens, ingentis (adj.); **so g.**, tantus.

greatly, magnopere (adv.); comp., măgis; sup., maxime.

Greece, Graecī-a, -ae, F.

greedy, āvid-us, -a, -um; ăvār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Greek, Graec-us, -ă, -um, adj.

greenness, vīrīdīt-as, -ātis, F.

grief, dŏl-or, -ōris, M.

groan, gĕm-o, -ĕre, -ŭi, -ĭtum.

ground, hŭm-us, -ī, F.; **on the ground**, hūmī.

grow, cresc-o, -ĕre, crēvi, crētum; vīrĕo, vīrēre, no perf., no sup.

guard, custōd-io, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; n., see next word.

guardian, cust-os, -ōdis, M.

guide, dux, dŭcis, M.; v., guberno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

guilt, scĕl-us, -ĕris, N.

guilty, noxī-us, -a, -um; **be g. of**, in se admitto (acc.).

H.

habit of, I am in the, sŏlĕo, sŏlēre, sŏlĭtus sum (+inf.).

hair, cŏm-a, -ae, F.; căpill-us, -ī, M.

hall, aul-a, -ae, F.

halt, come to a halt, con-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtī, -stĭtum.

Hamilcar, Hamilc-ar, -ăris, M.

hand, măn-us, -ūs, F.

hand, I am at, ad-sum, -esse, -fŭi.

hand over to, per-mitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum; mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

hand-maid(en), ancill-a, -ae, F.

Hannibal, Hannib-al, -ălis, M.

happens, it, accĭdit, accĭdere, accĭdit, no sup.; contingit, contingere, contigit, no sup.; ēvĕnit, ēvĕnīre, ēvēnit, no sup.

happiness, beate vivere (p. 108, 4).

happy, bĕāt-us, -a, -um; **lucky**, fēlix, fēlīcis (adj.).

harbor, port-us, -ūs, M.

hard, adj., dūr-us, -ă, -um (adj.).

hard, press, prĕmo, prĕmĕre, pressī, pressum.

hard to say, or tell, it is, difficĭle est dictu (p. 175).

hardly, vix (adv.).

hardship, lăb-or, -ōris, M.

harsh, asper, aspĕra, aspĕrum (adj.).

harvest, messis, -is, F.

haste, cĕlĕrĭt-as, -ātis, F.; **there is need of h.**, ŏpus est properato (p. 166, 2).

hasten, prŏpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; mātūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; fest-īno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

hate, ŏdī-um, -ī, N.

hate, I, ŏdī, odisse; **I am hated**, odio sum (p. 196, 7, note).

haughty, superb-us, -a, -um, adj.

have, hăb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum.

he, p. 168, 3.

he himself, ipse (p. 123, 6).

head, caput, capĭtis, N.; **in the h.**, p. 98, 3.

head of, I am at the, prae-sum, -esse, -fŭī (with dat.).

headlong, prae-ceps, -cĭpĭtis (adj.).

heal, mĕdĕor, mĕdērī, no perf., no sup.

health, I am in good, vălĕo, vălēre, vălŭī, vălĭtum.

hear, aud-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

heart, cor, cordis, N.; (feelings), ănĭmus.

heat, aestus, -ūs, M.

heaven, cael-um, -i, N.; pl. M., cael-ī, -ōrum (p. 242).

heavy, grăv-is, -e (adj.).

heir, hērē-s, -dis, M.

help, iŭvo, iŭvāre, iūvī, iūtum; adiŭvo, -iŭvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum; n., auxĭlĭ-um, -ī, N.

Helvetians (Helvetii), Helvēti-i, -ōrum, M.

hem in, con-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭī, -tentum.

hence, henceforth, proinde, hinc.

herald, praec-o, -ōnis, M.

here, hīc.

here, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fŭī.

hesitate, dŭbĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

hidden, occult-us, -ă, -um, adj.

hide, cēl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

high, alt-us, -ă, -um (adj.).

highest, summ-us, -ă, -um; with interest, use magni (p. 166, 3); of price, p. 150, 2.

highly, I value, magni aestimo (p. 150, 2).

hill, coll-is, -is, M.; mons, montis, M.

him; p. 168, 3.

himself, se; ipse, ipsă, ipsum (p. 168, 3).

hinder, impĕd-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; ob-sto, -stare, -stĭtī, -stătum (dat.).

his, ēius, suus (p. 168, 3); often omitted; 169, 5, note 2.

historian, rerum script-or (-ōris, M.).

hither, cĭtĕr-ior, -iōris (adj.).

hold, hăbĕo, hăbēre, hăbŭī, hăbĭtum; tĕnĕo, tĕnēre, tĕnŭī, tentum; căpĭo, căpĕre, cēpī, captum (=contain).

home, dŏm-us, -ūs, F.; **at home**, domī; **(to) home**, domum; **from home**, domo.

Homer, Hŏmēr-us, -ī, M.

honest, prŏb-us, -ă -um (adj.).

honor, fĭdes, fĭdēī (good faith), F.; hŏn-or, -ōris, M. (distinction).

hope, spes, spēī, F.

hope, hope for, I, spēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Horace, Hŏrātī-us, -ī, M.

horse, ĕquus, equī, M.

horseman, ĕques, ĕquĭtis, M.

host (opposed to guest), hospes, hospĭtis, M.

host (a multitude), multĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F.

hostage, obses, obsĭdis, M.

hot, be, călĕo, călēre.

hour, hōr-a, -ae, F.

house, dŏm-us, -ūs, F. (p. 62, 6).

how, quam (p. 176, 3).

however, autem, vero; p. 196, 7, note.

how many, quot.

how much, quantum; with comparatives, quanto.

how often, quŏtĭes.

human, humān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

humble, hŭmĭl-is, -e (adj.).

hundred, a, centum.

hunger, fāmes, fāmis, F.

hurl, con-ĭcĭo, -ĭcĕre, -ĭēcī, -iectum (at=in+acc.).

hurry to, con-tendo, -tendĕre, -tendī, -tentum (ad with acc.).

husband, vir, vĭrī, M.

I.

I, ĕgo (p. 104).

if, sī (p. 190); **if .... not**, nisi, sī .... non (p. 190, 3); **unless**, nisi (p. 190, 3).

ignorant of, I am, ignōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ne-scĭo, -scīre, -scīvī, -scītum.

ill, I am, aegrōt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

illustrious, praeclār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

ill-will, mălĕvolentī-a, -ae, F.

imitate, ĭmĭt-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

immediately (adv.), stătim, confestim.

immediately after the battle, confestim a proelio.

immortal, immortāl-is, -e (adj.).

impart, I, commūnĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

impiety, impĭĕt-as, -ātis, F.

implore, implōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

importance, it is of: p. 166, 3.

important to me, it is, meā interest (p. 166, 3).

important, grăv-is, -e; magnus (adj.).

impunity, with, impūne.

impute this to you as a fault, I, hoc tibi vitio verto.

in, prep., in (with abl. or acc.; p. 222, 2); **in company with**, cum; **in the power of**, penes (with acc.); **in turn**, invĭcem; **in order that**, ut; **in order that not**, ne (p. 183, 2).

inasmuch as, quum (+subj.; p. 203, 1); quī (p. 199, 5).

inclination, vŏlunt-as, -ātis, F.

inconsistent with, ălĭēn-us, -a, -um (ab+abl.).

increase (trans.), augĕo, augēre, auxī, auctum; (intrans.), cresco, crescĕre, crēvī, crētum.

incredible, incredĭbĭlis, -e (p. 175).

indecisive, anceps, ancĭpĭtis (adj.).

inexperienced, impĕrīt-us, -a, -um.

infant, infans, infantis, M. or F.

infantry, pĕdĭt-es, -um, M. pl.

influence, auctōrĭt-as, -ātis, F.

inform, certiorem facere (of=de).

inform him about these matters, I, ego eum certiorem de his rebus facio.

inhabitant, incŏl-a, -ae, M.; **i. of a town**, oppidānus, -i, M.

injure, nŏcĕo, nŏcēre, nŏcŭī, -ĭtum (with dat.).

injury, iniūrī-a, -ae, F.; damn-um, -i, N.

innocence, innŏcentī-a, -ae, F.

innocent, innŏcens, innŏcentis (adj.).

inquire, quaero, quaerĕre, quaesīvī, quaesītum; rŏgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

insist on, flāgĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

instantly, continuo.

institution, institūt-um, -i, N.

instruct, ērūd-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

insult, contŭmēlī-a, -ae, F.

intellect, mens, mentis, F.

intend, p. 174, 1.

intentionally, consulto.

interest, it is of, inter-est, -esse, -fŭi (p. 166, 3); (high = magni or multum).

interpreter, interpres, interprĕtis, M.

into, in (with acc.).

intrust, I, per-mitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum; mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

invade, I, bellum infĕro (inferre, intŭli, illātum).

inventor, invent-or, -ōris, M.

invite, I, invīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

irruption, an, incursi-o, -ōnis, F.

island, insŭl-a, -ae, F.

issue, ĕvent-us, -ūs, M.

it. See **he.**

Italy, Ităli-a, -ae, F.

its, eius; referring to subject, suus, sua, suum (p. 169, 5).

itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

J.

January, Iānŭārĭ-us, -a, -um (adj.; mensis being understood).

javelin, tēl-um, -i, N.; pīl-um, -ī, N.

jealous of you, I am, tibi in-vīdĕo (-vīdēre, -vīdī, -vīsum).

join, iungo, iungĕre, iunxī, iunctum.

joint, art-us, -ūs.

journey, ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, N.

joy, gaudĭ-um, -ī, N.; laetĭtĭ-a, -ae.

joyful, laet-us, -a, -um (adj.).

judge, iūdex, iūdicis, M.; v., iūdic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; arbĭtr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

judgment, iūdĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.; arbĭtrĭ-um, -ī, N.

Jugurtha, Iugurth-a, -ae, M.

June (month of), Iūni-us, -a, -um.

Jupiter, Iūpĭter, Iŏvis, M.

jury, iūdĭc-es, -um, M. pl.

just, aequ-us; iust-us, -a, -um (adj.).

just then, iam tum.

just as though: say **as if.**

justice, iustĭtĭ-a, -ae, F.

justly, iūre [abl. of ius (iūris), used adverbially].

Jura, Iūr-a, -ae, F.

K.

Karthage, Karthāg-o, -ĭnis, F.

Karthaginians, Karthagĭnienses, -ium, M. pl.

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre (adj.).

keep, serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **k. promises**, promissis (abl.) sto (stāre, stĕtī, stātum).

keep back, arc-eo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum.

keep back from, prōhĭb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum; arceo, arcēre, arcŭī (+abl.).

keep my word, fidem serv-o (-āre, -āvī, -ātum); fidem prae-sto (-stare, -stĭti).

keep off, defen-do, -dĕre, -di, -sum.

kill, inter-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēci, -fectum; oc-cīdo, -cīdĕre, -cīdī, -cīsum.

kind, gĕn-us, -ĕris, N.

kind, adj., bĕnĕvŏl-us, -a, -um; comp., benevolentĭor; sup., bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmus.

kind deed, a, bĕnĕfĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.; offĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.

kind, of every, omn-is, -e (adj.); omnis gĕnĕris.

kind of man, the, use **qualis** (p. 181, 1).

kind, of this, hūiusmŏdī; **of that kind**, ēiusmŏdī; talis.

kindness, bĕnefĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.

king, rex, rēgis; **king's**, rēgī-us, -a, -um.

knee, gĕn-u, -ūs, N.

know, scīo, scīre, scīvi, scītum (a fact); nosc-o, -ĕre, nōvi, nōtum (a person).

known, nōt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

knowledge, scientĭ-a, -ae, F.; (learning), doctrīn-a, -ae, F.

L.

Labienus, Lăbĭēn-us, -ĭ, M.

Lacedaemon, Lăcēdaem-on, -ŏnis, F.

Lacedaemonian, Lăcēdaemŏni-us, -a, -um (adj.).

lack, I, mihi deest.

lacking, expers, expert-is (with abl.; p. 64, 4; p. 281, 9).

lake, lăc-us, -ūs, M.

lame, claud-us, -a, -um (adj.).

lament, lāment-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; dŏlĕo, dŏlēre, dŏlŭī, no sup.

land (the soil), ăger, ăgri, M.; (a country), terr-a, -ae, F.; **native land**, pātrī-a, -ae, F.; **by sea and land**, terrā-mārīque.

land troops, milites in terram expōno (-pōnĕre, -pōsŭī, -pōsĭtum).

language (tongue), lingu-a, -ae, F.; (conversation), serm-o, -ōnis, M.

large, magn-us, -a, -um; ingen-s, -tis; **so l.**, tant-us, -a, -um (adj.).

last (of a number), ultĭm-us, -a, -um; (nearest: as, **last night**), proxĭm-us, -a, -um; **most remote**, extrēm-us, -a, -um; **at last**, dēmum (= then and not till then); tandem.

late (recent), rĕcens, recentis (adj.).

late, too, adv., sēro.

lately, nŭper; sup., nūperrĭme.

law, lex, lēgis, F.

lay waste, vast-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lead, dūco, dūcĕre, duxī, ductum; **lead across** or **through**, trans-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum; **lead back**, rĕ-dūco, -dūcĕre, -duxī, -ductum; **lead out**, ēdūco, -dūcĕre, -duxi, -ductum.

lead, plumb-um, -i, N.

leader, dux, dŭcis, M.

learn, disco, discĕre, dĭdĭci, no sup.; (ascertain), cognosc-o, ĕre, cognōvi, cognĭtum.

learned, doctus (p. p. of dŏceo, teach).

learning, doctrīn-a, -ae, F.

least, at, saltem; **I at least**, ego certe.

leave, rĕ-linquo, -linquĕre, -līqui, -lictum; (a place) ex-cēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum (with acc. or abl. or with ex.); discēdo, -cēdĕre, -cessī, -cessum (ex); prŏficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum.

left, sĭnist-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

legion, lēgī-o, -ōnis, F.

leisure, ōtī-um, -ī, N.; **at leisure**, ōtiōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

less (adv.), mĭnus; **less than two hundred fell**, minus ducenti perierunt. Minus, with numerals (like plus and amplius, **more**) has no effect upon the construction.

less, adj., minor, minus (p. 57, 4).

lest, nē (p. 185, 3).

let, sĭno, sĭnĕre, sīvī, sĭtum; or use licet (163, 5).

letter, ēpistŏl-a, also ĕpistŭl-a, -ae, F., littĕr-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).

levy, n., delect-us, -ūs, M.; **I hold a levy**, delectum habeo.

liar, mendax, mendācis, M. or adj.

liberality, liberalĭt-as, -ātis, F.

liberate, lībĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

liberty, lĭbert-as, -ātis, F.

lie, iăc-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum; (**speak falsely**) mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum.

lieutenant, lēgāt-us, -i, M.

life, vīt-a, -ae, F.

light, lux, lūcis, F.; lūmen, lūmĭnis, N.

lightning, fulgur, fulgŭris, N.

like, sĭmĭl-is, -e; comp., similior; sup., simillimus (dat.).

likely; use 174, 1.

line of battle, ăcĭes, ăcĭēī, F.; **line of march**, iter, ĭtĭnĕris, N.

lion, leo, leōnis, M.

listen to, aud-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (acc.).

little, parv-us, -a, -um (adj.).

live, vīvo, vīvĕre, vīxi, victum; **I live on milk**, lacte vescor (vesci, no perf., no sup.).

living, be; say **live**.

load: ŏnus, ŏnĕris, N.

load, v., ŏnĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

locality, lŏc-a, -ōrum, N. pl. of locus (p. 242).

lofty, alt-us, -a, -um; excels-us, -a, -um (adj.).

long, long-us, -a, -um; **for a long time**, diu, iamprīdem (216, 2, *b*).

look at, spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

look down on, de-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spexī, -spectum.

look for, exspect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lord, domĭn-us, -i, M.

lose, ā-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum; **lose an opportunity**, occasiōnem amitto.

loss, damn-um, -i, N.; călămĭt-as, -ātis, F.

lot, sors, sortis, F.; fortūn-a, -ae, F.

lot, it falls to my, mihi accĭdit; mihi contingit.

loud, magn-us, -a, -um (adj.).

love, ăm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīlĭgo, dīlĭgĕre, dīlexī, dīlectum.

lovely, pulcher, pulchrā, pulchrum (adj.).

lover, amans, amantis, M. or F.

low(ly), hŭmĭl-is, -e, adj.

lowest, īmus, -a, -um, adj. (59, 1).

loyal, fĭdēl-is, -e, adj.

loyalty, fĭdes, fĭdēī, F.

Lucca, Lucc-a, -ae, F.

luxury, luxŭrĭ-a, -ae, F.

M.

mad, I am, fŭro, fŭrĕre, no perf., no sup.

made, I am being, fĭo, fĭĕrī, factus sum.

magnitude, use quantus (see p. 181, 1).

maiden, puell-a, -ae, F.; virg-o, -inis, F.

maintain, sus-tĭnĕo, -tĭnēre, -tĭnŭi, -tentum; vindĭc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

make, făcio, făcĕre, fēcī, factum; (a magistrate), crĕ-o, (-āre, -āvī, -ātum); (war upon), bellum in-fero, [inferre, intŭlī, illātum (dat.)]; (an attack), impetum făcio (făcĕre, fēcī, factum), or simply aggrĕdior, -grĕdī, -gressus sum (acc.)

Malta, Mĕlīt-a, -ae, F.

man, vir, vīrī, M. (an adult male, opposed to mulier, woman); hŏmo, hŏmĭnis, M. or F. (a human being).

maniple, mănĭpŭl-us, -ī, M.

manners, mōres, mōrum (pl.), M.

many, mult-ī, -ae, -a (adj., pl.); **many good men**, multī et boni homines.

marble, marm-or, -ŏris, N.

marble, marmŏreus, -a, -um (adj.).

march, iter, ĭtĭnĕris, N.; **to make a march**, iter făcio (făcĕre, fēcī, factum).

Marcus, Marc-us, -ī, M., a Roman name.

Marius, Mări-us, -i, M.

market-place, fŏr-um, -ī, N.

Marseilles, Massĭlī-a, -ae, F.

marsh, păl-ūs, -ūdis, F.

master (of boys), măgist-er, -rī, M.; (of slaves), dŏmĭn-us, -ī, M.

matter, res, rēī, F.

matters little, it, parvi interest or rĕfert (p. 166, 3).

may, lĭcet, lĭcēre, lĭcŭit (or lĭcĭtum est) (p. 163, 5); possum, posse, pŏtŭī (p. 142); in final clauses, ut+subj. (p. 183); of a wish (p. 138, 4, *c*).

May (month of), Māī-us, -a, -um, adj. (mensis being understood).

meal, cēn-a, -ae, F.; epul-ae, -ārum, F. pl.

mean, v., sibi volo (velle, volui).

means of, by, abl. (p. 71, 3).

meanwhile, intĕrim.

measure, mētĭor, mētīrī, mensus sum.

Medes, Mēd-ī, -ōrum (pl.), M.

meet an enemy, obvĭam hostibus (dat.) īre.

meet death, mortem ob-ĕo [īre, īvī (or ĭī), ĭtum].

meeting, concĭlĭ-um, -ī, N.; convent-us, -ūs, M.

memory, mĕmŏrī-a, -ae, F.

merchant, mercāt-or, -ōris, M.

merchantman, navis oneraria.

Mercury, Mercŭrī-us, -ī, M.

mercy, mīsĕrĭcordi-a, -ae, F.

mere, ipse, ipsa, ipsum (p. 123).

message, nuntĭ-us, -ī, N.

messenger, nuntĭ-us, -ī, M.

midday, mĕrĭdĭ-es, -ēī, M.; tempus mĕrĭdiānum.

middle of, mĕdĭ-us, -a, -um; **in the middle of the plain**, in mediā planitie; **in the middle of the night**, mediā nocte.

midst of, in the, inter (with acc.).

might, use licet (163, 5).

mild, mīt-is, -e (adj.).

mile, mille passuum or mille passus; **two miles**, duo millia passuum (p. 69, 10).

milk, lac, -tis, N.

mind, ănĭm-us, -ī, M.; mens, mentis, F.

miserable, mĭser, mĭsĕra, mĭsĕrum (adj.).

modesty, mŏdesti-a, -ae, F.

money, pĕcūnĭ-a, -ae, F.

month, mens-is, -is, M.

moon, lūna, lūnae, F.

morals, mōres, mōrum, M.

more, plus (p. 57, 4), of amount; magis, of degree (p. 77, 6); **more than**, magis quam.

moreover, praetĕrĕā, adv.

morning, in the, mane, adv.

mortal (dying), mortāl-is, -e (adj.); (deadly), morti-fer, -fĕra, -fĕrum (adj.).

most, plērīque, plēraeque, plērăque (adj.).

most part, for the, maxime.

mound, ag-ger, -gĕris, M.

mount, v., a-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendī, -scensum.

mountain, mons, montis, M.

mourn over, lūgeo, lugēre, luxi, luctum.

mouth, os, ōris, N.

move, mŏvĕo, mŏvēre, mōvī, mōtum; **move forward**, pro-mŏvĕo.

much, mult-us, -a, -um (adj.); with comparative, multo; **m. time**, multum tempŏris.

multitude, multĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F.

murder, caed-es, -is, F.; **after the murder of Caesar**, Caesăre interfecto.

must: p. 172, 2; 173, 5.

my, mĕ-us, -ă, -um (adj.).

myself (emphatic), ipse.

N.

name, nōm-en, -ĭnis, N.

name, good, fām-a, -ae, F.

Naples, Nĕăpŏl-is, -is, F.

nation, pŏpŭl-us, -ī, M. ; cīvĭt-as, -ātis, F. ; nātī-o, -ōnis, F. (of foreign nations).

native land or country, pātrī-a, -ae, F.

nature, nātūr-a, -ae, F.

near, prŏpe, ad, or ăpud (with acc.) ; **be near**, adsum (dat.).

nearest, proxĭmus, -a, -um (adj.).

nearly, paene, fere (adv.).

necessary, nĕcessārĭ-us, -a,-um (adj.).

necessity, nĕcessĭt-as, -ātis, F.

need, opus est (p. 166, 2) ; **I have need of food**, opus est mihi cibo (abl.) ; ēgĕo, ēgēre, ēgŭī (+abl. or gen., p. 282, 1).

needy, ēgēnus (57, 3, note).

neglect, neg-lĕgo, -lēgĕre, -lexī, -lectum.

neighbor, vīcīn-us, -ī, M. ; fīnĭtĭmus, -i, M.

neighboring, fīnĭtĭm-us, -a, -um (adj.).

neither .... nor ; nĕque .... nĕque ; nec .... nec.

neither (of two), neuter, neutra, neutrum (p. 26).

nest, nīd-us, -i, M.

never, nunquam.

new, nŏv-us, -a, -um (adj.).

news of, there is, nuntiātur (p. 164, 2, note 2).

next, the, proxĭm-us, -a, -um (adj.) ; **next day**, dies postĕrus ; **on the next day**, die postero, postrīdiē eius diēī.

night, nox, noctis, F.

no : p. 29, 4, note.

noble, praeclār-us, -a, -um ; nobĭl-is, -e (adj.).

noon, noonday, mĕrīdī-es, -ēī, M.

no one, nēmo (gen., nullīus; p. 132, 2); null-us, -a, -um ; **and no one**, nec quisquam (132, 3).

nor, neque, nec ; owing to the Latin love of connectives, used instead of non to introduce a sentence ; **nor ... any**, p. 132, 3.

not, non ; with imperat., p. 138, 4 *(b)*.

not yet, nondum.

nothing, nīhil.

nourish, nutr-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum ; ălo, ălēre, ălŭī, ălĭtum (or altum).

now (of time up to the present), iam ; (at the present moment), nunc ; (=to-day), hodie.

nowhere, nusquam.

number, nūmĕr-us, -ī, M. ; p. 181, 1.

Numidia, Numĭdĭ-a, -ae, F.

O.

O, interjection, O ; omitted usually with vocative ; **O! that**, utīnam ; see p. 138, 4.

oak-tree, querc-us, -ūs, F.

obey, pār-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum (dat.) ; ŏb-ēdio, -ēdīre, -ēdīvī (ēdĭī), -ēdītum (dat. ; p. 164).

object, v., rĕcūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

object, have an o. in view, ăgo, ăgĕre, ēgi, actum.

obscure, obscūr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

obtain, I, ădĭpiscor, ădĭpisci, ădeptus snm ; pŏtĭor, pŏtīrī, pŏtĭtus sum ; (a request), impĕtr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

occupy, I (hold), tĕn-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -tum.

ocean, ŏcĕăn-us, -i, M.

Octavianus, Octāviān-us, -i, M.

of, expressed by gen. or abl. ; dē, prep. with abl.

offence, peccāt-um, -ī, N.

offer, I, de-fĕro, -ferre, -tŭli, -lātum.

office, măgistrāt-us, -ūs, M. ; **I hold office**, magistratum habeo or obtineo.

officers, the military, centuriones tribūnique militum.

often, saepe ; **so often**, tŏtĭes.

old, antīqu-us, -a, -um ; vĕtus, vĕtĕris ; **oldest**, maximus nātu ; see **ancient**.

old age, sĕnect-us, -ūtis, F.

old man, sĕnex, sĕnis, M.

Olympus, Olymp-us, -ī, M.

on (of rest), in (abl). ; (of motion), in (acc.), of time, abl. ; **on this side**, citrā (prep. with acc.) ; **on this account**, quam ob causam ; **on the side of**, ab (with abl.).

once, sĕmel ; **more than once**, semel ac saepius.

once (formerly), quondam ; ŏlim ; **at o.**, stătim.

one (numeral), ūn-us, -a, -um ; **one of the soldiers**, unus e militĭbus.

one, some, ălĭquis, ălĭqua, ălĭquid or ălĭquod ; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam (p. 132).

one, not, nemo, gen. nullīus (p. 132, 2) ; ne unus quīdem.

one..the other, alius..alius; alter ..alter (of two).

one and all, cunct-ī, -ae, -a; omnēs, omnium.

one day, ălĭquando.

only, tantum; sōlum; mŏdo (all placed after the words qualified); **not only**, non sōlum, non mŏdo (but also = sed etiam).

onset, impĕt-us, -us, M.

open (trans.), pătĕ-făcĭo, -făcĕre, -fēcī, -factum; (intr.), pătĕo, pătēre, pătŭi, no sup.; **open ranks**, ordines laxare.

openly, pălam.

opinion, sententi-a, -ae, F.

opportunity, occās-ĭo, -ĭōnis, F.

oppose, oc-curro, -currĕre, -currī, -cursum (with dative); ob-sto, -stāre, -stĭti, no sup. (with dat.).

oppress, vex-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; op-prĭmo, -prĭmĕre, -pressī, -pressum.

or, aut; vel.

or not, annon in the second part of a principal alternative question (130, 6, note); necne, in a dependent alternative question (p. 177, 5).

oration, ōrātĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

orator, ōrāt-or, -ōris, M.

order, v., iŭbĕo, iŭbēre, iussi, iussum (with acc.); impĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat.).

order, n., mandāt-um, -ī, N.; praecept-um, -ī, N.

order that, in, ut (p. 183, 2; p. 185, 5).

origin, gĕn-us, -ĕris, N.; **of humble origin**, humili loco natus.

other, the (of two), alter; **others**, ălĭī; **other men** (= the rest), cētĕrī.

ought, dēbĕo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum (of moral obligation); impers., oport-et, -ēre, -ŭit (p. 162, 4); p. 173, 5.

our, ours, nost-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

ourselves, nos; p. 104, 5.

out of, ē, ex (with abl.); ex before vowels and consonants, ē before consonants only.

outward, extĕr-us, -a, -um.

over, sŭper (prep. with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2); trans (acc.).

overcome, sŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vinco, vincĕre, vīcī, victum.

overthrow, -ĕvert-o, -ĕre, -ī, -sum.

Ovid, Ovĭdĭ-us, -i, M.

owe, dēb-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -ĭtum.

own, gen. of ipse; **my own book**, meus ipsius liber (123, 6); v., p. 120, 3.

ox, bos, bŏvis, M.

P.

pacify, I, plāc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

pain, dŏl-or, -ōris, M.

panic, păvor, păvōris, M.

pardon, n., vĕnĭ-a, -ae, F.

pardon, v., ignosco, ignoscere, ignōvī, ignōtum (dat.).

parent, părens, M. or F.

part, pars, partis, F.; **it is the part of**, p. 124.

pass (a law), promulg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; fĕro.

pass by, praetĕr-eo, -īre, -īvī, -ĭtum.

pass over, trans-eo, -īre, -īvī, -ĭtum.

pass the winter, hĭĕm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

passion (anger), īra, -ae, F.

passionate, īrācund-us, -a, -um (adj.).

passionateness, īrācundĭ-a, -ae, F.

past, praetĕrĭt-us, -a, -um (adj.); **the past**, tempus praeterĭtum.

patiently, pătĭenter.

pay, pendo, pendĕre, pependi, pensum.

pay, merces, mercēdis, F.

pearl, margarīt-a, -ae, F.

peace, pax, pācis, F.

Peligni, Pelign-i, -ōrum, M. pl.

penalty, poen-a, -ae, F.; supplĭcĭ-um, -i, N.

people (a), pŏpŭl-us, -ī, M.; (men), hŏmĭnes, (M. pl.); 164, 2.

perceive, intellĕgo, -lĕgĕre, -lexī, -lectum; sentĭo, sentīre, sensi, sensum.

perform, facio; con-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum.

Pericles, Pĕrĭcl-es, -is, M.

perish, pĕr-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or ĭī), -ĭtum.

permit: see **allow**; **you p. me**, mihi per te licet (p. 163, 5).

permitted, I am, mihi licet (p. 163, 5).

Persian, Mēd-us, -i, M.

persuade, per-suādĕo, -suādēre, -sūasī, -suāsum (dat.).

Philippi, Philipp-i, -ōrum, M. pl.

philosopher, philŏsŏph-us, -ī, M.

philosophy, philŏsŏphĭ-a, -ae, F.

pick, pick out, lĕgo, lĕgĕre, lēgi, lectum.

pine, pīn-us, -ūs, F.

pirate, praed-o, -ōnis, M.

pitch a camp, castra pōnĕre or munire.

pity, mīsĕrĭcordī-a, -ae, F.

pity, v., mīsĕrĕor, mīsĕrērī, mīsĕrĭtus sum, with gen.; **I pity you**, me tui miseret (165, 1).

place, lŏc-us, -ī, M.; pl., loci, M., and loca, N., p. 242.

place, v., lŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.); pōno, pōnĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum; **place over**; prae-fĭcĭo, -fĭcere, -fēcī, -fectum.

plain, camp-us, -ī, M.; plānĭtī-es, -ēī, F.

plain (evident), mănĭfest-us, -a, -um (adj.).

plan, consĭlĭ-um, -ī, N. (form = ineo).

play, lūd-us, -ī, M.; lūs-us, -ūs, M.; v., lūd-o, -ĕre, -si, -um.

pleasant, iūcund-us, -a, -um (adj.); grātus, -a, -um (adj.).

please, delect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.); plăcĕo, plăcēre, plăcŭi, plăcĭtum (with dat.).

please, I (*i.e.*, **choose**), mihi lĭbet, lĭbŭit, lĭbĭtum est.

pleasing: see **pleasant**.

pleasure, vŏlupt-as, -ātis, F.

plough, n., ărātr-um, -ī, N.

plough, v., ăr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

ploughed land, arvum, arvi, N.

pluck, carpo, carpĕre, carpsī, carptum.

plunder, praed-a, -ae, F.

poet, pŏēt-a, -ae, M.

point out, monstr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ostendo, ostendĕre, ostendi, ostentum.

poison, vĕnēn-um, -ī, N.

Pompey, Pompēī-us, -ī, M.

pool, stagnum, -ī, N.

poor, pauper, paupĕris (adj.).

populace, plebs, plēbis, F.

possession, obtain or **gain**, pŏtĭor, potīri, potĭtus sum (p. 116).

possible, use possum; **all p.**, omnes quas potest; **as many as p.**, quam plurimi (p. 143, note).

poverty, paupert-as, -ātis, F.

power, impĕrĭ-um, -ī, N.; pŏtest-as, -ātis, F.; pōtentī-a, -ae, F. (undue power).

powerful, pŏtens, pŏtentis.

practice, usus, -ūs, M.

praise, n., laus, laudis, F.

praise, v., laud-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

praiseworthy, laudābĭl-is, -e (adj.).

pray for, ōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

prayers, prĕc-es, -um, F.

prefer (wish rather), mālo, malle, mālŭī, no sup.; ante-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum (with acc. and dat.); prae-fero, -ferre, -tŭlī, -lātum.

prepare, păr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

present, a, dōnum, -ī, N.

present, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fŭī; inter-sum, -esse, -fŭī (at = dat.).

presently, mox, brevi.

preserve, conserv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

pretend, sĭmŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dissĭmŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

prevent, ob-sto, -stāre, -stĭtī; prōhĭbĕo, -hĭbēre, -hĭbŭī, -hĭbĭtum; **prevent him from doing, I**, prohibeo eum quominus faciat (p. 185, 2).

previous, prĭor, prĭus.

price, prĕtĭ-um, -ī, N., p. 150.

pride, superb-ia, -ae, F.

prince, princeps, princĭpis, M.

prison, carcer, carcĕris, M.

prisoner (of war), captīv-us, -ī, M.

private person, prīvāt-us, -i, M.

prize, praemi-um, -ī, N.

promise, pro-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum; pol-lĭcĕor, -lĭcērī, -lĭcĭtus sum (with fut. inf.; 110, 1).

promise, promiss-um, -ī, N.

proof, indĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.

property, bŏna, N. pl.; fortunae, F. pl.; res, rēī, F.

proud, sŭperb-us, -a, -um (adj).

provide for, I, pro-vĭdĕo, -vīdēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.

providence, providenti-a, -ae, F.

provided that, mŏdo, dummŏdo (194, 3).

province, provinci-a, -ae, F.

provoke, lăcesso, lăcessĕre, lăcessīvī, lăcessītum.

prudence, prūdentī-a, -ae, F.

punish, pūnĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

punishment, poena, poenae, F.; supplĭci-um, -ī, N.

pupil, discĭpŭlus, -ī, M.

purpose, for the p. of, causā (171, 6).

purposely, consulto.

pursue, sĕquor, sĕquī, secūtus sum.

pursuit, stŭdī-um, -i, N.

put, pōno, pōnĕre, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum.

put to death, inter-fīcĭo, -fīcĕre, -fēcī, -fectum.

Pyrenees, Pȳrĕnaei Montes.

Q.

quaestor, quaest-or, -ōris, M.

quantity, cōpī-a, -ae, F.; vis, F.

queen, rēgīn-a, -ae, F.

question, I ask a, rŏ-go, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (92, 3); **I ask you this question**, hoc te rŏgo.

quickly, celerĭter.

quiet, quiēt-us, -a, -um (adj.); quĭes, quiētis, F.

R.

race (kind), gĕn-us, -ĕris, N.; **the human race**, genus humānum; **r. of men**, genus hominum.

rage, īr-a, -ae, F.; fŭr-or, -ōris, M.

rain, plŭvī-a, -ae, F.; im-ber, -bris, M.

raise, tollo, tollere, sustŭlī, sublātum.

rank, ord-o, -ĭnis, M. (military term).

rather, pŏtĭus.

Ravenna, Ravenn-a, -ae, F.

reach, pĕrvĕnĭo, -vĕnīre, -vēnī, -ventum (ad with acc.).

read, lĕgo, lĕgĕre, lēgī, lectum.

read aloud, rĕcĭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

ready, părāt-us, -a, -um (with inf., dat., or ad. and acc.).

really, vĕro; rē verā (in truth).

rear, terg-um, -ī, N.; **from or in the rear**, a tergo.

reason, caus-a, -ae, F.; p. 181, 1 (use cur).

receive, accĭpio, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum.

recent, rĕcens, recentis (adj.).

recover (intr.), se recĭpio.

refrain, de-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭti, -stĭtum (abl., or abl. with a).

refuse, nōlo, nolle, nōlŭī; recūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

regard, habeo, hăbēre, hăbŭī, hăbĭtum.

reign, v., regn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; impĕrī-um, -ī, N.; **during the r.**, see p. 100, 5.

reject, rĕpŭdĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

rejoice, gaud-eo, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.

relate, narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **it is related**, narrātur; **it is related by tradition**, traditum est.

relying on, frĕt-us, -a, -um (adj.) (with abl.).

remain, măn-ĕo, -ēre, -sī, -sum.

remarkable, insign-is, -e; exĭmī-us, -a, -um (adj.).

remember, p. 145; 146, 7.

remind, admŏn-eo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum; commone-facio, -facĕre, -fēci, -factum (p. 167).

repent of my folly, I, me meae stultitiae poenitet (p. 165, 1).

reply, v., re-spondĕo, -spondēre, -spondī, -sponsum; respons-um, -ī, N.

report, nuntĭ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

republic, respublīca, rēīpublīcae, F.

resist, re-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭti, -stĭtum, (dat.).

resolve, con-stĭtŭo, -stĭtŭĕre, -stĭtŭī, -stitūtum.

rest, quĭ-es, -ētis, F.; **the r.**, rēlĭqui, cētĕri.

retake, re-cĭpio, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum.

retreat, se recĭpĕre.

return (go back), rĕd-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (or -ĭī), -ĭtum; (give back), red-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum.

revile, mălĕ-dīco, -dīcere, -dixi, -dictum (dat.).

reward, praemī-um, -i, N.

Rhine, Rhēn-us, -ī, M.

Rhone, Rhŏdăn-us, -ī, M.

rich, dīves, dīvĭtis; dīs, dītis; opulentus, -a, -um; cōpĭōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

right, iust-us, -a, -um; aequ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

right (=on the right hand), dex-ter, -tra, -trum; **right hand**, manus dextra.

right, n., ius, iūris, N.; fas, N. (p. 239).

ripe, mātūr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

rising, ŏrĭen-s, -tis (adj.).

risk, pĕrīcŭl-um, -ī, N.; discrīm-en, -ĭnis, N.

river, flūm-en, -ĭnis, N.; flŭvĭ-us, -ī, M.; rīv-us, -ī, M.; amn-is, -is, M.

road, vī-a, -ae, F.; ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, N.

rock, sax-um, -ī, N.; rūp-es, -is, F., scŏpŭl-us, -ī, M.

Roman, Rōmān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Rome, Rōm-a, -ae, F.

Romulus, Rōmŭl-us, -ī, M.

root, rād-ix, -īcis, F.

rose, rŏs-a, -ae, F.

rough, asp-er, -ĕra, -ĕrum (adj.).

route, vī-a, -ae, F.; ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, N.

ruin, exĭtĭ-um, -i, N.; pernĭcĭ-es, -ēī, F.

rule, v., regn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; gubern-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; n., reg-num, -ī; impĕrī-um, -ī, N.

run, curro, currĕre, cucurri, cursum; (a wall), dūco, ducĕre, duxī, ductum.

run away, aufŭgĭo, -fŭgĕre, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum.

S.

sacred, sāc-er, -ra, -rum; sanct-us, -a, -um (adj.).

sad, maest-us, -a, -um; trist-is, -e (adj.).

safe, tūt-us, -a, -um; salv-us, -a, -um (adj.); incŏlŭm-is, -e, (sēcūrus=free from care).

safety, săl-us, -ūtis, F.

said, it is, p. 164, 3.

sail, vēlum, -ī, N.

sail, v., nāvĭg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

sailor, naut-a, -ae, M.

sake of, for the, causā (+gen.); **for my sake**, meā causā; **for the sake of plundering**, praedandi causā (p. 171, 6).

sally, erupti-o, -ōnis; **make a s.**, e-rumpo, -rumpĕre, -rūpi, -ruptum.

salt, sal, sălis, M.

salute, v., sălūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

same, ĭdem, ĕădem, ĭdem; **same as**, 127, 2.

satisfy, sătis-făcĭo, -făcĕre, -fēcī, -factum (with dat.; p. 105, 9).

savage (wild), fĕr-us, -a, -um.

savage (cruel), saev-us, -a, -um; crūdēl-is, -e (adj.).

save, serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

say, dīco, dīcere, dixī, dictum; **s. not**, nĕg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

scholar, discĭpŭl-us, -i, M.

school, schōl-a, -ae, F.

science, doctrīn-a, -ae, F.; scĭentī-a, -ae, F.

Scipio, Scīpi-o, -ōnis, M.

scout, explōrāt-or, -ōris, M.; spĕcŭlāt-or, -ōris, M.

sea, măre, măris, N.

sea, of the, mărĭtĭm-us, -a, -um; **the sea coast**, ora maritima, lĭtus.

season, tempest-as, -ātis, F.; anni tempus (tempŏris).

seat, sēd-es, sēdis, F.; sella, sellae, F.

second, sĕcund-us, -a, -um; alter, -a, -um (adj.).

secret, occult-us, -a, -um (adj.).

see, vĭdĕo, vĭdēre, vīdī, vīsum; cerno, cernĕre, crēvi, cretum; spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

seed, sēmen, sēmĭnis, N.

seek, quaero, quaĕrĕre, quaesīvī, quaesītum.

seem, vĭdĕor, vĭdērī, vīsus sum; **it seems that he was good**, ille videtur bonus fuisse (p. 164, 3).

seize, occŭp-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (a place); arrīpĭo, arrīpĕre, arrīpŭī, arreptum (a person).

select, delĭg-o, -lĭgĕre, -lēgī, -lectum.

sell, ven-do, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum; **to be sold**, vēnĕo, venīre, venīvī (-iī), venītum.

senate, sĕnāt-us, -ūs, M.

send, mitto, mittĕre, mīsī, missum.

send forward, prae-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum.

Sequani, Sĕquănī, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

serpent, serpen-s, -tis, M.

servant, serv-us, -ī, M.

service, ūtĭlĭt-as, -ātis, F.; **be of s.**, prodesse; 143, (2 great=multum).

sesterce or sestertius, sesterti-us, -ī, M.

set (of sun), sōlis occāsus (-ūs, M.).

set out, prō-fĭciscor, -fĭcĭscī, -fectus sum (for=ad).

seventh, septĭm-us, -a, -um (adj.).

severe, grăvis, -e (adj.).

severely, grăvĭter.

shade, umbr-a, -ae, F.

shall, sign of fut.; (in deliberative question), 139 *(a)*.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre; ăcūt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

ship, nāv-is, -is, F.; nāvĭgĭ-um, -ī, M.; **s. of war**, navis longa.

shore, ōr-a, -ae, F.; lĭt-us, -ŏris, N.

short, brĕv-is, -e.

shortly, brevī.

should (ought), p. 173, 5.

shout, clām-or, -ōris, M.

shout, raise a s., v., clām-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; p. 164, 2, note.

shudder at, horr-eo, -ēre, -ŭi (acc.).

Sicily, Sĭcĭlĭ-a, -ae, F.

sick, aeg-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

sick, I am, aegrōt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

side, pars, partis, F.; lātus, lătĕris,

N.; on all sides, undĭque; on both sides, utrimque; on this s. of, citrā (acc.).

siege, obsĭdĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

sight, conspect-us, -ūs, M.

signal, sign-um, -i, N.

silence, silentium, -i, N.

silent, I am, tăcĕo, tăcēre, tăcŭi, tăcĭtum.

silent, tăcĭt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

silver, argent-um, -i, N.

silver, of, argent-ĕus, -ĕa, -ĕum.

since, adv., abhinc; ten years since, abhinc decem annos (or annis).

since, conj., quum, cum (p. 203); quoniam, quĭa (p. 198); p. 199, 5.

sing, cant-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; căn-o, cănĕre, cĕcĭnī, cantum.

single, not a, ne unus quĭdem.

sister, sŏr-or, -ōris, F.

sit, sĕdĕo, sĕdēre, sēdī, sessum.

six, sex.

six hundred, sexcentī, -ae, -a, num.

size, magnitūd-o, -ĭnis, F.; use quantus (p. 181, 1).

skilful, pĕrīt-us, -a, -um with (genitive).

skill, scientĭ-a, -ae, F.

skilled, perīt-us (in = gen.).

skin, pell-is, -is, F.

sky, cael-um, -ī, N.

slave, serv-us, -i, F.

slavery, servĭt-us, -ūtis.

slay, inter-fĭcĭo, -fīcĕre, -fēci, -fectum; trūcĭd-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

sleep, somn-us, -ī, M.; v., dorm-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

slip, lābor, lābī, lapsus sum.

sloth, ignavĭ-a, -ae, F.

small, parv-us, -a, -um (p. 57, 4); exĭgŭ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

smile at, rīdeo, rīdēre, rīsi, rīsum (acc.).

snow, nix, nĭvis, F.

so, adv., ădĕō (with adjs.); ĭta, sic (in this way); so ... as, ita ... ut; so that, ut (p. 187); dum, dummŏdo (p. 194, 3); so much, tantum, tantŏpĕre; so great, tant-us, -a, -um; so long, tamdĭū; so many, tot.

Socrates, Socrăt-es, -is, M.

soil, sŏl-um, -ī, N.; ăger, ăgri, M.

solace, sōlātĭ-um, -ī, N.

sold, be, vēn-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum.

soldier, mīl-es, -ĭtis, M.

some, aliquis, -qua, aliquod (p. 132); quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam (p. 132); some ... others, alii ... alii; sometimes, interdum.

some, there are: p. 188, 5, (a).

son, fīl-ius, -ĭī, or -ī, M.

song, cant-us, -ūs, M.; carm-en, -ĭnis, N.

son-in-law, gĕn-er, -ĕri, M.

soon, stătim, confestim, mox, brĕvi.

sooner, mātūrius (comp. of mātūre, early).

Sophocles, Sophocl-es, -is, M.

sorrow, dŏl-ōr, -ōris, M.

soul, ănĭm-us, -ī, M.; ănĭm-a, -ae, F.

sound, sōnĭt-us, -ūs; v., sŏno, sōnāre, sōnŭī, sōnĭtum.

sovereignty, regn-um, -i, N.

sow, sĕro, sĕrĕre, sēvi, sătum.

space, spătĭ-um, -ī, N.; within the space of two days, bīdŭo.

spare, parco, parcĕre, pĕpercī, parcĭtum or parsum (with dative; p. 105, 9).

sparrow, passer, pāsseris, M.

speak, lŏquor, dīco.

speaking, dīcere (inf. used as a noun; 108, 4); ars dicendi.

spear, hasta, -ae, F.

speech, ōrātĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

speed, cĕlĕrĭt-as, -ātis, F.

spend, consūm-o, -ĕre, consumpsi, consumptum.

spit, ver-u, -ūs, N.

splendid, splendĭdus, -a, -um (adj.).

sport, n., lūd-us, -ī, M.; lūs-us, -ūs, M.; v., lūdo, lūdĕre, lūsi, lūsum.

spot, lŏc-us, -i.

spread, spargo, spargĕre, sparsi, sparsum; sterno, sternĕre, strāvī, strātum.

spring, ver, vēris, N.

spy, spĕcŭlāt-or, -ōris, M.; explōrāt-or, ōris, M.

stand, sto, stāre, stĕti, stătum; s. for, pĕt-o, -ĕre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum; s. near, adsto, -stāre, -stĭtī.

star, stell-a, -ae, F.

start: see set out.

state, cīvĭt-as, -ātis, F.

statue, stătŭ-a, -ae, F.

stay: see remain.

step, pass-us, -ūs, M.

still, tranquill-us, -a, -um (adj.); (nevertheless) tămen; (even now), adhuc.

stone, lăpis, lăpĭdis, M.

stork, cĭcōnĭ-a, -ae, F.

storm, tempest-as, -ātis, F.

story, fābŭl-a, -ae, F.

stream, rīv-us, -ī, M.; flŭvĭ-us, -ī, M.; amnis, -is, M.; flūm-en, -ĭnis, N.

strength, rōb-ur, -ŏris, N.; vīrēs, virĭum, F. (pl. of vis; p. 45).

strive, cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; nītor, nīti, nīsus or nixus sum.

subdue, sŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vinco, vincĕre, vīcī, victum.

such, tālis, -e; of such a kind, ēiusmŏdī (in contempt).

sue, p. 185, 5.

suffer, pătior, pati, passus sum.

suffering, lăb-or, -ōris, M.; dŏl-or, -ōris, M.

suitable, aptus, -a, -um (adj.); īdōnĕ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Sulmo, Sulm-o, -ōnis, M.

summer, aest-as, ātis, F.

summon, convŏc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, arcesso, -cessĕre, -cessīvī, -cessītum.

sun, sol, sōlis, M.

sunset, sōlis occāsus (-ūs), M.

sure, certus, -a, -um (adj.).

surpass, sŭpĕro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vinco, vincĕre, vīcī, victum.

surrender, trād-o, -dĕre, -dĭdī, -dĭtum; dē-do, -dĕre, -didī, -dĭtum (tr.).

sway, impĕr-ium, -i, N.

swift, cĕlĕr, cĕlĕris, cĕlĕre; răpĭdus, -a, -um; **swifter,** ōcĭor, ōcĭus.

swim, năt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

swine, sus, sŭis, M. or F.

sword, glădĭ-us, -ī, M.; ferrum, -ī, N.

T.

table, mens-a, -ae, F.

take, căpio, căpĕre, -cēpī, captum; **take by storm,** expugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

talent, ingĕnĭ-um, -ī, N.; (a weight or a sum of money), tălent-um, -ī, N.

tall, altus, -a, -um; prōcĕr-us, -a, -um; ingens, ingentis (adj.).

teach, dŏc-ĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -tum.

teacher, magist-er, -rī, M.

tear, lăcrĭm-a, -ae, F.

tell, narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīco, -dīcĕre, -dīxī, -dictum.

temple, templ-um, -ī, N.; aed-es, -is, F.

ten, decem.

tenth, dĕcĭm-us, -a, -um.

terrify, terre-o, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum.

territory, fīn-es, -ium (pl. M.); ăger, ăgrī, M.

terror, terr-or, -ōris, M.

than (after comparatives), quam (p. 55, 5).

thank, grātias agĕre (dat.).

that, p. 109, 1; ut (183; 187).

that, ille, illa, illud.

the, p. 4, 11, note; (emphatic), p. 188, 4.

theft, furt-um, -ī, N.

their, p. 169, 5; often omitted, p. 169, 5, note 2.

them, they, 168, 3.

then, tum.

there, ibi; **be t.,** adsum.

thick, dens-us, -a, -um (adj.).

thing, res, rēī, F.

think (fancy), pŭt-o, -āre, -āvī, ātum; (reflect), cōgito, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (hold as an opinion), cens-eo, -ēre, -ui, -sum; (judge), arbĭtror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

this, hic, haec, hoc (p. 117).

thou, tu, tŭi.

though, 196, 5.

thousand, mille, indecl. in sing.; in the pl., millĭa, millĭum, millĭbus (p. 68, 5).

three, trēs, trĭa.

three hundred, trĕcent-ī, -ae, -a.

threshold, līm-en, -ĭnis, N.

through, per (acc.).

throw, v., iăcĭo, -iacĕre, -iēcī, -iactum; **throw away,** ab-icĭo, -icĕre, -iēcī, -iectum.

throw, iact-us, -ūs, M.

thy, thine, tŭ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

till, p. 201, 4.

timber, mātĕrĭ-a, -ae, F.

time, temp-us, -ōris, N.

timid, tĭmĭdus, -a, -um (adj.).

to, prep., ad or in with acc.; (of purpose), 185, 5; **to no purpose,** frustrā, nequidquam.

to-day, hodie.

to-morrow, cras.

tongue, lingu-a, -ae, F.

too, (with compar.), p. 188, 5, (*c*); **too great to be told,** say **greater than which can be told,** 188, 5, (*c*).

top, culm-en, -ĭnis, N.; fastīgĭ-um, -ī, N.; **the top of the hill**, collis summus; **the top of the mountain**, mons summus.

torn, lăcer, -cĕra, -cĕrum (adj.).

touch, tango, tangĕre, tĕtĭgī, tactum; **t. the heart**, animum mŏveo.

tower, turr-is, -is, F.; arx, arcis, F.

town, oppĭd-um, -ī, N.

track, vestīgĭ-um, -ī, N.

traitor, prodĭt-or, -ōris, M.

treachery, perfĭdĭ-a, -ae, F.; prōdĭtĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

treaty, foed-us, -ĕris, N.

tree, arbor, arbŏris, F.

tribe, trĭb-us, -ūs, F.

troops, cōpĭ-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).

Troy, Trōi-a, -ae, F.

Trojan, Trōiān-us, -a, -um.

true, vēr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

trust, fīdo, fīdere, fīsus sum; confīdo, -fidere, -fisus sum (with dat.; p. 105, 9).

truth, vērĭt-as, -ātis, F.; vēra (n. pl.).

try, cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; nītor, nītī, nīsus or nixus sum; p. 216, 3, note 1.

twelve, dŭŏdĕcim.

twenty, vīgintī; **twenty at a time**, vīcēni, -ae, -a; **twenty times**, vicies.

two, dŭo, dŭae, dŭo (68, 4).

two hundred, dŭcent-i, -ae, -a (adj.).

U.

unable, **I am**, non possum (posse, pŏtŭī); nĕqu-ĕo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum.

uncertain, incert-us, -a, -um (adj.).

undertake, suscĭpĭo, -cĭpĕre, -cēpī, -ceptum; **I undertake to do this**, suscipio me hoc facturum esse (p. 110, 1).

undertaking, nĕgōti-um, -ī, N.

understand, intel-lego, -lĕgĕre, -lexī, -lectum (literally = pick up).

undying, immortāl-is, -e (adj.).

unfortunate, in-fēlix, -fēlīcis (adj.).

ungrateful, ingrāt-us, -a, -um.

unhappy, in-felix, -fēlīcis (adj.).

unlike, dis-sĭmĭlis, -sĭmīle (adj., dat.).

until, p. 201, 4.

unwilling, invīt-us, -a, -um (adj.); **I am u.**, nōlo, nolle, nōlŭī (p. 147).

unworthy, indignus (64, 4).

upon, **in** (+abl., of rest; +acc., of motion).

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (116).

used, p. 216, 3, note 1.

useful, ūtĭl-is, -e (adj.).

V.

valley, vall-is, -is, F.

valor, virt-us, -ūtis, F.

value, **I**, aestīm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

value, **the**, aestīmātī-o, -ōnis, F.

Verres, Verr-es, -is, M.

Vergil, Vergĭl-ĭus, -ĭī, M.

very, expressed by superlative when with an adj. or adv. (p. 58, 5); before a noun, ipse: **the very man**, ipse vir.

Vesontio, Vesonti-o, -ōnis, F.

veteran, vĕtĕrān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

vice, vĭtĭ-um, -i, N.; scĕl-us, -ĕris, N.

victory, victorĭ-a, -ae, F.

view, conspect-us, -ūs, M.; v. spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **your v. of the matter**, say, what you think (sentio) of (de) the matter (181, 1) (sentio, **I hold a view**).

vigor, vĭg-or, -ōris, M.

vigorously, vehementer.

village, vīc-us, -i, M.

violation, use vĭŏlo (-āre, etc.); p. 219, (*b*).

violent, vĭolentus, -a, -um (adj.).

virtue, virt-us, -ūtis, F.

visit, ad-eo, -īre, -īvī (-ĭī), -ĭtum (acc.).

voice, vox, vōcis, F.

vote, sententĭ-a, -ae, F.

W.

wage, gĕro, gerĕre, gessi, gestum.

waggon, plaustr-um, -i, N.

wait, expect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

walk, ambŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wall, mūr-us, -ī, M.; moeni-a, -um, N. (defence); părī-ēs, -ētis, F. (of a house).

wander, err-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

war, bell-um, -ī, N.; **carry on w.**, bellum gĕrere.

ward off: say **keep off.**

warlike, bellĭcōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

warm, calĭd-us, -a, -um (adj.).

warn, moneo (of = de).

waste, **lay waste**, vast-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **w. time**, tempus consūmĕre.

watch, v., observ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, custōd-ĭo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

watch, custō-s, -dis, M.; vĭgĭlĭ-a, -ae, F.

water, ăqu-a, -ae, F.

wave, fluct-us, -ūs, M.

waxen, cērĕ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

way, vĭ-a, -ae, F.; ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, N.; **in no w.**, nullo mŏdo.

wealth, ŏp-es, -um (pl.), F.; dīvĭtĭ-ae, -ārum (pl.), F.

wealthy, ŏpŭlent-us, -a, -um; dīves, dīvĭtis (adj.).

weep, lăcrĭm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; flĕo, flēre, flēvi, flētum.

weeping, flēt-us, -ūs, M.; adj., flens, flentis.

weight, pond-us, -ĕris, N.

welcome, grāt-us, -a, -um.

well, bĕne; comp., melius; superl., optĭme; **be w.**, bĕne esse.

well-known, nōtus, -a, -um (adj.).

what (interrog.), quid; (rel.), id quod.

when, quum (p. 203); often expressed by part. (p. 220, i): as, **when the news was reported**, re nuntiata; interrog., quando (never, quum).

whenever, p. 204, 4.

where, ubi; **w. from**, unde.

whether, num; **whether . . . . or**, utrum . . . . an (p. 130, 6; 177, 5).

which, quis, quae, quid (interrog.); (of two), uter, utra, utrum; (rel.), see p. 126.

while, dum (p. 201); quum (p. 203, 2).

white, alb-us, -a, -um (adj.).

who, (rel.), qui (p. 126); (interrog.), quis (p. 129).

whoever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.

why, cur, quāre.

wicked, scĕlĕrāt-us, -a, -um (adj.); **w. deed**, say crime.

wide, lāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

wife, uxor, uxōris, F.

wild, fĕr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

will, sign of fut.; volo (of intention), or p. 174.

will, vŏlunt-as, -ātis, F.; **against my w.**, me invīto.

willing, I am, vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭī.

wind, vent-us, -i, M.

winding, curv-us, -a, -um (adj.).

wine, vīn-um, -ī, N.

wing, āl-a, -ae, F.; corn-u, -ūs, N.

winged, vŏlŭc-er, -ris, -re (adj.).

winter, v., hĭĕm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

winter, hĭem-s, -is, F.; **that w.**, p. 82, 1; **all w.**, acc.

wisdom, săpĭentĭ-a, -ae, F.

wise, săpĭen-s, -tis (adj.).

wish, vŏlunt as, -ātis, F.; v., volo, velle, vŏlŭi.

with, cum, prep. with abl., written after personal and rel. pronouns: mecum, quibuscum (105, 8; 126, 3, note 2); of military accompaniment, p. 12, 3.

withdraw, se abdūco.

within, p. 82, 2; intrā (acc.).

without, extrā (prep. with acc.); p. 281, 1; **be without**, expers esse (abl.).

withstand, resisto, -sistere, -stĭti, -stĭtum; ob-sto, -stāre, -stĭti, -stĭtum (dat.).

wolf, lŭp-us, -ī, M.

woman, mŭlĭer, -is, F.

wood, lign-um, -ī, N.

wood, a, silv-a, -ae, F.

woody, silvest-er, -ris, -re (adj.).

word, verb-um, -ī, N.; (promise), fĭdes, -ēī; **keep one's w.**, fĭdem praesto (-stāre, -stĭti, -stĭtum).

work, ŏp-us, -ĕris, N.

workman, făb-er, -bri, M.

workmen, opĕrae, M. (pl.), făbri.

world, mund-us, -i, M.

worse, pēior, pēius; dētĕri-or, -us.

worst, p. 57, 4.

worthy, dign-us, -a, -um (adj.) (p. 64, 4).

wound, vuln-us, -ĕris, N.

wound, v., vulnĕr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

would, see **will**; **what you w. do**, p. 174, 1.

would that, ūtīnam (with subj.; p. 138, 4).

wretched, mĭser, -a, -um; infĕlĭ-x, -īcis.

write, scrībo, scrībĕre, scripsi, scriptum.

writing, scribere.

wrong, iniūrĭ-a, -ae, F.; nefas, N., indecl.

wrong doing, mălĕfĭcĭ-um, -ī, N.

X.

Xenophon, Xĕnŏph-on, -ontis.

Y.

year, ann-us, -ī, M.

yearly, annu-us, -a, -um (adj.); (**every year**), quotannis.

yes: p. 29, 4.

yésterday, herī; dies hesternus.

yet, tămen, vērum; **as yet**, adhuc; **not yet**, nondum.

yield, cēdo, cēděre, cessi, cessum; (**surrender**), se dēdo, dēděre, dēdĭdi, dēdĭtum.

yoke, iŭg-um, -ī, N.

yonder, ille, illa, illud (p. 118, 4).

you, tu (the Latins used the sing. to refer to one person, not, like us, the plural: as, You are calling, boy, **Tu**, puer, vŏcas); pl., vos (p. 104); **you yourself**, tu ipse.

young man, iŭvenis, ădŏlescens, ădŏlescentis (also written adulescens).

younger, iūnior (p. 58, note).

your, yours, tu-us, -a, -um (referring to one); vest-er, -ra, -rum (adj.) (referring to more than one); p. 118, 3.

youth, iŭvent-us, -ūtis (body of); iŭvent-a, -ae, F. (time of).

youthful, pŭĕrīl-is, -e (adj.).

Z.

Zama, Zăm-a, -ae, F.

LATIN PRONUNCIATION.

ROMAN METHOD.

VOWELS.

Letters.	*Pronunciation.*
Latin A long as in *cālo, mānāre,*	as Eng. *a* in ps*a*lm, s*a*lve.
short as in *călor, mănĕo.*	the same sound shortened. Both *ă* and *ā* are found in ăhā!
	N.B. *ā* in Latin was never pronounced as in mate, nor *ă* as in man, mat.
E long as in *nēdum, sēcēdo, diē.*	as Eng. *e* in gr*e*y and sk*e*in.
short as in *nĕfas, sĕco, arcĕ.*	as Eng. *e* in sp*e*d and m*e*t.
	N.B. Lat. *ē* was never pronounced as Eng. *ee* in *see.*
I long as in *sī, sīn, rīdĕo.*	as *i* in mach*i*ne, *ee* in f*ee*l.
	N.B. The Latin *ī* was never the *i* in f*i*ne.
short as in *sĭne, sĭtĭs, rĭgĭdus.*	as *i* in f*i*t, p*i*n.
O long as in *cōmĕs, ōmĕn.*	as *o* in b*o*ne, l*o*ne.
short as in *cŏmĕs, ŏpŭs.*	nearest representative Eng. is *o* in n*o*t, r*o*ck.
U long as in *ūnā, ūmŏr.*	as *u* in r*u*in, r*u*de.
	N.B. Lat. *ū* was never pronounced like *u* in ac*u*te, m*u*le.
short as in *ŭtĕr, hŭmŭs.*	as *u* in f*u*ll, *oo* in f*oo*t.
	N.B. Lat. *ŭ* never as Eng. *ŭ* in b*u*t, c*u*t.
Y long as in *gȳrŭs, Hȳdra.*	as I long.
short as in *cўmbă, lўră.*	as *y* in beaut*y*, lad*y*.

DIPHTHONGS.

The pronunciation of the diphthongs is best learnt by first sounding each vowel separately and then running them together. Thus:

ae as ah-eh ; *au* as ah-oo ; *oe* as o-eh ; *ei* as eh-ee ; *eu* as eh-oo, and *ui* as oo-ee.

AE in *taedae*	either Eng. *a* in f*a*re or as *ai* in *ai*sle.
AU in *laudo*	Eng. *ou* in h*ou*se.
OE in *foedus*	N.B. Avoid the pronunciation "feed-us."
EI in *hei*	Eng. *ey* in gr*ey*, *ei* in sk*ei*n.
EU in *seu*, *neuter*	The general rule, as given above, is a sufficient guide.
UI in *cui*, *huic*	

Consonants.

C as in *căno*, *cĕcĭni*, *circā*, *condĭcio*.	always as Eng. *k*; never as *s* nor as *c* before *e*, *i*.
Qu in *inquit*.	as Eng. *qu* in quick.
G in *gaudeo*, *gĕnus*, *gĭgās*, *agĕ*.	always as Eng. *g* in *g*ot, *g*et, be*g*in ; never as *j* or *g* soft.
N before c (k, qu), g, as *incĭpit*, *inquam*, *congero*.	as *ng* in si*ng*. Thus : ingkipit, ingquam conggero.
R in *ringi*, *rārus*, *dator*.	trilled *r* as in French or Scotch.
S as in *sūs*, *accūso*, *tristes*.	always voiceless, as in hi*ss*, hi*st* ; never voiced as in ha*s* (haz).
J or I consonant, as in *iŭgum*, *iăcio*.	as Eng. *y*. Thus : *y*ugum, *y*akio.
V or U consonant, as in *uānus*, *uīs*, *seruo* (i.e., *vanus*, *vis*, *sĕrvo*).	as Eng. *w*. Thus : *w*ānus, *w*ees, ser*w*o.

N.B. There is no ancient authority for spelling *i* consonant as *j*, or *u* consonant as *v*. The Romans used one symbol for both vowel and consonant.

B, D, F, H, L, M, P, T	as in Eng.
	N.B. T is always the same. Edi*t*io is not to be pronounced edi*sh*io.
X as in *saxum*, *exulto*.	as Eng. *ks* (x). Thus : e*ks*ulto, not e*gg*sulto.
Z as in *gaza*, *Zephyrus*.	Probably as *dz* in ad*z*e.

Double consonants should be carefully separated in pronunciation, as a*g-ger*, pos-*s*um, pi*n-n*a.

